

GIANTS
In English
Giants

كتاب إزي ما الامتكان بيقول

GIANTS
العما لقة

الصف الثاني الثانوي
الفصل الدراسي الأول

2

English
& Around the world in 80 days



Unit 1

Egypt-Africa Cooperation

Learning
Outcomes

Reading

Identify the main ideas and supporting details from an article about Egypt's role in African cooperation.

Listening

Identify the main idea and specific details from audio tracks about the Egyptian trade relationship and African partnerships.

Speaking

Participate in a two-minute role-play discussing the benefits of educational exchanges and the challenges of international cooperation.

Writing

Write an essay using clear, persuasive phrases.

Language

Use the present continuous to talk about situations that are going on now; use the present continuous passive to talk about actions that are being done.



Egypt-Africa Cooperation



Lessons

1
2

Egypt: Gateway to Africa

Voices from the Partnership

Key Vocabulary

gateway ⁽ⁿ⁾	بوابة / مدخل	mutual ^(adj)	متبادل / مشترك	funding ⁽ⁿ⁾	تمويل
infrastructure ⁽ⁿ⁾	البنية التحتية	integration ⁽ⁿ⁾	اندماج / دمج	strategic ^(adj)	استراتيجي
partnerships ⁽ⁿ⁾	شراكات	hybrid ^(n adj)	خليط / مزيج	decade ⁽ⁿ⁾	عقد (١٠ سنوات)
stability ⁽ⁿ⁾	استقرار	expand ^(v)	يتوسع / يوسع	initiative ⁽ⁿ⁾	مبادرة
manufactured ^(adj)	مصنع	rural ^(adj)	ريفي / قروي	flourish ^(v)	يزدهر
textiles ⁽ⁿ⁾	أقمشة / منسوجات	stable ^(adj)	مستقر	solidarity ⁽ⁿ⁾	تضامن
exchange ^(n v)	يتبادل / تبادل	vaccine ⁽ⁿ⁾	لقاح	telecommunication ⁽ⁿ⁾	الاتصالات عن بعد
priority ⁽ⁿ⁾	أولوية	tremendous ^(adj)	هائل / ضخم / كبير جدا		

Main Vocabulary

occupy ^(v)	يحتل / يشغل	adoption ⁽ⁿ⁾	تبني / اعتماد	products ⁽ⁿ⁾	منتجات
unique ^(adj)	فريد / مميز	benefit ^(n v)	فائدة / يستفيد	productive ^(adj)	منتج / مثمر
position ⁽ⁿ⁾	موقع / منصب	entire ^(adj)	كامل / بأكمله	agricultural ^(adj)	زراعي
vision ⁽ⁿ⁾	رؤية / بصيرة	transform ^(v)	يغير / يحول	resources ⁽ⁿ⁾	موارد
the Middle East ⁽ⁿ⁾	الشرق الأوسط	attend ^(v)	يحضر / يشارك	participating ^(adj)	مشارك
continent ⁽ⁿ⁾	قارة	promote ^(v)	يعزز / يروج / يشجع	nation ⁽ⁿ⁾	أمة / دولة
cooperation ⁽ⁿ⁾	تعاون	political ^(adj)	سياسي	healthcare ⁽ⁿ⁾	الرعاية الصحية
collaboration ⁽ⁿ⁾	تعاون	scholarship ⁽ⁿ⁾	منحة دراسية	comprehensive ^(adj)	شامل / موسع
strengthen ^(v)	يقوي / يعزز	exports ⁽ⁿ⁾	صادرات	convoy ⁽ⁿ⁾	قافلة
customs ⁽ⁿ⁾	جمارك	road networks ⁽ⁿ⁾	شبكات الطرق	establish ^(v)	يؤسس / ينشئ
invest ^(v)	يستثمر	specialized ^(adj)	متخصص	life-changing	مؤثر جدا
joint ^(adj / n)	مشترك / تعاوني / مفصل	affordable ^(adj)	في متناول الجميع	small-scale	صغير الحجم / محدود النطاق
medical aids ⁽ⁿ⁾	مساعدات طبية	combine ^(v)	يدمج / يجمع	combat ^(n v)	يحارب / مكافحة
capacity ⁽ⁿ⁾	قدرة / سعة	empower ^(v)	يمكن / يقوي	hepatitis ⁽ⁿ⁾	التهاب الكبد
reporting trip	رحلة صحفية	features ⁽ⁿ⁾	خصائص / ملامح / سمات	sustainable ^(adj)	مستدام
tolerant ^(adj)	مقاوم / متحمل / متسامح	maize varieties ⁽ⁿ⁾	أصناف الذرة	ensure ^(v)	يضمن / يتأكد
relationship ⁽ⁿ⁾	علاقة	significant ^(adj)	مهم / ذو أهمية / كبير	volume ⁽ⁿ⁾	حجم / سعة / درجة الصوت
regional ^(adj)	إقليمي	annual ^(adj)	سنوي	potential ^(adj n)	محتمل / قدرة / إمكانية
limitation ⁽ⁿ⁾	قيود / حد	cross-border ^(adj)	عابر للحدود	procedures ⁽ⁿ⁾	إجراءات
region ⁽ⁿ⁾	منطقة / إقليم	resilient ^(adj)	مرن	raw materials ⁽ⁿ⁾	مواد خام

Collocations

attend a summit

يحضر قمة

offer a scholarship

يقدم منحة دراسية

create jobs

يوفر فرص عمل

boost economic growth

يعزز النمو الاقتصادي

medical initiative

مبادرة طبية

advanced techniques

تقنيات متقدمة

combat diseases

يحارب الأمراض

treat patients

يعالج المرضى

Expressions & Prepositions

occupy a unique position as	يحتل موقعاً فريداً كـ	connect with	يربط ... بـ
drought-tolerant crops	محاصيل مقاومة للجفاف	combine with	يجمع ما بين
comprehensive medical initiatives	مبادرات طبية شاملة	in return	في المقابل
strengthen its ties with	يقوي علاقاته مع	play a vital role	يلعب دوراً حيوياً
address an issue	يتناول / يعالج قضية	aim to	يسعى إلى / يهدف إلى
stand at	يبلغ / يصل إلى	involved in	مشارك في / متورط في
suitable for	مناسب لـ / ملائم لـ	yield up to	ينتج حتى / يعطي
scale up	يوسع / يرفع نطاق	focus on	يركز على
capacity building	بناء القدرات	field trials	تجارب ميدانية

Definitions

gateway	بوابة	▶ a point of entry or access to something larger
infrastructure	بنية تحتية	▶ The basic physical and organizational structures and facilities (e.g., buildings, roads, power supplies) needed for the operation of a society or enterprise
partnership	شراكة	▶ arrangements where two or more parties cooperate to advance their mutual interests
manufactured	مصنع	▶ made or produced on a large scale using machinery
mutual	متبادل	▶ experienced or done by each of two or more parties toward the other or others
integration	اندماج / تكامل	▶ the process of bringing different groups or systems together to work as one
hybrid	هجين / خليط	▶ a mix of two different things, especially to make something better
expanding	توسيع النطاق	▶ making something bigger or spreading it to more places
rural	ريفي	▶ places in the countryside, away from big cities
stable	مستقر	▶ not changing too much; strong and steady
funding	تمويل	▶ money that is given to support a project, business, or activity

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
support	دعم / مساندة	help / assist / aid / back	oppose/ hinder/ resist/ obstruct
sustainable	مستدام / قابل للاستمرار	renewable / viable / long-lasting	unsustainable / temporary / short-lived
integration	اندماج / تكامل	unification/combination/ merging	separation/division /disintegration
hybrid	هجين / مزيج	mixture / blend / crossbreed	pure / uniform / unmixed
stable	مستقر / ثابت	steady / secure / firm / constant	unstable / shaky / changeable
mutual	متبادل	shared / common / joint	one-sided / individual / separate
infrastructure	بنية تحتية	foundation / base / facilities	superstructure / destruction / disorganization
gateway	بوابة / مدخل	entrance / access / doorway	exit / barrier / closure

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
produce	يُنتج / يصنع	produce	منتجات / محاصيل	productive	منتج / مثمر
		product	منتج	produced	تم إنتاجه
finance	يمول	finance	التمويل / إدارة المال	financial	مالي
promote	يروج / يشجع	promotion	ترقية / ترويج	promoted	تم ترفيقته
specialize	يتخصص	specialization	تخصص	specialized	متخصص



Language Notes

Notice the Difference

adoption	اعتماد / تبني (فكرة/سياسة/طفل)	adaptation	تكيف / تعديل
gateway	بوابة / مدخل استراتيجي	bridge	جسر / كوبري
various	متنوع (صفة)	variety	تنوع (اسم)
increase in	يزداد في	increase by	يزداد بمقدار
impact = affect (v)	يؤثر	impact = effect (n)	تأثير / أثر
income	الدخل / الإيرادات	outcome	النتيجة / الحصلة
participating	مشارك (صفة/حال)	participant	مشارك (اسم: الشخص نفسه)
economic	اقتصادي (يتعلق بالاقتصاد)	economical	اقتصادي (موفر / غير مكلف)
exports	صادرات	imports	واردات
aim to + (verb)	يهدف إلى / يقصد أن يقوم بشيء	aim for + (noun)	يسعى للحصول على شيء
hybrid (adj / n)	هجين / مركب (يشمل النبات والحيوان والأنظمة)	crossbreed	تهجين (يركز على التزاوج بين الحيوانات أو النباتات)
funding	تمويل	financially	مادياً
location	موقع / مكان	destination	وجهة / مقصد

• funding , sponsor , investment & grant

funding	تمويل	▶ The project received funding from the government.
sponsor	راع / ممول	▶ Coca-Cola is the main sponsor of the sports event.
investment	استثمار	▶ Egypt made a huge investment in road networks.
grant	منحة / إعانة	▶ The university gave her a grant to study abroad.

• manufacture , manufactured , manufacturing & manufacturer

manufacture	يصنع / ينتج	▶ The company manufactures electronic devices.
manufactured	مصنع	▶ Egypt exports manufactured goods to many countries.
manufacturing	التصنيع	▶ China leads the world in electronics manufacturing .
manufacturer	المصنع / الشركة المنتجة	▶ The car manufacturer opened a new.

• rural , urban , suburban & remote

rural	ريفي / قروي	▶ The project improves healthcare in rural communities.
urban	حضري	▶ Traffic congestion is a major problem in urban areas.
suburban	في ضواحي المدينة	▶ Many families live in suburban neighborhoods.
remote	ناء / بعيد	▶ Some people live in remote villages.

Egypt: Gateway to Africa

Before you read

1. What do you know about Egypt's location in Africa?
2. How do you think geography affects a country's relationships with its neighbors?
3. Name three African countries you know and one fact about each.

Reading

1) Read the following article about "Egypt: Gateway to Africa"

Egypt occupies a unique position as Africa's northeastern **gateway**⁽¹⁾, serving as a bridge among the African continent, the Middle East, and Europe. This strategic location has shaped Egypt's role in African cooperation for decades.

Currently, Egypt is strengthening its **ties**⁽²⁾ with Sub-Saharan African countries through various initiatives. The government is investing heavily in **infrastructure**⁽³⁾ projects that connect Egypt with its southern neighbors. These projects include road networks, **telecommunications**⁽⁴⁾ systems, and energy **partnerships**⁽⁵⁾ that benefit the entire region.

Egypt regularly attends African Union summits to promote economic cooperation and political **stability**⁽⁶⁾ across the continent. Egypt is also expanding its educational programs, offering scholarships to African students who want to study at Egyptian universities.

Trade relationships are **flourishing as** Egypt exports **manufactured**⁽⁷⁾ goods, **textiles**⁽⁸⁾, and agricultural products to African markets. In return, Egypt imports **raw materials**⁽⁹⁾ and natural resources from countries like Sudan, Uganda, and Kenya. This **mutual**⁽¹⁰⁾ exchange is creating jobs and boosting economic growth in all participating nations.

Egypt has played a vital role in strengthening healthcare across Africa through **comprehensive**⁽¹¹⁾ medical initiatives. These include sending specialized medical convoys, establishing modern clinics and hospitals, and training African doctors and nurses in **advanced techniques**. Egypt also provides **affordable**⁽¹²⁾ medicines and vaccines, while supporting **joint research**⁽¹³⁾ to combat diseases like malaria, hepatitis, and COVID-19.

By combining medical aid with capacity building, Egypt aims **not only** to treat patients **but also** to **empower**⁽¹⁴⁾ local health systems. These initiatives reflect Egypt's **strategic vision** of **solidarity**⁽¹⁵⁾, African unity, and **sustainable development**, ensuring healthier futures for millions across the continent.

- (1) بوابة / مدخل
- (2) روابط / علاقات
- (3) بنية تحتية
- (4) الاتصالات عن بعد
- (5) شراكات
- (6) استقرار
- (7) مصنع
- (8) منسوجات
- (9) مواد خام
- (10) متبادل
- (11) شامل
- (12) في متناول الجميع
- (13) بحث مشترك
- (14) يقوي
- (15) تضامن



2) Answer the following questions.

1. Name three types of projects Egypt is investing in to connect with African neighbors.
2. What does Egypt export to African markets?
3. What diseases are mentioned as examples of joint research supported by Egypt?



Listening

Before you start

1) Answer the following questions.

1. What do you think are some ways countries can help each other grow economically?
2. Why might African countries work together to improve farming and trade?
3. What challenges could they face?

Voices from the Partnership

Speaker 1

(An expert)

Mr. Ramy, thank you for joining us. Can you tell us about Egypt's current **trade focus**⁽¹⁾?

Thank you. Our main **priority**⁽²⁾ right now is strengthening trade **relationships**⁽³⁾ with African countries. We see **tremendous**⁽⁴⁾ **potential**⁽⁵⁾ in regional **integration**⁽⁶⁾ and economic **collaboration**⁽⁷⁾ across the continent. Currently, our **annual**⁽⁸⁾ **trade volume**⁽⁹⁾ with African nations stands at 12 billion. That's significant, but we believe it can grow much further. Our future goal is to increase trade by 50% by 2026. So, we're aiming for around \$18 billion. Of course, there are challenges. The biggest one remains infrastructure **limitations**⁽¹⁰⁾, especially in **cross-border**⁽¹¹⁾ transport and customs procedures. But we're working closely with regional partners to address these issues.

١. التركيز التجاري
٢. أولوية
٣. علاقات تجارية
٤. هائل / ضخيم
٥. إمكانيات
٦. تكامل
٧. التعاون
٨. سنوي
٩. حجم التجارة
١٠. قيود / حدود
١١. عابر للحدود
١٢. مقاوم للمناخ
١٣. محاصيل مقاومة للجفاف
١٤. أصناف الذرة
١٥. تجارب ميدانية
١٦. رحلة صحفية
١٧. مغير للحياة
١٨. صغير الحجم

Speaker 2

Dr. James Nyambura, Kenyan agricultural scientist.

Dr. Nyambura, you've been involved in a major agricultural collaboration with Egypt. Can you tell us about it?

Yes, I've been working with Egyptian researchers on a **climate resilient**⁽¹²⁾ farming project. It focuses on developing **drought-tolerant crops**⁽¹³⁾ suitable for dry regions, especially in East Africa. This partnership has been going strong for 7 years now and it's been incredibly productive. Our main achievement so far has been the successful introduction of new hybrid **maize varieties**⁽¹⁴⁾ that **yield up to** 40% more under dry conditions. Farmers in Kenya and Tanzania have already started adopting them. Our plans for next year include expanding **field trials**⁽¹⁵⁾ to five more countries and training local agricultural officers to support wider adoption.

Speaker 3

Magda Ramsey, development journalist.

Magda, you've recently returned from a **reporting trip**⁽¹⁶⁾ across East Africa and Egypt. What story were you covering?

I was covering Egypt Africa development cooperation, specifically how technical and agricultural partnerships are transforming rural economies. One project stood out, the solar powered irrigation initiative in northern Kenya. It's a joint effort between Egyptian engineers and local communities. The impact on local communities has been **life-changing**⁽¹⁷⁾. Farmers now grow crops year round. Incomes have doubled and children are staying in school longer because families are more financially stable. Based on what I've seen, my recommendation is clear: **scale up** funding and technical support for similar **small-scale**⁽¹⁸⁾, community-driven projects. They deliver real, lasting change.



Exercise 04

Key Vocabulary

1. These cars are in Germany and then exported worldwide.
a. manufactured b. grown c. discovered d. rural
2. The internet is often described as a/an to endless information and knowledge.
a. gateway b. solidarity c. funding d. fishing net
3. The government is investing heavily in roads, bridges, and other to improve transportation.
a. integration b. infrastructure c. vaccines d. tools
4. International between universities can lead to better research and innovation.
a. conflicts b. wars c. partnerships d. disagreements
5. Egypt is famous for producing high-quality cotton that are exported worldwide.
a. imports b. textiles c. taxes d. metals
6. Students from different countries took part in a cultural program to learn about each other's traditions.
a. accident b. frustration c. exchange d. infrastructure
7. The two countries have a relationship based on trust and respect.
a. single b. currently c. manual d. mutual
8. The company is its business to new international markets.
a. stopping b. combining c. expanding d. limiting
9. Many people in areas depend on farming for their livelihood.
a. hybrid b. integration c. industrial d. rural
10. The new policy promotes the social of immigrants into the local community.
a. integration b. healthcare c. conflict d. division
11. Political is necessary for economic growth and attracting investors.
a. tension b. conflict c. decade d. stability
12. A car uses both electricity and gasoline to run efficiently.
a. participating b. hybrid c. manual d. rural
13. The country's economy has remained despite global challenges.
a. stable b. cooperation c. fragile d. risky
14. Modern networks allow people to communicate instantly around the world.
a. accidents b. telecommunication c. agricultural d. scholarship
15. Children should receive a to protect them from serious diseases.
a. gateway b. vaccine c. tablet d. syrup
16. The project was canceled due to a lack of financial
a. salary b. isolation c. funding d. hybrid
17. The company chose a location for its new office to attract more customers.
a. hidden b. dead c. distant d. strategic
18. She has been working at this company for more than a
a. decade b. continent c. century d. stability
19. With proper care and sunlight, the plants will in your garden.
a. die b. invest c. flourish d. shrink
20. The nations showed during the natural disaster by sending help and support.
a. isolation b. convoy c. continent d. solidarity
21. He felt a /an sense of relief after the exam.
a. isolated b. tremendous c. rural d. manufactured
22. Reading books most of her free time.
a. occupies b. establishes c. empowers d. ignores



Exercise 04 Main Vocabulary

23. Children need to receive every to stay protected from dangerous diseases.
a. clinic b. empower c. vaccine d. painkiller
24. Using renewable energy sources is important for a future.
a. rural b. manufactured c. sustainable d. artificial
25. Many people around the world are vaccinated to prevent....., a serious liver disease.
a. hepatitis b. vaccine c. depression d. stress
26. The store offers a wide range of products for low-income families.
a. entire b. specialized c. affordable d. rare
27. To create a stronger team, we need to our efforts and work together.
a. combine b. isolate c. ruin d. divide
28. Education can women to participate fully in society.
a. establish b. empower c. attend d. restrict
29. The government launched a campaign to healthy eating habits.
a. combine b. divide c. promote d. punish
30. The country is facing a period of instability after the recent elections.
a. chemical b. affordable c. rural d. political
31. The farmer prefers to grow crops that can survive with little water.
a. tremendous b. small-scale c. cross-border d. tolerant
32. He received a full to study at a prestigious university abroad.
a. scholarship b. exports c. healthcare d. priority
33. Friends and family can provide emotional during difficult times.
a. neglect b. beneficial c. region d. support
34. Efficient are essential for transporting goods and people across the country.
a. products b. road networks c. raw materials d. bridges
35. Regular exercise will your health and overall well-being.
a. exchange b. suppose c. benefit d. weaken
36. She spent the day reading her favorite book.
a. small b. union c. specialized d. entire
37. This is known for its beautiful mountains and rivers.
a. region b. religion c. funding d. hybrid
38. She plans to the conference on climate change next week.
a. flourish b. attend c. occupy d. avoid
39. This workshop was very; we finished all our tasks on time.
a. productive b. production c. annual d. adoption
40. They celebrated the of the orphan child.
a. priority b. limitation c. adaptation d. adoption
41. Understanding the of your knowledge is important.
a. fundings b. governments c. limitations d. nations
42. The conference encourages cooperation among neighboring countries.
a. cross-border b. small-scale c. hepatitis d. maize
43. These crops are drought-.....
a. productive b. limitation c. tolerance d. tolerant
44. The CEO shared her long-term for the company's growth.
a. schedule b. hepatitis c. malaria d. vision
45. After the earthquake, many countries sent to help the victims.
a. clinic b. medical aid c. vaccine d. furniture
46. Asia is the largest in the world by area and population.
a. continent b. position c. convoy d. island



Exercise 04

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives, Notes & Definitions

47. means made or produced, especially in large quantities, usually by a factory or industrial process.
 a. Infrastructure b. Hybrid c. Stable d. Manufactured
48. The new factory will help jobs for local people in the community.
 a. sell b. occupy c. create d. export
49. Investing in new technologies can help economic growth in developing countries.
 a. point b. paint c. post d. boost
50. is something made by combining two different things.
 a. Partnership b. Gateway c. Hybrid d. Funding
51. The farmers received seeds and tools, and they promised to work hard return.
 a. at b. on c. in d. by
52. The factory produces high-quality goods through modern processes.
 a. manufacture b. manufacturing c. manufactured d. manufacturer
53. The hurricane caused a severe on the city.
 a. impact b. affect c. affection d. influenced
54. is not likely to change or fail; firmly established.
 a. Rural b. Stable c. Expanding d. Funding
55. Doctors and scientists work together to diseases and improve global health.
 a. combat b. organize c. communicate d. connect
56. The organization works to strengthen its ties international partners.
 a. by b. to c. with d. at
57. Education can play a vital role shaping the future of a country.
 a. in b. on c. at d. for
58. The word can be defined as money provided, especially by an organization or government, for a particular purpose.
 a. mutual b. gateway c. funding d. integration
59. The government aims reduce unemployment and improve the economy.
 a. for b. in c. at d. to
60. The new solar panels can 300 kilowatts of electricity.
 a. yield at b. yield up to c. yield for d. yield on
61. We need to up our community programs to reach more people.
 a. scold b. scale c. scholar d. ruin
62. is shared, felt, or done by two or more parties equally.
 a. Mutual b. Individual c. Manufactured d. Expanding
63. is a relationship in which two or more people or organizations work together to achieve a common goal.
 a. Integration b. Infrastructure c. Partnership d. Gateway
64. means the basic physical and organizational structures and facilities needed for the operation of a society or enterprise.
 a. Partnership b. Infrastructure c. Mutual d. Rural
65. The stadium has a seating of 50,000 people.
 a. convoy b. development c. capacity d. speed
66. The two universities are conducting to find a cure for the disease.
 a. joint research b. road networks c. materials d. individual project

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

67. He works for a company that manufactures car parts. The synonym of “manufactures” is SB – R1
 a. produces b. makes c. cracks d. joins e. cleans
68. There was a partnership based on mutual respect, trust and understanding. The antonym of “mutual” is SB – R1
 a. common b. unilateral c. one-sided d. joint e. shared
69. This small apartment is not only cozy but also affordable, making it a great choice for me. The antonym of “affordable” is SB – R1
 a. inexpensive b. expensive c. reasonable d. cheap e. costly
70. The successful branding and marketing of the new product has already boosted sales and increased profits. The synonym “boosted” is SB – R1
 a. increased b. reduced c. improved d. decreased e. worsen
71. My friends support me when I have problems. The synonym of “support” is
 a. assist b. oppose c. resist d. hinder e. help
72. We should use sustainable energy sources to protect the environment. In this sentence, “sustainable” can be replaced by
 a. unsustainable b. renewable c. temporary d. viable e. lived
73. Egypt is considered a gateway between Africa and the Middle East. In this sentence, “gateway” can be replaced by
 a. exit b. barrier c. doorway d. access e. closure
74. The teacher supported her students during exams. The antonym of “support” is
 a. oppose b. help c. back d. resist e. assist
75. Farmers are learning sustainable methods to grow crops without harming the soil. “Sustainable” is opposite in meaning to “.....” .
 a. renewable b. unsustainable c. temporary d. long-lasting e. viable
76. They have a mutual respect for each other’s opinions. In this sentence, “mutual” can be replaced by
 a. common b. one-sided c. individual d. joint e. separate
77. The school introduced a hybrid schedule with both online and in-person classes. “Hybrid” is opposite in meaning to “.....” .
 a. mixture b. blend c. uniform d. pure e. crossbreed
78. Many companies now offer hybrid work models, combining office and remote work. In this sentence, “hybrid” can be replaced by
 a. pure b. crossbreed c. uniform d. blend e. unmixed
79. She prefers a stable job that offers long-term security. The antonym of “stable” is.....
 a. steady b. shaky c. firm d. secure e. unstable
80. The integration of technology in schools helps students learn faster. The synonym of “integration” is
 a. separation b. division c. unification d. disintegration e. merging
81. They reached a mutual agreement after discussing the problem. Both “.....” and “.....” are opposite in meaning to “mutual” .
 a. one-sided b. shared c. separate d. common e. joint
82. Good infrastructure is important for attracting tourists to a city. The antonym of “infrastructure” is
 a. base b. superstructure c. foundation d. destruction e. facilities
83. The small town became a gateway for travelers exploring the mountains. “Gateway” is opposite in meaning to “.....” .
 a. access b. doorway c. exit d. entrance e. barrier

المضارع المستمر
Present Continuous

Affirmation الإثبات

I	→	am	} + v + ing
he / she / it	→	is	
you / we / they	→	are	

- ❖ I **am playing** football at the moment.
- ❖ Jana **is doing** research now.
- ❖ They **are** still **doing** an operation.

Negation النفي

(isn't - aren't - am not) + v + ing

- ❖ Jana **isn't doing** research now.
- ❖ They **aren't doing** an operation.

Question السؤال

(Is - Are - Am) + Sub + v + ing... ?

- ❖ **Are you playing** football now?
- ✓ Yes, I **am**. ✗ No, I **am not**.

Passive المبنى للمجهول

مفعول + am / is / are + being + P.P.

- ❖ Football **is being played** at the moment.
- ❖ Research **is being done** by Jana.

Key Words الكلمات الدالة

at present	في الحاضر	▶ At present, we are studying French.	
at this moment	في هذه اللحظة	▶ I'm eating my meals at this moment .	
now	الآن	▶ Toka is crying now.	
right now	الآن / حالا	▶ I can't go out. I am doing my homework right now .	
still	مازال	▶ She is still reading .	
Look!	انظر	▶ Look! This pipe is leaking water.	يأتوا في أول أو آخر الجملة وكلمة
Listen!	اسمع	▶ Listen! He is singing a nice song.	still
Watch out!	احترس	▶ Watch out! The train is coming .	تأتي بين جزئي الفعل
Be quiet!	اهدأ	▶ Be quiet! The baby is sleeping .	
always	دائماً (للتعبير عن الشكوى)	▶ My little brother is always bothering me.	
arrange	يرتب	▶ I've arranged . I am having dinner with my fiancée.	
Help!	النجدة	▶ Help! I am drowning .	
this (evening / week / month / year)		▶ I am taking ten exams this year . ▶ He is studying hard this term .	

Uses الاستخدامات

- 1 يستخدم للتعبير عن مواقف مؤقتة تحدث الآن.
★ This week, I'm **going** to work by bus.
- 2 يستخدم للتعبير عن موقف حالي يختلف عن الماضي.
★ Young **people aren't reading** newspapers these days.
- 3 يستخدم للتعبير عن عادات سيئة والشكاوي والضيق مع ظروف التكرار.
always - never constantly
- ★ He **is always leaving** his clothes on the floor. Why **is he always playing** his guitar?
4 يستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث تحدث في لحظة الكلام (نشاط مستمر في الوقت الحالي).
- ★ Now, **they are planning** for founding a new project.
- 5 يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث في تزايد.
- ★ The **pollution** of the world **is rising** very fast.
- 6 يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث يحدث في وقت معين في المستقبل.
- ★ We're **having dinner** at seven o'clock today.
- 7 يستخدم للتعبير عن الترتيبات في المستقبل.
- ★ We **are travelling** to London tomorrow as arranged.
- 8 يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث يحدث في فترة معينة (هذا الأسبوع / هذا العام / ...)
this (evening / week / month / year ...)
- ★ Hani will travel to America, so he **is learning** English this year.
- ★ We **are studying** biology this term. ★ What **are you doing** on Friday this week?

للمحظ استخدام المضارع البسيط بدلا من المضارع المستمر مع أفعال الحالة:

أفعال تصف الحالة وليس الفعل وهي أفعال لا تأتي في الاستمرار إلا في حالات خاصة يتغير فيها المعنى وتشمل:

أفعال الحواس / أفعال الملكية / أفعال الادراك والمعرفة والآراء / أفعال العاطفة والمشاعر / أفعال القياس

- ★ I **love** my family.
- ★ She **wants** to be an actress.

بعض الأفعال منها تستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة طبقاً للمعنى

لا تستخدم في الاستمرار إذا جاءت بمعنى		يمكن أن تستخدم في الاستمرار إذا جاءت بمعنى	
think	يعتقد	think	يفكر في
have	يمتلك	have	يأخذ أو يتناول
see	يرى / يفهم	see	يقابل أو يكون على علاقة بـ
feel	يعتقد	feel	يشعر
taste	ذو مذاق	taste	يتذوق
smell	ذو رائحة	smell	يشم
be	يكون (شكل دائما)	be	يكون (شكل مؤقت)
look	يبدو	look	ينظر
weigh	يبلغ من الوزن	weigh	يزن
measure	يبلغ مقاسه	measure	يقيس

- ★ They **have** يملك a wonderful car.
- ★ I'm **having** يتناول a big meal now.
- ★ He **is** disobedient. صفة دائمة
- ★ He **is being disobedient** today because he doesn't want to do his homework. صفة مؤقتة



Exercise 04 Language Level 1

1. Right now, engineers a new highway to Sudan. SB - R1
 a. build b. built c. have built d. are building
2. The delegation Paris next month. SB - R1
 a. visits b. is visiting c. has visited d. visited
3. They a party at eight o'clock tomorrow. SB
 a. give b. gave c. are giving d. gives
4. We on a new project right now. SB
 a. work b. are working c. worked d. works
5. Rodayna the dishes now. SB
 a. always do b. always doing c. is always doing d. always does
6. They a new bridge across the Nile now. SB
 a. build b. are building c. is built d. are built
7. Important bridges of trust right now. SB
 a. are being built b. are building c. build d. was built
8. Many new projects out in the countryside now. SB
 a. are carrying b. have carried c. are being carried d. have been carried
9. The students for their exams this week. SB
 a. study b. are studied c. is studying d. are studying
10. My friends football in the park now. SB
 a. are playing b. is played c. are played d. is playing
11. The roads because of the heavy rain today. SB
 a. are cleaning b. is being cleaned c. are being cleaned d. was cleaned
12. The students their project now.
 a. are done b. are doing c. is doing d. was doing
13. A new stadium in our town.
 a. is being build b. is building c. is being built d. are being built
14. Look! He a bicycle.
 a. ride b. is being ridden c. are riding d. is riding
15. The homework by the teacher at the moment.
 a. is checking b. is being checked c. are checking d. are being checked
16. The surgeon an operation right now.
 a. performs b. is performed c. is performing d. is being performing
17. An operation by the surgeon right now.
 a. performs b. is performing c. is performed d. is being performed
18. At this moment, the doctor a patient's heart.
 a. check b. is checking c. is checked d. is being checked
19. The lab technician the test results now.
 a. is analyzing b. analyzes c. analyze d. is analyzed
20. The patients at the moment.
 a. examine b. are examining c. are being examined d. are examined
21. Don't make noise; the baby at the moment.
 a. is sleeping b. was sleeping c. isn't sleeping d. may sleep
22. We dinner tonight with our friends. We've already arranged everything.
 a. have b. will have c. having d. are having
23. They a new movie at the cinema at the moment.
 a. watch b. are watching c. have watched d. watched

24. We a cake for mother, would you like to help us, Belal?
 a. are making b. made c. have made d. make
25. These days, most people emails instead of writing letters.
 a. have used b. used c. are using d. are used
26. Look! Ali up his room. He is always active.
 a. would tidy b. was tidying c. is being tidied d. is tidying



Exercise on Language Level 2

27. My brother when I do my homework and it makes me angry.
 a. is always singing b. always sang c. always sing d. used to sing
28. Oh, my God! My daughter her dolls on my bed. That's annoying.
 a. always is putting b. is always putting c. is always put d. is put
29. He that he will mend the door but he never does it.
 a. says always b. will always say c. is always saying d. was always saying
30. I'm sure he of something reasonable to say at the moment.
 a. thought b. thinks c. is thinking d. think
31. She hasn't cooked the meal yet. This means that she
 a. still cooking b. has cooked c. still cooks d. is still cooking
32. I in Hurghada for two weeks in August. I have already booked the hotel.
 a. have stayed b. stay c. am staying d. staying
33. Samy This is disgusting.
 a. is always smoking b. always smoke c. always is smoking d. smokes always
34. I don't like sitting next to Seham in class. She
 a. always talked b. is always talking c. always talk d. always talking
35. I have already confirmed the reservation; I to Rome tomorrow.
 a. may fly b. was flying c. have flown d. am flying
36. Samy the guitar loudly. Our neighbors complain about this!
 a. always play b. always played c. is always playing d. play
37. Rana's level in English gradually this year.
 a. improves b. is improving c. was improving d. have improved
38. I can't meet you tomorrow as I my uncle.
 a. visiting b. will visit c. visit d. am visiting
39. I a wonderful time in the village. Everyone is really nice.
 a. am not having b. going to have c. am having d. had had
40. We our sister's wedding party tomorrow; we have made all preparations.
 a. going to give b. will give c. had given d. are giving
41. She her housework now, isn't she?
 a. isn't doing b. 's done c. 's doing d. was doing
42. We can't enter the hall because it now.
 a. was painting b. is being painted c. is painting d. was being painted
43. Don't worry; we for you. We won't leave you alone in this terrible place.
 a. are still waiting b. were still waiting c. are still waited d. aren't still waiting
44. Most people newspapers these days; they get the latest news online.
 a. aren't read b. aren't reading c. weren't you reading d. didn't read
45. Be patient, my dear; food
 a. was being prepared b. is preparing c. prepares d. is being prepared
46. Jana and I at 1 pm for lunch tomorrow.
 a. don't meet b. am not meeting c. meet d. are meeting

47. I'm sorry I can't go to your party. I to the dentist that afternoon.
 a. am going b. go c. went d. going
48. Next Monday, I my brother for lunch. We've booked the restaurant.
 a. meet b. will meet c. am meeting d. am going to meet
49. I can't come to the phone now. I a shower.
 a. am having b. have c. had d. will have
50. She more responsibility at work these days than she ever has before.
 a. takes b. is taking c. is taken d. was taking



Exercise 04

Language Level 3

51. Would you mind giving me a lift, my car at the mechanic's.
 a. is checking b. is being checked c. was being checked d. checked
52. Don't enter. The room
 a. is cleaning b. is cleaned c. is being cleaned d. is being cleaning
53. Each of the students a quiz at 9 o'clock tomorrow as arranged.
 a. will do b. is going to do c. are doing d. is doing
54. Nobody the T.V. You can turn it off.
 a. watching b. is watching c. are watching d. watch
55. Look! The trees in the garden
 a. is being watered b. is watered c. has watered d. are being watered
56. Ali plays the guitar but he it now.
 a. doesn't play b. is playing c. plays d. isn't playing
57. What annoys me is his repeated complaints. This means
 a. he is never complaining b. he is always complaining
 c. he sometimes complains d. he hardly complains
58. I feel somebody walking behind us. I think
 a. we are following b. we are follow
 c. we are being followed d. we are being following
59. We a film tonight at 8. Do you want to come?
 a. are seeing b. saw c. see d. have seen
60. Right now, he very silly, but usually he is a serious student.
 a. is b. is being c. was d. was being
61. I you're making a mistake.
 a. think b. am thinking c. thinks d. was thinking

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------|
| 1. Right now, the students are working on a science project. | (at the moment) S3 - R1 |
| 2. She is writing a letter now. | (A letter) |
| 3. They are preparing the school stage. | (The school stage) |
| 4. The teacher is explaining the lesson at the moment. | (The lesson) |
| 5. He is repairing his car now. | (His car) |
| 6. They are cleaning the classroom right now. | (The classroom) |
| 7. He cleans his room every Saturday. | (still) |
| 8. We are organizing a football match. | (A football match) |
| 9. A bridge is being built now. | (The workers) |
| 10. They are preparing a party for tomorrow. | (A party) |



Egypt-Africa Cooperation



Lessons

3
4

Egypt and Africa

Success Stories in African partnership

Key Vocabulary

enhance (v)	يُحسِّن / يعزِّز	annual (adj)	سَنَوِي	highlighted (adj)	مسلَّط عليه الضوء
yield (n/v)	إنتاج / عائد / ينتج / يعطي	success (n)	نجاح	engagement	إرتباط / التزام / مشاركة
capacity (n)	سعة / قدرة	understanding (n)	فهم	fossil fuels (n)	الوقود الحفري
milestone (n)	إنجاز مهم / علامة فارقة	expertise (n)	خبرة متخصصة	reliance (n)	اعتماد
targeted (adj)	مستهدف	launch (v)	يطلق / يبدأ	opportunity (n)	فرصة
collaboration (n)	تعاون	unity (n)	وحدة / اتحاد	renewable energy (n)	طاقة متجددة
resources (n)	موارد	agreement (n)	اتفاقية / موافقة		

Main Vocabulary

cultural (adj)	ثقافي	major (adj)	رئيسي / هام	impact (n/v)	تأثير / يؤثر
trade (n)	تجارة	international (adj)	دولي	deepen (v)	يُعمِّق
feature (v)	يقدم / يعرض	frequently (adv)	كثيراً / بشكل متكرر	meanwhile	في الوقت نفسه / في أثناء ذلك
foster (v)	يعزز / يشجع	neighboring (adj)	مجاور / مجاورة	discuss (v)	يناقش
artistic (adj)	فني / إبداعي	mission (n)	مهمة / بعثة	leader (n)	قائد
establish (v)	يؤسس / ينشئ / يقيم	progress (n)	تقدم	security (n)	أمن
investment (n)	استثمار	community (n)	مجتمع / جماعة / فئة	production (n)	إنتاج
supply (n/v)	توريد / يزود / يمد	solar panels (n)	الألواح الشمسية	politics (n)	سياسة
region (n)	منطقة / إقليم	staff (n)	الموظفون / العاملون	medical team (n)	فريق طبي
factory (n)	مصنع	festival (n)	مهرجان / احتفال	military (n/adj)	عسكري / الجيش
mainly (adv)	بشكل أساسي / في الغالب	multiple (adj)	متعدد / كثير	sector (n)	قطاع / جزء / قسم
experiences (n)	تجارب / خبرات	climate change (n)	تغير المناخ	increase (n/v)	يزداد / زيادة
influence (n/v)	تأثير / يؤثر	bring (v)	يجلب / يحضر	decrease (n/v)	يقل / ينخفض / انخفاض
challenges (n)	تحديات / صعوبات	trust (n/v)	يثق / ثقة	conference (n)	مؤتمر
one-sided (adj)	من طرف واحد	transform (v)	يحوِّل / يغيِّر	promotion (n)	ترقية / ترويج
irrigation (n)	ري	infrastructure (n)	البنية التحتية		

Collocations

strengthen ties	يقوي الروابط	deliver healthcare	توفير الرعاية الصحية
supply clean energy	توفير طاقة نظيفة	provide medical help	يقدم مساعدة طبية
sign agreements	يوقع اتفاقيات	create opportunities	يخلق فرص
improve irrigation systems	يحسِّن أنظمة الري	expand expertise	يوسع الخبرة
launch projects	يطلق مشاريع	organize conferences	ينظم مؤتمرات
foster understanding	يعزز التفاهم	drive progress	يدفع التقدم / يقود التقدم

Expressions & Prepositions

invest in projects	يستثمر في مشاريع	reduce reliance (on)	يقلل الاعتماد على
cultural exchange	تبادل ثقافي	result in	يؤدي إلى
cultural understanding	فهم ثقافي	on the other hand	من ناحية أخرى
(in cooperation) collaborate with	بالتعاون مع	in targeted areas	في مناطق مستهدفة
investing in key sectors	الاستثمار في القطاعات الرئيسية	artistic collaboration	تعاون فني
military support	دعم عسكري	be involved in	متورط في
joint action	عمل مشترك	cite as	يستشهد بـ
bring new ideas	تقديم أفكار جديدة	depend on	يعتمد على
build bridges of trust	يبنى جسوراً من الثقة	overall role	الدور العام

Definitions

enhance	يُحسِّن / يُعزِّز	to improve the quality, value, or strength of something.
yields	محاصيل / عوائد	the amount produced, especially crops or profits.
targeted	مستهدف	directed at a particular person, group, or area.
highlighted	مسلط عليه الضوء / مبرز	emphasized or made more noticeable.
engagement	مشاركة / ارتباط	involvement in an activity, or agreement to do something
milestone	مرحلة فارقة / إنجاز مهم	an important event or stage in progress
capacity	قدرة / سعة	the ability to do something, or the maximum amount something can hold
collaboration	تعاون / شراكة	the action of working together with others
annual	سنوي	happening once every year

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
enhance	يُحسِّن / يُعزِّز	improve / boost / strengthen	weaken / damage / reduce
cooperation	تعاون	collaboration / partnership / teamwork	conflict / rivalry / opposition
reliable	موثوق / يعتمد عليه	dependable / trustworthy / consistent	unreliable / untrustworthy / inconsistent
milestone	مرحلة فارقة / إنجاز مهم	landmark / achievement / breakthrough	setback / failure / obstacle
sustainable	مستدام / قابل للاستمرار	renewable / viable / enduring	unsustainable / temporary / short-lived
vital	أساسي / حيوي	essential / crucial / fundamental	trivial / unimportant / unnecessary
reduce	يقلل / يُخفِّض	decrease / diminish / lessen	increase / enlarge / raise
expand	يوسع / يمتد	enlarge / extend / broaden	shrink / contract / narrow
unity	وحدة / تماسك	solidarity / harmony / togetherness	division / separation / discord
mission	مهمة / بعثة	task / assignment / duty	

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
achieve	يُحقِّق	achievement	إنجاز	achievable	قابل للتحقيق
strengthen	يُقوي	strength	قوة	strong	قوي
create	يُبدع / يخلق	creation	خلق	creative	مبدع / إبداعي
cooperate	يتعاون	cooperation	تعاون	cooperative	تعاوني
educate	يُعلم	education	تعليم	educational	تعليمي
expand	يُوسِّع	expansion	توسُّع	expansive	واسع / متوسِّع
sustain	يُدعِّم / يحافظ	sustainability	استدامة	sustainable	مستدام



Language Notes

Notice the Difference

annual	سنوي	anniversary	ذكرى سنوية
international	دولي	national	قومي
expert (n / adj)	خبير / ماهر	expertise	خبرة متخصصة
neighboring	مجاور	neighbor	جار
unity	اتحاد / وحدة	solidarity	تضامن (في موقف محدد)
conference	اجتماع (كبير ورسمي)	meeting	اجتماع صغير / اجتماع عمل عادي
culture	ثقافة عامة (تشمل الفن والعادات والتاريخ)	tradition	تقليد (عادة أو ممارسة محددة)
renewable (solar, wind)	طاقة متجددة لا تنفذ	non-renewable (oil, coal)	طاقة غير متجددة
experience	خبرة (لا تعد)	experiences	تجارب حياتية (تعد)
launch	بداية (رسمية / كبيرة) مشروع أو حملة	start (the car / working)	بداية عامة
coordination	تنسيق	partnership	شراكة
agreement	اتفاق عام بين دول / أطراف	contract	عقد رسمي مكتوب وملزم قانونياً
neighboring	مجاور	neighbourly	ودود / حسن الجوار
urban	حضري	rural	ريفي

rely, reliance, reliable, reliably & reliant

rely	يعتمد / يتكل	You can rely on your friends in difficult times.
reliance	اعتماد / اتكال	His reliance on technology is increasing.
reliable	موثوق / يعتمد عليه	Ali is a reliable friend who always helps me.
reliably	بشكل موثوق	This machine works reliably under any condition.
reliant	معتمد على	Some countries are reliant on oil exports.

culture, cultural, culturally & cultured

culture	الثقافة	Egyptian culture is rich and diverse.
cultural	ثقافي	They organized a cultural festival last week.
culturally	ثقافياً	Japan and Korea are culturally similar.
cultured	مثقَّف / متحضر	She is a very cultured woman who loves art.

Success Stories in African Partnership

Before you start:

1) Answer the following questions.

1. What kinds of support do you think one country can offer another to help it grow?
2. How can countries build strong relationships rather than politics?

2) Read the following text

Since 2019, the Egypt-Sudan Agricultural Project has been **transforming**⁽¹⁾ farming communities **along the Nile**. Egyptian **experts**⁽²⁾ are collaborating with Sudanese farmers to **enhance**⁽³⁾ crop **yields**⁽⁴⁾ and introduce modern irrigation techniques, **resulting in** a 35% increase in food production in **targeted**⁽⁵⁾ areas.

A major dam project in Tanzania, **built by** Egyptian companies, was **cited as** a **milestone**⁽⁶⁾ showing Egypt's expanding international **expertise**⁽⁷⁾, especially **across Africa, Europe, and Asia**.

Egyptian medical teams frequently travel to neighboring countries to **deliver healthcare** and **train local staff**, building sustainable **capacity**⁽⁸⁾. These **missions**⁽⁹⁾ are **strengthening healthcare systems** across the region.

In **renewable energy**⁽¹⁰⁾, Egyptian-Kenyan **collaboration**⁽¹¹⁾ is **driving progress**. Solar panel factories established with Egyptian investment are now **supplying clean energy** to East African markets. These projects have **created** over 5,000 **jobs** and are helping reduce **reliance**⁽¹²⁾ on fossil fuels.



Cultural exchange also **plays a vital role**. The **annual**⁽¹³⁾ African movies Festival in Cairo, **launched in** 2018, features films from 25 African nations. It **fosters cultural understanding** and encourages **artistic collaboration**.

Through agriculture, infrastructure, health, energy, and culture, Egypt is **deepening** its **partnerships** and **impact across the African continent**.

- (١) يتحول / يغير
- (٢) خبراء
- (٣) يحسن / يهرز
- (٤) محاصيل / عوائد
- (٥) مستهدف
- (٦) إنجاز مهم / علامة فارقة
- (٧) خبرة متخصصة
- (٨) سعة
- (٩) مهمة
- (١٠) طاقة متجددة
- (١١) تعاون
- (١٢) اعتماد
- (١٣) سنوي

2) Answer the following questions:

1. How has the Egypt-Sudan Agricultural Project improved food production, and what methods were used to achieve this?
2. In your opinion, which of Egypt's initiatives in Africa (agriculture, energy, healthcare, etc.) has the greatest-long-term impact, and why?

Before you start

1) Answer the following questions.

1. Why do you think geography is important in shaping relations between countries?
2. How might the River Nile connect Egypt with other African nations?

Egypt and Africa



Listen to the text, then answer the questions

Egypt is **strengthening**^(١) its ties with African countries through **trade**^(٢), education, and cultural **exchange**^(٣). At the moment, Egyptian companies are investing in projects across Africa from energy to agriculture. Universities in Cairo are welcoming African students who are bringing new ideas and experiences. On the other hand, African nations are also supporting Egypt. For example, They are sharing **resources**^(٤) and they are signing **agreements**^(٥) that increase **cooperation**^(٦). At this time, African farmers are working with Egyptian experts to improve irrigation systems.



- ١ يقوي
- ٢ تجارة
- ٣ تبادل
- ٤ موارد
- ٥ اتفاق
- ٦ تعاون
- ٧ في تلك الأثناء
- ٨ طلي
- ٩ من طرف واحد
- ١٠ يطلق / يبدأ
- ١١ مؤتمر
- ١٢ قائد
- ١٣ أمن
- ١٤ فرص
- ١٥ مشترك

Meanwhile^(٧), Egyptian doctors are providing **medical**^(٨) help in rural African areas. These partnerships are not **one-sided**^(٩). New projects are being **launched**^(١٠) and important bridges of trust are being built across the continent. Many **conferences**^(١١) are being organized where **leaders**^(١٢) are discussing solutions for climate change, **security**^(١٣) and development. Egypt and African countries are facing challenges together, but they are also creating **opportunities**^(١٤). Day by day, relations are becoming stronger through **joint**^(١٥) action. Egypt and its African neighbors are showing that unity is not just a dream. It is something that is being achieved in the present.

1) Answer the following questions:

1. What are Egyptian companies doing in Africa?
2. How are African students contributing in Cairo?
3. What help are Egyptian doctors providing?
4. What topics are leaders discussing at conferences?



Exercise 04

Key Vocabulary

1. The company launched a advertising campaign to attract young customers.
a. nonrenewable b. careless c. general d. targeted
2. The new teacher training program aims to the quality of education in rural areas.
a. reduce b. enhance c. ignore d. damage
3. The farm usually a large amount of wheat every year.
a. yields b. destroys c. earns d. pays
4. The stadium has a seating of 50,000 people.
a. distance b. limit c. capacity d. milestone
5. Graduating from university was an important in her life.
a. mistake b. milestone c. discourage d. conflict
6. International is essential to solve global health problems.
a. collaboration b. starvation c. disagreement d. separation
7. The school organizes a /an sports day every June.
a. monthly b. annual c. anniversary d. sudden
8. Her hard work and determination led to great in her career.
a. failure b. problem c. trouble d. success
9. Traveling to different countries helps promote understanding among people.
a. cultural b. confusion c. culture d. anger
10. We need someone with medical to handle this situation.
a. expert b. expertise c. mistake d. opinion
11. The company will its new product at the technology fair next week.
a. close b. stop c. hide d. launch
12. The team's strength comes from their sense of and cooperation.
a. separation b. unity c. unite d. division
13. After hours of discussion, they finally reached a/an on the project.
a. agreement b. fight c. problem d. argument
14. The teacher the key points in the lesson to help students remember them.
a. erased b. ignored c. highlighted d. hid
15. Her active in community projects inspired many young people.
a. engagement b. absence c. conflict d. anger
16. Burning causes air pollution and global warming.
a. vegetables b. fossil fuels c. electricity d. power
17. The country has a strong on imported food to meet its needs.
a. independence b. freedom c. refusal d. reliance
18. Solar power and wind power are forms of that never run out.
a. fossil fuels b. limited fuel c. renewable energy d. coal energy
19. Studying abroad gave her the perfect to improve her skills.
a. opportunity b. problem c. milestone d. mistake
20. Natural like water and forests must be protected for future generations.
a. games b. resources c. machines d. opportunities



Exercise 04 Main Vocabulary

21. The magazine will an article about famous scientists next month.
a. ignore b. hide c. feature d. delete
22. The teacher's goal is to creativity and critical thinking in her students.
a. block b. foster c. destroy d. limit
23. Egypt is located in the northeast of Africa and the southwest corner of Asia
a. factory b. disease c. region d. actor
24. Traveling to new countries gives us wonderful life that teach us many lessons.
a. machines b. experiences c. factories d. progress
25. International helps countries get the products they cannot produce themselves.
a. fight b. trade c. danger d. loss
26. Starting a new business is full of many, but hard work can lead to success.
a. challenging b. regions c. challenges d. sectors
27. Parents have a strong on their children's behavior and values.
a. influence b. affect c. challenge d. sector
28. Technology has made great in the last twenty years, improving our daily lives.
a. region b. progress c. influence d. mainly
29. The health needs more funding to improve hospitals and medical services.
a. factory b. sector c. progress d. mainly
30. The company is working on a project that will affect millions of people.
a. minor b. major c. weak d. tiny
31. The doctors went on a humanitarian to help people after the earthquake.
a. game b. problem c. mission d. plan
32. The house uses to produce electricity from sunlight.
a. machines b. solar panels c. factories d. batteries
33. The meeting was attended by many leaders from different countries.
a. domestic b. national c. international d. rural
34. He visits his grandparents very because they live nearby.
a. frequently b. sometimes c. rarely d. never
35. The local worked together to clean the streets after the storm.
a. staff b. team c. community d. festival
36. The country's hot desert makes farming very difficult.
a. weather b. storm c. climate d. progress
37. Planting more trees can help fight the effects of climate
a. progress b. region c. problem d. change
38. A was sent to treat injured people after the natural disaster.
a. medical team b. cast c. sector d. crew
39. Farmers use modern systems to water their crops efficiently.
a. production b. politics c. irrigation d. security
40. The teacher tried to the students' understanding of the topic by giving more examples.
a. decrease b. deepen c. trust d. increase
41. He was cooking dinner., his sister was setting the table.
a. Meanwhile b. Because c. Although d. However

42. The discussion was because it only showed one point of view.
 a. fair b. one-sided c. balanced d. equal
43. Many young people are interested in studying to understand how governments work.
 a. military b. security c. politics d. conference
44. The hospital are very friendly and always ready to help patients.
 a. players b. teachers c. staff d. leaders
45. The city holds a cultural every year to celebrate its history.
 a. factory b. plan c. sector d. festival
46. The government plans to salaries to improve workers' lives.
 a. decrease b. bring c. trust d. increase
47. The country has a strong to protect its borders from attacks.
 a. irrigation b. military c. festival d. leading
48. Cameras have been installed in the bank to improve its system.
 a. politics b. decrease c. security d. production
49. Many world leaders attended the international on climate change.
 a. conference b. irrigation c. festival d. politics
50. Nelson Mandela was a great who inspired millions of people.
 a. festival b. leader c. trust d. region
51. The factory increased its car to meet the growing demand.
 a. climate b. change c. production d. decrease



Exercise 04

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives, Notes & Definitions

52. The government plans to projects to create more job opportunities for young people.
 a. stop b. launch c. hide d. delay
53. means emphasized or made more noticeable.
 a. Yields b. Milestone c. Capacity d. Highlighted
54. We must work together to challenges like climate change and pollution.
 a. face b. avoid c. ignore d. escape
55. The new solar power plant will clean energy to thousands of homes.
 a. waste b. supply c. block d. stop
56. means an important event or stage in progress.
 a. Highlighted b. Milestone c. Annual d. Yields
57. Educational programs help understanding between different cultures.
 a. foster b. destroy c. block d. prevent
58. The teacher tried to collaboration among her students through group projects.
 a. prevent b. encourage c. block d. stop
59. Education can opportunities for young people to achieve their dreams.
 a. create b. destroy c. hide d. block
60. The company sent its employees to training courses to expertise in new technologies.
 a. limit b. expand c. ignore d. block
61. The university will conferences to discuss scientific developments.
 a. cancel b. stop c. ignore d. organize

62. can be defined as to improve the quality, value, or strength of something.
 a. Enhance b. Decrease c. Challenge d. Launch
63. The company decided to invest new projects to support the local economy.
 a. at b. in c. on d. with
64. means the amount produced, especially crops or profits.
 a. Highlighted b. Yields c. Milestone d. Engagement
65. Her English is improving day day because she practises regularly.
 a. by b. at c. on d. in
66. He loves city life. the other hand, his brother prefers living in the countryside.
 a. On b. At c. By d. In
67. The project was completed cooperation international organizations.
 a. on / by b. in / with c. by / at d. at / on
68. is directed at a particular person, group, or area.
 a. Organized b. Collaborated c. Targeted d. Annual
69. is involvement in an activity, or agreement to do something.
 a. Engagement b. Enhancement c. Yields d. Target
- Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.**
70. Building sustainable cities is important for future generations. The antonym of “sustainable” is
 a. renewable b. viable c. unsustainable d. enduring e. temporary
71. Water is vital for all forms of life. In this sentence, “vital” can be replaced by
 a. essential b. unimportant c. crucial d. trivial e. unnecessary
72. The company will expand its business into new markets. In this sentence, “expand” can be replaced by
 a. narrow b. contract c. enlarge d. shrink e. extend
73. National unity is essential for a country’s progress. The synonym of “unity” is
 a. discord b. harmony c. separation d. solidarity e. division
74. The project succeeded thanks to the cooperation between teachers and parents. “Cooperation” is opposite in meaning to “.....”.
 a. teamwork b. conflict c. collaboration d. rivalry e. partnership
75. We need a reliable source of information for our research. In this sentence, “reliable” can be replaced by
 a. assist b. inconsistent c. trustworthy d. unreliable e. dependable
76. Reading books every day can enhance your vocabulary. The antonym of “enhance” is
 a. weaken b. improve c. damage d. boost e. strengthen
77. We must use sustainable energy sources like wind and solar power. The synonym of “sustainable” is
 a. short-lived b. temporary c. viable d. unsustainable e. renewable
78. Getting her first job was an important milestone in her career. “Milestone” is opposite in meaning to “.....”.
 a. landmark b. failure c. achievement d. setback e. breakthrough
79. We need to reduce pollution by recycling waste. The synonym of “reduce” is
 a. raise b. decrease c. enlarge d. diminish e. increase

(Present Simple) المضارع البسيط

(Present Continuous) المضارع المستمر

Usage	للتعبير عن أحداث تحدث الآن، أو مؤقتة، أو مخططة للمستقبل القريب	للتعبير عن أحداث تحدث الآن، أو مؤقتة، أو مخططة للمستقبل القريب
Form	Subject + verb (+ s/es)	Subject + am / is / are + V+ing
Negative	Subject + do / does + not + V	Subject + am / is / are + not + V+ing
Question	Do / Does + subject + V?	Am / Is / Are + subject + V+ing?
Passive	Subject + is / are + P.P	Subject + is / are + being + P.P
Examples	She works in a bank. The sun rises in the east. (حقيقة ثابتة)	She is working on a project now. I am reading a book these days. (حدث مؤقت)
Usage in the future	The train leaves at 6 p.m (الجدول الزمني)	We are meeting them tomorrow. خطط مؤكدة و ترتيبات في المستقبل
Key Words	always, usually, often, sometimes, never, every day, on Mondays	now, right now, at the moment, currently, these days, nowadays
Note	لا يُستخدم لوصف حدث جارٍ في اللحظة لا يُستخدم مع الأحداث المؤقتة	لا يُستخدم غالباً مع أفعال الحواس والمشاعر لا يُستخدم لوصف حقائق ثابتة أو عادات دائمة



Exercise on Language Level 1

- Every year, Egypt the African Development Forum. SB - R1
a. is hosting b. hosts c. has hosted d. hosted
- The conference next Monday at 10 a.m. SB - R1
a. started b. is starting c. has started d. starts
- English in many schools right now. SB
a. is teaching b. are teaching c. is being taught d. is taught
- New projects across Africa these days. SB
a. are being launched b. is being launched c. were being launched d. launch
- I to music while doing my homework. SB
a. listens b. am listened c. am listening d. is listening
- New houses quickly in this area. SB
a. are being built b. is built c. are building d. being built
- The head nurse the new interns right now.
a. trains b. is trained c. is being training d. is training
- The bridges across the river these days.
a. are building b. are being built c. is being built d. build
- I don't know who music loudly in the neighbor's house; I can't sleep.
a. will play b. was playing c. is playing d. isn't playing
- I see you are busy; what now, Hatim?
a. are you doing b. were you doing c. did you do d. you will do
- Mazen always wears jeans, but at this moment he a suit.
a. had worn b. wears c. is wearing d. wear
- Amin: What , Basem? Basem: I am tidying my room.
a. you are doing b. did you do c. have you done d. are you doing

13. Right now, nurses from one room to another.

- a. walk b. have walked c. are walking d. were walking

14. Please don't make so much noise. I

- a. am studying b. study c. studied d. 've studied

15. Tamer is busy. He a report on the tasks he has done.

- a. has written b. is writing c. will have written d. had written

16. Oh no! We'll have to cancel the picnic.

- a. It's raining b. It rains c. It raining d. Is it raining



Exercise On Language Level 2

17. The bag 20 kg. I have just weighed it.

- a. weigh b. is weighing c. was weighing d. weighs

18. Now, my sister happy as she has a modern mobile.

- a. looks b. is looking c. looking d. look

19. Be careful! A fast car behind.

- a. comes b. has come c. is going to come d. is coming

20. Look! The officer the suitcase again.

- a. weighs b. weighed c. is weighing d. weight

21. At the moment, I can't buy this car. It too much money.

- a. is costing b. costs c. cost d. was costing

22. Reem I don't like her way at all.

- a. is always complaining b. always complain
c. never complains d. is never complaining

23. You to loud music. This is annoying; I can't concentrate on my lessons.

- a. always are listening b. are always listened c. always listened d. are always listening

24. Most scientists that the world is getting hotter.

- a. belief b. believe c. believes d. are believing

25. Be ready. Prof Hussein an important lecture next Monday.

- a. will give b. is going to give c. is giving d. gives

26. I can't eat this rice. It too salty.

- a. tastes b. is tasting c. taste d. was tasting

27. Why the guitar loudly at night? I can't sleep.

- a. was he always playing b. is he always playing
c. did he always play d. will he always play



Exercise On Language Level 3

28. She always on her phone.

- a. is / talk b. is / talking c. are / talking d. is / being talked

29. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?

SB - R1

- a. She go to the gym every morning. b. She goes to the gym every morning.
c. She is going to the gym every morning. d. She going to the gym every morning.

30. Ali is always spending too much time watching TV.

- a. the speaker is clearly criticizing Ali. b. It isn't clear that the speaker is criticizing Ali.
c. The speaker is clearly praising Ali. d. The speaker is clearly praising TV.

31. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?

- a. The children are playing outside right now.
- b. The children is playing outside right now.
- c. The children plays outside right now.
- d. The children were playing outside every day.

32. He in London this year, but normally he in Paris.

- a. lives / lives
- b. lives / is living
- c. is living / lives
- d. is living / is living

33. I the problem is too serious, but I of a solution.

- a. think / think
- b. think / am thinking
- c. am thinking / think
- d. am thinking / am thinking

34. I normally to music while studying, but today I in silence.

- a. listen / am working
- b. am listening / work
- c. listen / work
- d. am listening / am working

35. Which of the following is structurally incorrect?

- a. Wael is having lunch now.
- b. I have a new mobile phone.
- c. Eman is seeming ill today.
- d. Does Jailan own a new villa?

36. Now I for a well-known company that writes computer programs.

- a. work
- b. worked
- c. working
- d. works

37. Naguib Mahfouz for his great novels.

- a. is still remembering
- b. is still being remembered
- c. was still being remembered
- d. is still remembered

38. This haircut me. I need to change it.

- a. is fitting
- b. fits
- c. doesn't fit
- d. won't fit

39. Magdy is never late for the English course. This means he on time.

- a. always is
- b. is always
- c. is rarely
- d. rarely is

40. I don't think much of the young people torn trousers.

- a. wearing
- b. are wearing
- c. wear
- d. worn

41. Lunch before my father arrives home.

- a. will prepare
- b. is always prepared
- c. had prepared
- d. prepares

42. The River Nile into the Mediterranean.

- a. flow
- b. flew
- c. is flowing
- d. flows

43. The river very fast today much faster than usual.

- a. flow
- b. flows
- c. is flowing
- d. flew

1 Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- 1. She always arrives on time for work. (punctual)
- 2. They don't often go to the movie theater. (rarely)
- 3. We go to the beach every summer. (always)
- 4. She cleans her room every weekend. (usually)
- 5. She always helps her mother. (right now)
- 6. Politicians often talk about old issues. (at the moment)
- 7. They travel abroad every summer. (this month)

SB - R1

SB - R1

SB - R1

SB - R1

2 Correct the verb between brackets using the present continuous tense:

- 1. Egypt (launch) new projects.
- 2. The final match (play) now.
- 3. Doctors (provide) medical help.
- 4. International agreements (negotiate) by world leaders at present.
- 5. Listen! The teacher (explain) the lesson.
- 6. Many trees (cut) down in the forest these days.

SB

SB

SB

1) Causative السببية

القاعدة دي معناها مش أنا اللي عملت الحاجة دي.. لا دا شخص هو اللي عملها مكانى.

فاعل + make - let - have + مفعول + inf. → مصدر بدون to
get / allow / force / cause + مفعول + to + مصدر
have - get + مفعول غير عاقل + P.P → (المبنى للمجهول)

- ★ He didn't **let** them **smoke**.
- ★ He didn't **allow** them **to smoke**.
- ★ Too much rain **causes** the river **to flood**.
- ★ I **got** my room **cleaned**.

خاص
بالطلاب المتفوقين

1. The government shouldn't let anyone in public places.
a. smoke b. to smoking c. to smoke d. smoking
2. The government shouldn't allow anyone in public places.
a. smoke b. to smoking c. to smoke d. smoking
3. We know what the lake get polluted.
a. gets b. makes c. causes d. allows
4. We know what the lake to get polluted.
a. lets b. makes c. causes d. reasons
5. I always get my car every month.
a. check b. to check c. checking d. checked

2) make & be made to لاحظ الفرق بين

مصدر + make + مفعول + فاعل / مصدر + V.be + made to + مفعول

- ★ Toka **makes** Jana **tidy** her room.
 - ★ Jana **is made to tidy** her room.
6. I was made my homework again.
a. do b. to do c. done d. doing
 7. A lot of students repeat their homework again because they did it wrong.
a. were made to b. made to c. made d. was made

2 لاحظ ما يأتى بعد allow

بدون مفعول → ing أو اسم + allow + فاعل / مفعول + to + inf. + allow + فاعل

في المجهول → v.be + allowed + to + inf. + فاعل

- ★ My father doesn't **allow** my relatives **to smoke** in our flat.
 - ★ My relatives aren't **allowed to smoke** in our flat.
 - ★ My father doesn't **allow smoking** in our flat.
8. Do your parents allow you out late at weekends?
a. stay b. to stay c. to staying d. staying
 9. Do your parents allow out late at weekends?
a. stay b. to stay c. to staying d. staying
 10. Are you allowed out late at weekends?
a. stay b. to stay c. to staying d. staying

كتابة المقال

Writing an essay

A Definition of an essay

- ★ An essay is like a structured story or argument you write about a specific topic. It has three main parts

المقال يشبه قصة منظمة أو مناقشة مكتوبة حول موضوع محدد. وهو يتكوّن من ثلاثة أجزاء رئيسية.

B Essay Parts

1)
Introduction
القدمة

- ✍ This is the beginning.

هي البداية.

- ✍ It tells the reader what your essay will be about.

توضّح للقارئ موضوع مقالتك.

- ✍ It gives your main idea.

تعرض الفكرة الأساسية للمقال.

- ✍ Think of it as a roadmap for your reader.

اعتبرها بمثابة خريطة طريق للقارئ.

2)
Body
Paragraphs
الفقرات الرئيسية

- ✍ This is the middle part.

هي الجزء الأوسط من المقال.

- ✍ It's where you write the main information and ideas.

هذا هو المكان الذي تكتب فيه المعلومات والأفكار الرئيسية.

- ✍ Each body paragraph should talk about one specific point.

كل فقرة يجب أن تتناول نقطة محددة واحدة.

- ✍ Give reasons or examples to support it.

ينبغي أن تذكر أسباباً أو أمثلة تدعم الفكرة.

- ✍ You should have at least two or three of these paragraphs.

يجب أن يكون لديك فقرتان أو ثلاث فقرات على الأقل من هذا النوع.

3)
Conclusion
الخاتمة

- ✍ This is the end. You summarize your main points.

هي النهاية. وهي تلخّص فيها أهم النقاط التي تناولتها.

- ✍ You restate your main idea in a new way.

تعيد عرض الفكرة الأساسية لكن بأسلوب مختلف.

- ✍ It should make your essay seem complete.

تجعل المقالة تبدو مكتملة ومتناسقة.



Steps for writing a good essay

1. **The Introduction** is the first paragraph of your essay. It has two main jobs:

المقدمة هي الفقرة الأولى في مقالك. ولها وظيفتان أساسيتان:

- a) **Hook the reader:** Grab their attention with an interesting sentence.

جذب القارئ: لفت انتباهه بجملة مثيرة أو شيقة.

- b) **Tell the reader your main point:** This is your **thesis statement**. It's the most important sentence in your introduction and tells the reader exactly what your essay will be about.

إخبار القارئ بفكرتك الرئيسية: وهذا ما يسمى الجملة الأطروحية (Thesis Statement). وهي أهم جملة في المقدمة. حيث تخبر القارئ بالضبط عما سيكون مقالك.

Example:

- Many people enjoy sports for different reasons. My favorite sport is football because it is fun to play, it teaches teamwork, and it keeps me healthy.

2. **The Body Paragraphs** are the middle part of your essay. You should write at least two or three paragraphs here.

فقرات العرض (Body Paragraphs) هي الجزء الأوسط من مقالك. يجب أن تكتب فقرتين أو ثلاث فقرات على الأقل هنا.

- a) Each paragraph should focus on **one single idea** that supports your main point.

يجب أن تركز كل فقرة على فكرة واحدة تدعم فكرتك الرئيسية.

- b) Start each paragraph with a **topic sentence**. This sentence introduces the idea of that paragraph.

ابدأ كل فقرة بجملة موضوعية (Topic Sentence). وهي الجملة التي تقدم فكرة الفقرة.

- c) After the topic sentence, give reasons and examples to explain your idea.

بعد الجملة الموضوعية، قدم أسباباً وأمثلة لتوضيح فكرتك.

Example (following the football essay):

- Body Paragraph 1:** Playing football is a lot of fun. I enjoy running around with my friends and trying to score goals. It is a very exciting game.
- Body Paragraph 2:** Football is also great for learning teamwork. To win, everyone on the team has to work together and communicate. We learn to help each other.
- Body Paragraph 3:** Finally, football is a good way to stay healthy. You have to run a lot during the game, which is excellent exercise for your body. It helps me stay fit and strong.

3. **The Conclusion** is the last paragraph. It summarizes your main points and gives the essay a sense of closure.

الخاتمة (Conclusion) هي الفقرة الأخيرة في مقالك. وهي تلخص النقاط الرئيسية وتُعطي المقال شعوراً بالاكتمال.

- a) Start by restating your **thesis statement** in a new way.

ابدأ بإعادة صياغة الجملة الأطروحية (Thesis Statement) بطريقة مختلفة.

- b) Briefly mention **the main ideas** from your body paragraphs.

اذكر باختصار الأفكار الرئيسية التي تناولتها في فقرات العرض.

- c) Finish with a **final thought** about the topic.

اختتم المقال بفكرة نهائية عن الموضوع.

Example (following the football essay):

- In conclusion, football is a fantastic sport. It's clear that playing football is not only a fun and exciting activity but also an excellent way to learn teamwork and stay in shape.



Exercise 04

Writing

1. A strong introduction should include a hook, background, and SB - R2
 a. secret b. joke c. song d. thesis statement
2. In the conclusion, you should restate your opinion and give a SB - R2
 a. future prediction b. random guess c. movie title d. phone number
3. The thesis statement is
 a. the least important sentence d. only in the conclusion
 b. the most important sentence in the introduction c. a random example
4. The last part of the essay is the
 a. introduction b. middle c. conclusion d. hook
5. An essay is like a
 a. confusion b. structured story or argument c. conflict d. question
6. Each body paragraph should focus on
 a. many points at once b. one specific point c. the conclusion d. random ideas
7. A hook in the introduction is used to
 a. confuse the reader b. grab the reader's attention
 c. summarize the essay d. end the paragraph
8. The conclusion should
 a. tell new information b. summarize the main points
 c. write another essay d. start with a hook
9. After the topic sentence, you should give
 a. reasons and examples b. pictures and maps c. jokes and stories d. questions only
10. The first part of an essay is the
 a. conclusion b. topic sentence c. introduction d. paragraph
11. The body paragraph in an essay about teamwork can say that players must
 a. work alone b. fight each other
 c. work together and communicate d. ignore the coach
12. The introduction tells the reader
 a. jokes b. the main idea c. the conclusion d. examples
13. The middle part of an essay is called
 a. body paragraphs b. closing sentence c. introduction d. thesis
14. In an essay about football, one reason football is good is that it helps you
 a. stay healthy b. sleep all day c. avoid exercise d. eat more
15. In conclusion, you should restate
 a. the topic sentence b. the thesis statement c. examples d. the hook
16. An essay has main parts.
 a. two b. four c. three d. five
17. A good essay should be
 a. messy and confusing b. without structure c. clear and organized d. just a list of words
18. The topic sentence tells the reader
 a. jokes about the writer b. what the paragraph is about
 c. how the essay will end d. new ideas not related to the essay
19. Which of the following is NOT part of an essay?
 a. introduction b. dialogue between two people c. body paragraphs d. conclusion
20. A conclusion often begins with phrases like
 a. "In conclusion" or "To sum up" b. "Once upon a time"
 c. "Dear Sir" d. "Knock knock"
21. The introduction of an essay should
 a. repeat the conclusion b. explain every example
 c. give unrelated details d. present the main idea



Exercise 04

Translation

1. The new traffic law is extremely strict. It aims at protecting the lives of innocent citizens from the recklessness of some drivers. Punishments include imprisonment and paying a lot of money.

- أ. إن قانون المرور الجديد صارم للغاية وهو يهدف إلى حماية أرواح المواطنين الأبرياء من بعض السائقين وتشمل العقوبات الحبس ودفع غرامات.
- ب. إن قانون المرور الجديد صارم للغاية وهو يهدف إلى حماية أرواح المواطنين الأبرياء من تهور بعض السائقين وتشمل العقوبات الحبس ودفع الكثير من المال.
- ج. إن قانون المرور الجديد صارم للغاية وهو يهدف إلى حماية المواطنين الأحياء من تهور بعض السائقين وتشمل العقوبات السجن ودفع الكثير من المال.
- د. إن قانون المرور الجديد صارم للغاية وهو يهدف إلى حماية المواطنين الأحياء من تهور بعض السائقين وتشمل العقوبات السجن ودفع القليل من المال.

2. Our deserts are one of the chief sources of wealth. If we give them due care, we can increase our national income and solve many problems by planting more land and constructing new economic projects.

- أ. تعد صحارينا واحدة من المصادر الرئيسية للثروة. ولو أعطيناهم اهتماما بالغاً يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومي وحل العديد من المشاكل عن طريق زراعة المزيد من الأراضي وتشديد المشروعات الاقتصادية.
- ب. تعد صحارينا واحدة من المصادر الرئيسية للثروة. ولو أعطيناهم اهتماما بالغاً يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومي وحل العديد من المشاكل عن طريق زراعة المزيد من الأراضي وتشديد المشروعات السياحية.
- ج. تعد صحارينا واحدة من المصادر الرئيسية للثروة. ولو أعطيناهم اهتماما محدوداً يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومي وحل العديد من المشاكل عن طريق زراعة المزيد من الأراضي وتشديد المشروعات الاقتصادية.
- د. تعد صحارينا واحدة من المصادر الرئيسية للثروة. ولو أعطيناهم اهتماما بالغاً يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومي وحل العديد من المشاكل عن طريق زراعة المزيد من الأراضي وتشديد المشروعات الاقتصادية.

٣. يعاني ضحايا التنمر من مشاكل نفسية وسلوكية على المدى الطويل كالإكتئاب والشعور بالوحدة والانطوائية والقلق.

- a. Victims of bullying suffer from short-term physiological and behavioral problems such as depression, loneliness, withdrawnness, and anxiety.
- b. Victims of bullying suffer from long-term psychological and behavioral problems such as depression, alone, introversion, and anxiety.
- c. Victims of bullying suffer from long-term psychological and behavioral problems such as depression, loneliness, withdrawnness, and anxiety.
- d. Victims of murdering suffer from long-term psychological and behavioral problems such as depression, loneliness, withdrawnness, and anxiety.

٤. جميعنا يعلم أهمية التكنولوجيا الحديثة وأنها تلعب دوراً فعالاً في حياتنا المعاصرة ولكن يجب أن نعلم أنها كما تسهم في تقدم المجتمعات فمن الممكن أن تدمرها.

- a. We all know the importance of modern technology. It plays an effective rule in our modern life, but we should know that as it prevents the progress to the societies, it can destroy them.
- b. We all know the importance of modern technology. It play an effective rules in our modern life, but we should know that as it prevents the progress to the societies, it can destroy them.
- c. We all know the importance of modern technology. It plays an effective role in our modern life, but we should know that as it contributes to the progress societies, it can destroy them.
- d. We all know the importance of modern technology. It played an effective role in our modern life, but we should know that as it prevents the progress to the societies, it can destroy them.



Exercise 04

Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the question:

Social media is a fantastic tool for staying connected with friends and family, sharing photos of fun times, and discovering new things. But have you ever stopped to think about how you behave online compared to how you act in real life?

Social media can be a confidence booster. It's easy to share funny stories, exciting news, or cool pictures you've taken. Plus, you can connect with people who share your hobbies, even if they live far away! However, it's important to remember that not everything you see online is completely real. People often post only the highlights of their lives, which can make us feel down about our own.

Social media can also trick us into being unkind. It might seem okay to write a mean comment because you're not talking face-to-face. But words can still hurt, even online! Remember, the people you're talking to have feelings too.

So, the next time you're scrolling through social media, take a moment to think about how you're acting. Be kind and positive in your posts and comments. Remember, the people you see online are real people with real feelings, just like you!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c and d:

1. Which of the following would make the main idea of the text?
 - a. Social media is always positive.
 - b. Social media can be a double-edged weapon.
 - c. Social media is a waste of time.
 - d. Social media is only for young people.
2. What does the passage suggest about the reality of social media posts?
 - a. They are always true and accurate.
 - b. They often show only the best parts of people's lives.
 - c. They are mostly negative and depressing.
 - d. They are created by professional photographers.
3. One positive aspect of social media is that it can
 - a. make people feel lonely.
 - b. lead to cyberbullying.
 - c. be a source of negative news.
 - d. help people connect with others.
4. Which sentence best summarizes the second paragraph?
 - a. Social media can help you connect with people who share your hobbies.
 - b. Social media can make us feel bad because not everything online is real.
 - c. It's easy to share funny stories, or cool pictures on social media.
 - d. People often post only the highlights of their lives on social media.
5. It's important for social media users to react kindly because
 - a. words can hurt people's feelings.
 - b. it's fun to be mean.
 - c. it's easy to be rude online.
 - d. it doesn't matter what you do online.
6. From the text, we can infer that unkind comments on social media
 - a. have no real effect on others.
 - b. are always ignored by others.
 - c. are kinder than face-to-face ones.
 - d. are as hurtful as face-to-face ones.
7. One negative aspect of social media is that it can
 - a. help people learn new skills.
 - b. improve people's mental health.
 - c. make people behave rudely.
 - d. help people find jobs.
8. To use social media positively, you should
 - a. be kind and respectful to others.
 - b. post mean comments.
 - c. spread rumors.
 - d. ignore other people's feelings.



General Exercises

on

Unit

1



A

Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the (2) correct answers out of the (5) options given:

1. A stable economy helps people feel secure about their future. The synonym of "stable" is
a. unstable b. firm c. shaky d. changeable e. steady
2. The integration of immigrants into society requires education and awareness. The antonym of "integration" is
a. unification b. combination c. separation d. merging e. division

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. Computers are with advanced technology.
a. manufactured b. grown c. discovered d. ruined
4. Roads and bridges are part of the
a. integration b. infrastructure c. vaccines d. tools
5. The two companies formed ato develop new technology and share profits equally.
a. conflict b. war c. partnership d. disagreement
6. The company launched a phone that works as both a tablet and a smartphone.
a. participating b. hybrid c. manual d. rural
7. The two companies worked in close to complete the project on time.
a. nation b. solidarity c. cooperation d. separation
8. She for her final exams at the moment.
a. studies b. studied c. has studied d. is studying
9. Right now, a new bridge across the Nile.
a. was built b. builds c. is being built d. has built
10. Why you to him so angrily now?
a. did / talk b. are / talking c. have / talked d. do / talk
11. They usually go to school by bus, but today they on foot.
a. walked b. walks c. have walked d. are walking
12. Don't make noise while your father
a. is sleeping b. was sleeping c. was sleep d. has slept
13. Which of the following is usually found in body paragraphs?
a. closing statement b. greeting to the reader
c. supporting details and examples d. table of contents
14. Each body paragraph should focus on
a. many topics together b. one clear point
c. jokes and stories d. the writer's personal diary

B

Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Once upon a time, there was a young prince who wanted to marry a girl of good morals. So he ordered a royal decree asking every young woman who wanted to be his bride to come to the royal palace the following day at eight o'clock in the morning. The promised day came, and the girls gathered in the courtyard of the palace, each in their best looks. The prince stood, greeted them, called them, and told them that he would hold a contest and marry the one who won it. And that he would give each of them a planting pot in which there was a seed, and he asked each of them to take care of this seed in her own way, and to return here a month from today. The girls took their pots and left with surprises at this strange contest. One of these girls was a beautiful girl named Maria. Maria diligently watered and looked after her seed, but she never noticed its growth for a month. She decided that she would not go to the palace the next day because her seed did not grow, but Aunt Diana convinced her to go. Maria

went to the palace with her vegetated basin. She feels ashamed when she sees the girls holding plants of different shapes and colors in their hands. Maria was about to return home with tears over her, but the minister who was wandering in the square asked her to go up to the platform with him to meet the prince. Maria was stunned and turbulently climbed up to the stage with him. The prince greeted her and said: I commanded the minister to give each of you a planting tank in which there was a rotten seed, so that I could see what you would do with it. Maria wins the contest and the prince asks her to marry him, to the astonishment of all the other girls.

- gained the respect of the prince.
a. Diana b. Maria c. The con artists d. The minister
- The underlined word "**convinced**" means
a. persuaded b. followed c. misused d. understood
- There was a rotten seed in the
a. pot b. the palace c. the tank d. a & c
- When Maria returned to the palace , she feels
a. ashamed b. good c. angry d. a & c
- What is the passage about?
a. Planting b. Science c. A story d. Playing
- What is the main idea of the passage?
a. Honesty is the best policy b. A friend in need is a friend indeed
c. Knowledge is power d. An action is louder than speaking
- The passage mentioned names of people.
a. two b. three c. four d. five
- Maria was
a. bad b. dishonest c. con d. honest

C

Writing

A: Translate the following into Arabic.

- Reading newspapers is a must for many people. Thirst for knowledge urges many people to read them.

إدارة زفتى ٢٠٢٣

- تعتبر قراءة الصحف شيء واجب لدى كثير من الناس. فالعطش للمعرفة يحثهم على عدم قراءتها.
- تمثل قراءة الجرائد أهمية لدى كثير من الناس. فالجوع للمعرفة يحثهم على قراءتها.
- إن قراءة الصحف شيء ضروري لدى كثير من الناس. فالتعطش للمعرفة يحثهم على قراءتها.
- لقد أصبحت قراءة الصحف ضرورة لدى كثير من الناس. فالعطش للمعرفة حثهم على قراءتها.

٢. كانت مصر من أوائل الدول في الشرق الأوسط التي وفرت لقاح كوفيد ١٩ لمواطنيها وقد عدت من مصادر الحصول على الأنواع المختلفة منه كما وفرت بالمجان.

أسبوط ٢٠٢٣

- Egypt was of the first states in the Middle East that prove a vaccine COVID-19 for its people. It has also made more sources of obtaining different types of it for free.
- Egypt was of the first countries in the Middle East to provide a COVID-19 vaccine to its citizens. It also made much more sources of buying different types of it, and provided it free of charge.
- Egypt was one of the first states in the Middle East which provide a vaccine COVID-19 for its citizens. It had also made many sources of getting different types of it for free.
- Egypt was one of the first countries in the Middle East to provide a COVID-19 vaccine to its citizens. It also made many sources of obtaining different types of it, and provided it free of charge.

Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

- A new hospital is being built now. (The engineers)
- They are writing a report today. (A report)

Answer the following questions :

- How does the chapter prepare readers for future events?
- Do you think living a life of strict routine is positive or negative? Why?
- What might be the advantages and disadvantages of Fogg's personality?

Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic: "Partnership"



1) Complete the following dialogue:

أزهر الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢

- Marwa** Can you give me some suggestions on how to stay healthy?
Khaled You should ①
Marwa What kind of food should I avoid?
Khaled ②
Marwa Is exercise important?
Khaled ③ It's a good way to keep fit.
Marwa ④ ?
Khaled You should drink about 8 glasses of water every day.

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

أزهر الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢

Learning English is important for us. English is an interesting language. It is spoken in lots of countries, so my teacher always says, "You must learn English". It is not difficult. You will use it at university and your future job, but unless you listen to English and use it, you will forget it. English language gives us the chance to read English books and know a lot of information. We can get better jobs if we speak English fluently. If you go to a foreign country, you will need English to be able to talk to people there. So, all of us need to improve English well.

Answer the following questions:

- Why is it important to learn English?
- What does the underlined word "it" refer to?
- How can you get better jobs?

Choose the correct answer:

- People in countries speak English.
 a. few b. no c. many d. all
- All of us need to improve well.
 a. English b. Arabic c. French d. Spanish

3. Translate into Arabic:

أزهر المنيا ٢٠٢٢

Sometimes, many people forget how important it's to keep clean and stay healthy. They must eat less fast food to protect themselves from diseases.

Translate into English:

أزهر المنيا ٢٠٢٢

لقد ظهرت العديد من الوظائف التي تؤدي من البيت وانتشر التسوق عبر الانترنت.



Unit 2

Startups & Young Entrepreneurs

Learning Outcomes

Reading

skim a text to identify the main idea, scan a text to find specific information, distinguish between facts and opinions, infer the meaning of unfamiliar words using context clues.

Listening

extract specific details like the problem, solution, and funding needed from audio pitches from entrepreneurs.

Speaking

participate in a role-play as an entrepreneur pitching an idea to an investor, use modal verbs of necessity or prohibition to give advice, discuss the advantages and disadvantages of young entrepreneurs' face.

Writing

analyze a model business email to identify its key structural parts, prepare to write a formal business email of your own.

Language

use the past perfect to talk about an action that happened before another action in the past, use the past perfect passive to talk things that happened before another action in the past when the agent is unimportant or unknown action.



Unit 2 Startups & Young Entrepreneurs

Lessons 1 Inspiring Entrepreneurs 2 Startup Pitch Competition



Key Vocabulary

inspire (v) يلهم	institution (n) مؤسسة	startup (n) شركة ناشئة / مشروع ناشئ
inspiring (adj) ملهم / باعث على الإلهام	independence (n) استقلال	pitching (n) عرض مقنع قصير
capital (n) رأس مال / عاصمة	commitment (n) التزام / ارتباط	tutoring (n) دروس خاصة
entrepreneur (n) رائد أعمال	founder (n) مؤسس	competition (n) منافسة
development (n) تنمية	foundation (n) مؤسسة / أساس	inventory (n) جرد / قائمة جرد
enterprise (n) مشروع	evolve (v) يتطور / يتطور	dominate (v) يسيطر / يهيمن
assist (v) يساعد	mobilization (n) تعبئة / حشد	rent (n/v) إيجار / يؤجر
launch (n/v) يطلق / يطلق	resilience (n) مرونة	rental (adj) إيجاري

Main Vocabulary

vision (n) رؤية / تصور	create (v) يصنع / يبدع	countless (adj) لا يحصى / كثير
resources (n) موارد	foreign (n/adj) أجنبي	economic (adj) اقتصادي
ancestors (n) أسلاف	financial (adj) مالي	contribute (v) يساهم
guarantee (n/n) ضمان / يضمن	scene (n) مشهد	challenge (n/v) تحدى / يتحدى
identify (v) يعرف / يحدد	unique (adj) فريد	significant (adj) هام
address (v) يخاطب / يعالج مشكلة	convince (v) يقنع	destroy (v) يدمر / يهضم
marketing (n) تسويق	invest (v) يستثمر	culture (n) ثقافة
approach (n/v) اقتراب / طريقة / يقترب	secure (adj/v) يؤمن / أمن	wholly (adv) كلياً
predict (v) يتنبأ	industries (n) صناعات	necessary (adj) ضروري
demand (n/v) طلب / يطلب	business (n) عمل تجاري	support (n/v) دعم / يدعم
competitor (n) متنافس	solution (n) حل	the elderly (adj) كبار السن
fitness (n) لياقة	professional (n/adj) محترف / احترافي	volunteer (n/v) متطوع / يتطوع
food waste (n) بقايا الطعام	access (n/v) وصول / يصل	various (adj) متنوع
afford (v) يتحمل تكلفة	require (v) يتطلب	sustainable (adj) مستدام
algorithm (n) خوارزمية	fashion (n) موضة	outfit (n) ملابس
peer-to-peer نظير الى نظير	effort (n) مجهود	success (n) نجاح
platform (n) منصة	delivery (n) توصيل	prove (v) يثبت
shipping (n) شحن	expand (v) يتوسع	needs (n) احتياجات
aviation (n) طيران	adult (n) بالغ	vital (adj) ضروري
filmmaking (n) صناعة الافلام	setback (n) اخفاق / انتكاس	national (adj) قومي

Collocations

take risks	يخاطر	have access to	لديه وصول الى
achieve a vision	يحقق رؤية	solve social problems	يحل مشاكل اجتماعية
building a national enterprise	بناء مشروع قومي	face challenges	يواجه التحديات

guarantee success
develop resilience
prove their ideas
launch a mobile app

يضمن النجاح
يكتسب مرونة
يثبتوا أفكارهم
يطلق تطبيق على المحمول

predict demand
invest / make money
build a foundation
earn points

يتنبأ بالطلب
يستثمر / يكتسب نقود
يبنى مؤسسة
يكتسب نقاط

Expressions & Prepositions

think outside the box
the key to success
environmental impact
study buddy
AI-powered
financial dominance
financial scene
financial returns
economic independence
target market
sustainable fashion

يفكر خارج الصندوق
مفتاح النجاح
تأثير بيئي
زميل للمذاكرة
مدعم بالذكاء الاصطناعي
هيمنة مالية
المشهد المالي
عوائد مالية
استقلال اقتصادي
السوق المستهدف
الموضة المستدامة

struggle with
contribute to
connect to
invest in
online shopping
trendy clothes
rely on
a smart inventory system
throw away
lie in

يكافح مع
يساهم في
يوصل بـ
يستثمر في
التسوق عبر الانترنت
ملابس عصرية
يعتمد على
نظام مخزون ذكي
يتخلص من
يكمن في

Definitions

institution	مؤسسة	▶ organizations or important establishments (like banks, schools, or hospitals) that serve a public purpose
inspire	يلهم	▶ to make someone feel that they want to do something and can do it
independence	استقلال	▶ being free to make your own choices and not relying on others
founder	مؤسس	▶ a person who starts or creates a business, organization, or company
evolve	يطور	▶ to change and develop over time
mobilization	تعبئة / حشد	▶ the act of preparing for active service or use
commitment	التزام	▶ staying dedicated and working hard to achieve something, even when it's difficult
competition	منافسة	▶ trying to win against others
inventory	قائمة الجرد	▶ a list or count of all the goods, items, or products a business has for sale
tutoring	دروس خاصة	▶ helping someone learn one-on-one
assist	يساعد	▶ to help or give support to someone with a task
pitching	تقديم فكرة مشروع	▶ giving a short, persuasive talk for investors, partners, or customers
rental	ايجارى	▶ paying to use something for a short time

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
independence	استقلال	freedom / self-reliance / liberty	dependence / reliance / captivity
founder	مؤسس	establisher / originator / creator	follower / imitator / successor
success	نجاح	achievement / accomplishment	failure / loss / setback
commitment	التزام	dedication / devotion / loyalty	indifference/disregard/disloyalty
unique	فريد	distinctive / rare / one of a kind	common/ ordinary /conventional
resilience	مرونة	strength / flexibility / durability	fragility / weakness
advantages	مميزات	pros / benefits / strengths	disadvantages / drawbacks
setback	اخفاق	obstacle / defeat / problem	progress/ advancement/ success
foreign	اجنبي	international / external / alien	native / local / domestic
assist	يساعد	help / aid / support	oppose / prevent / hinder
evolve	يطور	develop / progress / change	decline / remain / deteriorate
dominate	يسيطر	overpower / influence / control	submit / yield / surrender
countless	لا يحصى	limitless / infinite / endless	limited / few / rare

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
found	يؤسس / ينشئ	foundation	أساس / مؤسسة	foundational	أساسي / جوهري
recycle	يعيد تدوير	recycling	إعادة التدوير	recycled	قابل لإعادة التدوير
mobilize	يجشد / يعين	mobilization	حشد / تعبئة	mobilizable	قابل للحشد
independ	يعتمد على	independence	استقلال / حرية	independent	مستقل
commit	يلتزم	commitment	التزام	committed	ملتزم
institutionalize	يؤسس	institution	مؤسسة / معهد	institutional	مؤسسي
rent	يؤجر / يستأجر	rental	تأجير / مستأجر	rented	مستأجر / مؤجر
compete	يتنافس / ينافس	competition	منافسة	competitive	تنافسي
tutor	يعلم خصوصياً	tutoring	دروس خاصة	tutored	متعلم خصوصياً



Language Notes

Notice the Difference

find (found-found)	يوجد	found (founded)	يؤسس
launch	يطلق / يطلق	lunch	غداء
teach	يُدَرِّس / يعلم	learn	يتعلم
abroad	في الخارج / خارج البلاد	aboard	على متن
advantage	ميزة / فائدة	disadvantage	عيب
vision	رؤية / بصر / تصور	version	نسخة / إصدار
pitch	عرض / يقدم / يرمي	beach	شاطئ
inventory	مخزون / قائمة جرد	invention	اختراع

platform	رصيف قطار / منصة	pavement	رصيف شارع
prove	يثبت	proof	دليل
require	يتطلب / يحتاج	inquire	يستفسر / يسأل
invest	يستثمر	invent	يخترع
foreign	أجنبي (صفة)	foreigner	أجنبي (شخص)
capital	عاصمة بلد	capital	رأس مال / حرف كبير

entrepreneur, entrepreneurship & entrepreneurial

entrepreneur	راند أعمال / صاحب مشروع	An entrepreneur needs creativity and courage.
entrepreneurship	ريادة الأعمال	Entrepreneurship plays a key role in economic growth.
entrepreneurial	ريادي / ذو عقلية ابتكارية	She has an entrepreneurial spirit.

economy, economist, economic, & economical

economy	اقتصاد	The economy of the country is growing steadily.
economist	اقتصادي (خبير في الاقتصاد)	The economist gave a talk on the future of global trade.
economic	اقتصادي (له علاقة بالاقتصاد)	The economic situation has improved since last year.
economical	اقتصادي (موفر)	Using public transportation is more economical .

inspire, inspiration, inspiring & inspired

inspire	يلهم / يحفز	Great leaders inspire their teams to work harder.
inspiration	إلهام / مصدر الإلهام	Her speech was an inspiration to everyone.
inspiring	ملهم / باعث على الحماس	The movie was truly inspiring .
inspired	ملهم / مدفوع بفكرة	We felt deeply inspired to start our own projects.

evolve, evolution, evolved & evolving

evolve	يتطور / يتطور	Species evolve to adapt to their environment.
evolution	تطور	The evolution of technology is very fast.
evolved	متطور / متقدم	Humans are highly evolved beings.
evolving	في طور التطور	We live in an evolving world.

win / beat / gain / earn

win	يفوز / يكسب (كأس / مباراة /	He won a prize in a competition for literature.
beat	يهزم / يتغلب على (شخص أو فريق)	Egypt could beat France.
gain	يكتسب / يحصل على شيء معنوي مفيد (خبرة / معرفة / معلومات / شهرة)	You gained much information from the meeting.
	وتشير إلى زيادة في الوزن والسرعة والكمية والارتفاع	Aya gained 3 kilos in weight last month.
		The plane gained speed to take off.
earn	يكسب (قوت / رزق) مقابل عمل	People work hard to earn money.



"Inspiring Entrepreneurs"

Before you start: Think and discuss in pairs:

Reading

1) Answer the following questions.

1. What age do you think is best to start a business? Why?
2. Name some famous young entrepreneurs you know?
3. What challenges might young people face when starting a business?



2) Read the following article



At just 20 years old, Talaat Harb **launched**⁽¹⁾ Bank Misr, a bank **created** with completely Egyptian **capital**⁽²⁾, during a time when **foreign institutions**⁽³⁾ dominated the financial scene. His story inspires **countless** people to achieve economic **independence**⁽⁴⁾ and **contribute** to national **development**⁽⁵⁾. But what does it really take to build a successful national **institution**⁽⁶⁾ at a young age?

Young **founders** of national **enterprises** face **unique**⁽⁷⁾ challenges.

However, they have **significant** advantages. They are deeply connected to their **homeland**⁽⁸⁾, understanding its needs and culture well. They are also not afraid to **take risks** to achieve a greater **national vision**.

Talat Harb is an example of how young entrepreneurs who could **establish**⁽⁹⁾ a wholly Egyptian bank at the age of 20. He could convince more than 120 Egyptians to **invest**⁽¹⁰⁾ in the project and **secure** the necessary capital.

He then worked with his team to use Egyptian capital for to support various **industries** including **shipping**, **aviation**, and **filmmaking**.

The business scene has **evolved**⁽¹¹⁾ dramatically. Young entrepreneurs today have **access** to resources their **ancestors** couldn't dream of. However, **building a national enterprise** like Bank Misr required a different kind of **effort**, **relying on** community **mobilization**⁽¹²⁾ and untiring **commitment**⁽¹³⁾.

Nevertheless, success is not **guaranteed**.

Young entrepreneurs must **develop resilience** and learn from setbacks quickly. They need to prove their ideas and build a strong **foundation**⁽¹⁴⁾ before investing too much time or money.

The key to success lies in solving real problems. Successful **founders** of national enterprises don't just create businesses they think are cool—they identify real social needs and address them. They also understand that building a team is **vital**⁽¹⁵⁾. No one can do everything alone, especially when building a national institution.

- (١) يطلق
- (٢) رأس المال
- (٣) مؤسسة
- (٤) استقلال
- (٥) تنمية
- (٦) مؤسس
- (٧) فريد
- (٨) وطن
- (٩) يؤسس
- (١٠) يستثمر
- (١١) يتطور
- (١٢) تعبئة
- (١٣) التزام
- (١٤) اساس

Welcome to today's pitch competition⁽¹⁾. We have three young entrepreneurs presenting their ideas. Let's start with Moner Magdi. Moner Magdi, food saver AI.



Hi, I am Moner Magdi. Restaurants waste tons of food every day and this costs them money. My solution⁽²⁾ is Food Saver AI, a smart inventory⁽³⁾ system that tells restaurants exactly how much food they need. It uses AI to predict demand⁽⁴⁾ and can reduce food waste by 40%. We need \$75,000 to expand⁽⁵⁾ to 100 restaurants. Thank you. Mona Eid study buddy. I'm Mona Eid. Many students are struggling with⁽⁶⁾ math and science subjects and can't afford⁽⁷⁾ tutoring. Study Buddy is a peer-to-peer learning platform⁽⁸⁾ where students assist⁽⁹⁾ one another. We use games to make learning fun. Students earn points for teaching and learning. Our target market⁽¹⁰⁾ is high school students aged 12 to 18. We need \$50,000 to launch⁽¹¹⁾ our mobile app. We have to think outside the box in education and that's what we do.

Hisham Mustafa Green Style.

Hello, I'm Hisham Mustafa. Fast fashion is destroying our environment. People buy clothes, wear them once, then throw them away⁽¹²⁾. Green Style is a clothing rental service for young adults. Instead of buying fast fashion, customers can rent⁽¹³⁾ trendy clothes for special events. Our unique⁽¹⁴⁾ selling point is our style algorithm that suggests perfect outfits.

We have 200 customers already and need \$100,000 to expand to three cities.

Thank you all. These entrepreneurs really know how to think outside the box.

- (١) منافسة
- (٢) حل
- (٣) جرد
- (٤) طلب
- (٥) يتوسع
- (٦) يعانى من
- (٧) يتحمل تكلفة
- (٨) منصة
- (٩) يساعد
- (١٠) سوق
- (١١) يطلق
- (١٢) يتخلص من
- (١٣) يؤجر
- (١٤) فريد



Exercise on

Key Vocabulary

1. Talaat Harb founded Bank Misr with completely Egyptian SB R-1
a. independence b. institutions c. capital d. setbacks
2. The government supports small businesses through financial SB R-1
a. evolution b. investment c. setbacks d. independence
3. Egypt's position helps it lead in regional development. SB R-1
a. weak b. unique c. hidden d. small
4. After years of hard work, she achieved her by starting her own business.
a. ancestor b. founder c. tutoring d. independence

5. Successful marriages require mutual and understanding.
a. marketing b. entrepreneur c. commitment d. inventory
6. Young are bringing fresh ideas to the traditional business world.
a. ancestors b. entrepreneurs c. mobilization d. inventory
7. The of the building is made of reinforced concrete to ensure stability.
a. foundation b. inventory c. institution d. mobilization
8. The store keeps a detailed of all its products and supplies.
a. tutoring b. inventory c. startup d. institution
9. She used her personal savings as to start her own business.
a. pitch b. resilience c. inventory d. capital
10. The of the company started with a small team and a big vision.
a. ancestor b. tutoring c. founder d. inventory
11. Technology continues to at a rapid pace, changing the way we live.
a. evolve b. decline c. rent d. address
12. He offered to her with carrying the heavy boxes upstairs .
a. improve b. invest c. create d. assist
13. She offers online for students who need extra help in mathematics.
a. capital b. tutoring c. setback d. shipping
14. The startup will its innovative app to the public in the coming months.
a. destroy b. hide c. launch d. dominate
15. She showed by continuing her studies despite facing personal challenges.
a. access b. laziness c. setback d. resilience
16. The for the apartment is due at the end of each month.
a. inventory b. rent c. resource d. launch
17. Effective of resources helped the team complete the project on time.
a. mobilization b. confusion c. hesitation d. algorithm
18. Samsung continues to the smartphone market with its latest model.
a. require b. rent c. dominate d. need
19. The of renewable energy technologies is necessary for the future.
a. difference b. development c. conflict d. decrease
20. The marketing highlighted the unique features of the new product.
a. pitch b. conflict c. mobilization d. resistance
21. The coach gave a/an speech that motivated the team to win the championship.
a. inspired b. boring c. inspiring d. interested
22. The hospital is one of the leading medical in the country.
a. invention b. competitions c. inventories d. institutions
23. A good book can readers to explore new ideas and expand their horizons.
a. ruin b. depress c. aspire d. inspire
24. Healthy in the marketplace encourages businesses to innovate and improve their products.
a. competition b. waste c. emergency d. delivery



Exercise 04

Main Vocabulary

25. Strong relationships in business often trust and long-term success.
a. guarantee b. refuse c. hinder d. access
26. Climate change presents one of the greatest of our time, requiring urgent action.
a. services b. challenges c. benefits d. resources
27. It's important to the cause of a problem before offering a solution.
a. contribute b. avoid c. ignore d. identify
28. Her talents in painting and sculpture have earned her international recognition.
a. ordinary b. common c. unique d. terrible
29. It took a lot of effort to investors to support the startup's vision.
a. solve b. access c. prevent d. convince
30. One of the main of online shopping is saving time and effort.
a. advantages b. setbacks c. disadvantages d. problems
31. Companies often in new technologies to stay competitive in their industry.
a. rely b. avoid c. invest d. throw
32. He used a strong password to his online accounts from unauthorized access.
a. damage b. secure c. safe d. contribute
33. Scientists use data and algorithms to weather patterns and natural disasters.
a. confuse b. break c. ignore d. predict
34. There is an increasing for eco-friendly products as consumers become more environmentally conscious.
a. demand b. dislike c. confusion d. regret
35. Physical is essential for improving stamina, strength, and flexibility.
a. setback b. shipping c. disability d. fitness
36. Many dedicate their time to helping others without expecting anything in return.
a. resources b. volunteers c. ancestors d. challenges
37. Online platforms provide to services such as shopping, entertainment, and education.
a. access b. scene c. demand d. pitch
38. Starting a new business significant time, effort, and resources.
a. enquires b. acquires c. inquires d. requires
39. It's important to give your best in everything you do to achieve the best results.
a. effort b. growth c. worry d. address
40. Online learning offer courses on a variety of subjects, from technology to the arts.
a. platforms b. pavements c. challenges d. setbacks
41. costs vary depending on the size and weight of the item being delivered.
a. Platform b. Shipping c. Address d. Pitch
42. The company is planning to into international markets to reach a larger customer base.
a. rent b. decrease c. lack d. expand

43. Many entrepreneurs innovative products to address gaps in the market.

- a. contribute b. dominate c. develop d. suppose

44. Access to clean water is for public health and well-being.

- a. vital b. untiring c. unimportant d. capital

45. Entrepreneurs often face, but overcoming them can lead to greater success in the long term.

- a. advantages b. outfits c. setbacks d. platforms



Exercise on

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

46. "Think outside the box" means to in a creative way.

- a. follow rules b. avoid problems c. think differently d. work slowly

SB R-1

47. Successful entrepreneurs often risks to explore new business opportunities.

- a. take b. require c. do d. keep

48. Everyone should access to quality education to ensure equal opportunities for success.

- a. take b. do c. have d. support

49. To a vision, you need a clear plan and unwavering commitment to your goals.

- a. make b. join c. achieve d. assist

50. Every business challenges, but resilience and creativity often help overcome them.

- a. feels b. faces c. makes d. does

51. Participants in the competition can points for completing tasks and achieving certain milestones.

- a. beat b. earn c. do d. gain

52. Businesses need to think the box to stay competitive in a rapidly changing market.

- a. beside b. of c. inside d. outside

53. Everyone in the team contributed the project's success with their unique skills.

- a. to b. with c. of d. on

54. AI- machines are now able to perform complex tasks that were once done by humans.

- a. powers b. powered c. power d. powering

55. Teenagers 12 to 18 are often influenced by trends.

- a. age b. aging c. aged d. ages

56. People dream traveling the world and experiencing different cultures.

- a. with b. of c. in d. on

57. We rely technology to stay connected and efficient in our daily tasks.

- a. on b. in c. of d. by

58. People who start investing a young age have a better chance of building long-term wealth.

- a. on b. of c. in d. at

59. Don't throw your old electronics; instead, look into recycling programs.

- a. with b. in c. away d. for

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

60. She is the founder and managing director of the company. The synonym of the underlined word "founder" is SB R-1
 a. client b. agent c. employee d. originator e. establisher
61. Success means achieving your goals and dreams. The antonym of the underlined word "success" is SB R.1
 a. failure b. achievement c. accomplishment d. victory e. setback
62. He showed great commitment to his job by working late hours. The synonym of the underlined word "commitment" is
 a. indifference b. devotion c. dedication d. disregard e. disloyalty
63. Everyone has unique talents that make them special. The antonym of the underlined word "unique" is
 a. distinctive b. rare c. common d. ordinary e. special
64. The new technology has several advantages. The synonym of the underlined word "advantage" is
 a. cons b. drawback c. disadvantage d. benefit e. strength
65. Losing his job was a setback, but he found a better opportunity. The synonym of the underlined word "setback" is
 a. obstacle b. problem c. progress d. advancement e. success
66. Learning a foreign language can open up many career opportunities. The synonym of the underlined word "foreign" is
 a. international b. native c. alien d. local e. national
67. Volunteers assist in organizing events and helping others. The synonym of the underlined word "assist" is
 a. help b. oppose c. destroy d. prevent e. aid
68. Developing resilience is important for handling stress and setbacks. The antonym of the underlined word "resilience" is
 a. weakness b. fragility c. flexibility d. strength e. durability



الماضي التام
Past Perfect

Affirmation الإثبات

الفاعل + had + P.P.

⇒ Jana **had prepared** dinner.

Passive المبنى للمجهول

مفعول + had + been + P.P.

⇒ Dinner **had been prepared** by Jana.

Uses الاستخدامات

① يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث تم قبل حدث آخر فيكون الحدث الأول ماضي تام والثاني ماضي بسيط وغالباً مع روابط مثل:

after = before that

as soon as . once

because - since - as

when

ماضي بسيط + ماضي تام +

- ★ After she **had cooked**, she **set** the table.
- ★ I **didn't swim** because I **had forgotten** my swimming suit.
- ★ He **watched** TV; **before that** he **had done** his homework.

في حالة عدم وجود فاعل بعد (after - since - when) يأتي بعدهم (V + ing)

- ★ After **reading** the novel, he watched TV.
- ★ It was a long journey. Jana had slept most of the way since **leaving** Alex.

يمكننا أن نبدأ الجملة بـ Having + P.P.

Having + P.P.

or

Having been + P.P.

(Passive)

- ★ After the police **had arrested** the thief, he was taken to prison.
= **Having arrested** the thief, he was taken to prison. (في المعلوم)
= **Arresting** the thief, he was taken to prison. (اختصار المعلوم)
- ★ After the thief **had been arrested** by the police, he was taken to prison.
= **Having been arrested** by the police, the thief was taken to prison. (في المجهول)
= **Arrested** by the police, the thief was taken to prison. (اختصار المجهول)



② يستخدم الماضي التام للتعبير عن حدث تم قبل وقت معين في الماضي وغالباً مع روابط مثل:

before = after that

by the time

when

ماضي تام + ماضي بسيط +

- ★ Before he **watched** TV, he **had read** the novel.
- ★ By the time I **arrived**, the thief **had escaped**.
- ★ He **had done** his homework; **after that** he **watched** TV.

❗ في حالة عدم وجود فاعل بعد (before) يأتي بعدها (V + ing)

- ★ Before **watching** TV, he **had read** the novel.

❷ يستخدم الماضي التام للتعبير عن حدث لم يتم حتى وقع حدث آخر وغالباً مع روابط مثل:

ماضي بسيط منفى	until till	ماضي تام +
----------------	---------------	------------

- ★ I **didn't leave** home until my mother **had come**.
- ★ He **wasn't** sad until he **had met** his wife.
- ★ I **wasn't promoted** until I **had increased** my target.
- ★ No one **left** the office until they **had finished** all tasks.

❗ لاحظ أننا يمكننا استخدام زمن الماضي البسيط المثبت قبل **until** - **till** (حسب المعنى المقصود):

- ★ I **waited** in the park until I found a vacant place.

❸ يستخدم الماضي التام مع بعض الظروف التي تعني (لم يكـد... حتى) مثل:

no sooner scarcely hardly	+ P.P. +	... than ... when ... when	أو غير منتظم (v + ed)
فاعل + had +			

- ★ They **had no sooner finished** studying **than** they **went** to bed.
- ★ We **had hardly finished** painting our new house **when** we **moved** into it.

❗ إذا بدأت بهم الجملة يأتي بعدهم صيغة سؤال:

No sooner Scarcely Hardly	had + فاعل + P.P. +	... than ... when ... when	أو غير منتظم (v + ed)
---------------------------------	---------------------	----------------------------------	-----------------------

- ★ **No sooner had** they **finished** studying **than** they **went** to bed.
- ★ **Scarcely had** they **finished** studying **when** they **went** to bed.

❹ يستخدم الماضي التام مع التعبيرات الآتية في حالة وجود كلمة أو جملة تدل على الماضي:

I wish I'd rather It was time	كلمة ماضي + ماضي تام + فاعل +
-------------------------------------	-------------------------------

- ★ I wish Toka **had studied** well last year.
- ★ I would rather he **had come** yesterday.

❶ يستخدم الماضي التام للتعبير عن حدث استمر لفترة قبل وقت معين في الماضي وغالباً مع (by = before - until)

by until	ماضي تام + مدة سابقة +
-------------	------------------------

- ★ By 2022, we **had published** our first book.
- ★ Until midnight, I **hadn't finished** my studies.

❷ يمكن أن يأتي الحدثين ماضي بسيط مع الروابط الزمنية في حالة عدم وجود فاصل زمني.

- ★ After he **saw** the accident, he **fainted**.
- ★ I **called** him before he **entered**.

❸ يستخدم الماضي التام مع الكلمات الدالة على المضارع التام إذا وجد ما يدل على الماضي:

already / just / ever / never / yet / for / since

- ★ When we **arrived**, the film **had already started**.

- ★ She **had just got** home when I **phoned** her.
- ★ I **met** Mai. I **hadn't met** her since 2020.
- ★ They **had never come** late **before that**.

٩ لاحظ التركيب التالي:

It was only when
It was not until + ماضي بسيط + **that** + ماضي تام

- ★ **It was only when** I had done my homework **that** I went to bed.
- ١٠ يستخدم الماضي التام مع روابط السبب (**because - since - as**) والنتيجة (**so - that's why - therefore**)
- ★ I didn't swim **because** I **had forgotten** my swimming suit.
- ★ I **had forgotten** my swimming suit **so** I didn't swim.

١١ الرابط الزمني **when** في الماضي:

When

- ماضي تام ماضي بسيط When I **arrived** at the station, the train **had left**.
- ماضي بسيط ماضي تام When I **had arrived** at the station, the train **left**.
- ماضي بسيط ماضي بسيط When I **arrived**, the train **left**.
- ماضي مستمر ماضي بسيط When I **fell**, I **was playing** football.

١٢ لاحظ الفرق بين **in - by - until**

- in** ... ماضي بسيط ,... سنة ماضية + ➤ In 2000, I **studied** English.
- ... مستقبل بسيط ,... سنة مستقبلية + ➤ In 2030, I **will study** English.
- by** ... ماضي تام ,... سنة ماضية + ➤ By 2000, I **had studied** English.
- ... مستقبل تام ,... سنة مستقبلية + ➤ By 2030, I **will have finished** my studies.
- until** ... ماضي تام ,... سنة ماضية + ➤ Until 2000, I **hadn't studied** English.

١٣ لا بد من مراعاة تسلسل الأزمنة.

- ★ I **went** home and **discovered** that the thief **had stolen** my money.
- ١٤ لاحظ أن السرقة أول حدث في الجملة لذا يوضع في الماضي التام.
- ١٤ يمكننا القول أن غالبا ما يكون الحدث بعد الأفعال التالية في زمن الماضي التام.
- (**remembered - found out - discovered - realized**)

١٤ لاحظ أننا يمكننا استخدام زمن الماضي البسيط المثبت قبل **till - until**:

- ★ I **waited** in the park **until** I found a vacant place.

١٥ استخدام الروابط الزمنية مع المستقبل:

after
before
when
as soon as + مستقبل بسيط + مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام

- ★ I'll go to bed after I **do** (**have done**) my homework.
- ★ As soon as she **arrives** (**has arrived**) in London, she **will** call me.

won't + مصدر + until + ماضي بسيط أو تام or → **didn't + مصدر + until + ماضي تام**

- ★ He **won't** come until I **phone** (**have phoned**) him.
- ★ He **didn't** come until I **had phoned** him.

الماضي التام المستمر
Past Perfect Continuous

Affirmation الإثبات

فاعل + **had been + V + ing**

- ❖ They **had been studying** English all night.
- ❖ Ali **had been travelling** to America all year.

Negation النفي

الفاعل + **hadn't been + V + ing**

- ❖ They **hadn't been studying** English all night.
- ❖ Ali **hadn't been travelling** to America all year.

Question السؤال

Had + فاعل + been + V + ing ?

- ❖ **Had** Ali **been travelling** to America all year?
✓ Yes, he **had**. ✗ No, he **hadn't**.

Passive المضي للمجهول

مفعول + **had been + p.p.**

- ❖ English **had been studied** all night.

Key Words الكلمات الدالة

الكلمات الدالة (كل الروابط التي تأتي مع الماضي التام بالإضافة إلى)

all... (وقت)

- ▶ After he **had been studying** all day, he **slept**.
- ▶ He was tired because he **had been working** on the farm all day.

for

- ▶ When we visited my cousins in Canada, they **had been living** there for six months.

since

- ▶ He was covered in paint. He **had been painting** the room since we **left**.

Uses الاستخدامات

يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر ليعبر عن حدث استمر لفترة في الماضي قبل وقوع حدث آخر.

- ★ After Jana **had been studying** English from seven to nine, she **slept**.

يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر لإعطاء تفسيرات للمواقف الماضية.

- ★ Why were your clothes dirty? - I **had been repairing** my car since this morning.

حالات لا يمكننا استخدام الماضي التام المستمر ونستخدم الماضي التام البسيط.

① هناك أفعال لا تستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة عموماً وهي أفعال الشعور والحواس والملكية والمعرفة.

know - believe - owe - want - understand - wish - like - dislike
- love - hate - prefer - enjoy - realize

- ★ We **were** good friends. We **had known** each other for 10 years.

٧ لا يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر مع الأفعال التي لا تستغرق عادة فترة طويلة في حدوثها.

break down - stop - close - open - finish

★ She **was** late for the meeting because her car **had broken** down.

٨ إذا ذكرنا مرات حدوث الفعل لا يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر ونستخدم الماضي التام البسيط.

★ When I **met** Ali, he **had finished** typing 3 reports.



Exercise 04 Language Level 1

1. She felt sad because she her wallet. SB R.1
 a. loses b. lost c. was losing d. had lost
2. By the time we arrived at the theater, the movie SB R.1
 a. starts b. started c. had started d. has started
3. When I got home, I realized I my keys at the office. SB R.1
 a. leave b. left c. am leaving d. had left
4. They missed the train because they the bus. SB R.1
 a. had missed b. missed c. miss d. have missed
5. After he dinner, he watched TV. SB R.1
 a. eats b. ate c. had eaten d. was eating
6. I couldn't enter the house because I my phone at home. SB R.1
 a. forget b. had forgotten c. forgot d. forgets
7. By the age of 25, Omar his own startup. SB
 a. had developed b. has developed c. develops d. is developed
8. Before launching his business, he environmental engineering at Alexandria University. SB
 a. studies b. had studied c. was studying d. is studying
9. Many single-use plastics in some cities before his products reached the market. SB
 a. had been banned b. were banning c. have banned d. are banning
10. His team proudly said they eco-friendly boxes and cups. SB
 a. are designed b. were designed c. have designed d. had designed
11. Within a year, his products in more than fifty cafés. SB
 a. were using b. had used c. had been used d. have used
12. He had never snow until he moved to Europe. أخميم ٢٠٢٤
 a. seen b. see c. saw d. seeing
13. I finally finished reading the novel you me. سوهاج ٢٠٢٤ دكرنس ٢٠٢٤
 a. were lending b. have lent c. had been lent d. had lent
14. The child felt a bad pain in his stomach because he too many sweets. أولاد صقر ٢٠٢٤
 a. has eaten b. had eaten c. eats d. had been eaten
15. Scarcely had I reached the station the train moved. قنا ٢٠٢٤
 a. after b. than c. that d. when
16. He had found a place he parked his car. اسوان ٢٠٢٤
 a. before b. until c. no sooner d. as soon
17. Hardly had he found a good job he told his parents. ساقية ٢٠٢٤
 a. that b. when c. then d. than
18. The report wasn't published the facts had been accurately checked. كوم حمادة ٢٠٢٤
 a. because b. before c. until d. so

19. Our school decades ago.

- a. built b. was built c. was building d. had been built

ههيا ٢٠٢٤

20. No sooner had the match ended all the spectators left the stadium.

- a. than b. then c. until d. that

الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤

21. Having his passport, Emad booked a flight.

- a. gets b. got c. getting d. get

القوصية ٢٠٢٤

22. Before Ahmed went to The UK in the winter, he snow.

- a. doesn't b. would see c. had never seen d. has not seen

قلين ٢٠٢٤ الإسماعيلية

23. been arrested, the thief was sent to jail.

- a. After b. Before c. Hardly d. Having

دمنهو ٢٠٢٤

24. When Radwa arrived at the cinema, the film

- a. has already started b. have never started
c. had already started d. did never start

ديروط ٢٠٢٤

25. He bought a new flat as he a lot of money.

- a. has saved b. had saved c. was saving d. saved

بلقاس ٢٠٢٤

26. He came first and got the golden medal because he well.

- a. has trained b. will train c. had trained d. is training

ببا ٢٠٢٤

27. The children swam in the pool after they their homework.

- a. finished b. finishing c. had finished d. were finishing

سوهاج ٢٠٢٤

28. When I reached the station, the train I couldn't catch it.

- a. had left b. is leaving c. left d. leaves

ببا ٢٠٢٤



Exercise 04

Language Level 2

29. When she called me, I already to bed.

- a. had/gone b. have/been c. had/been d. have/gone

SB R.1

30. Hardly written the report when she handed it to me.

- a. she had b. did she c. had she d. she has

أبو حماد ٢٠٢٤ العياط ٢٠٢٤ شين القناطر ٢٠٢٤

31. The lady taken to hospital in an ambulance after the fire last night.

- a. is b. will be c. had been d. was

العريش ٢٠٢٤ الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤ طهطا ٢٠٢٤ القاهرة الجديدة ٢٠٢٣

32. Having , he didn't come late again.

- a. punishing b. being punished c. been punished d. punished

جرجا ٢٠٢٤ ببا ٢٠٢٤ بركة السبع ٢٠٢٤

33. No sooner saved a lot of money than I bought a new car.

- a. I have b. I had c. had I d. have I

دمياط ٢٠٢٤ العياط ٢٠٢٤ المنيا ٢٠٢٤

34. Nada couldn't buy the mobile because she all her money.

- a. have lost b. was losing c. has already lost d. had already lost

شين القناطر ٢٠٢٤

35. My daughter had learnt how to drive well before a car.

- a. bought b. buying c. had bought d. buys

إسنا ٢٠٢٤

36. I had hardly returned home my close friends for lunch.

- a. than I met b. when I had met c. when I met d. before I had met

الابراهيمية ٢٠٢٤

37. There was glass on the floor as Adel the window.

- a. has broken b. had broken c. breaks d. was breaking

أخميم ٢٠٢٤

38. What by the time your father returned home?

- a. had you done b. are you doing
c. have you been doing d. you had been doing

أجا ٢٠٢٤

39. It was my first time on a plane. I was nervous as I before. ٢٠٢٤ القوصية
 a. had flown b. won't fly c. fly d. hadn't flown
40. We for six hours when our boss told us to go home. ٢٠٢٤ ههيا
 a. worked b. were working c. had been working d. have worked
41. Finally, I finished the task you me to carry out. ٢٠٢٤ المراجعة
 a. ask b. had asked c. will ask d. had been asked
42. As soon as I reached the club, I remembered that I my glasses at home. ٢٠٢٤ فاقوس
 a. left b. had left c. was leaving d. is leaving
43. Having done his homework, he to bed. ٢٠٢٤ الخارجة
 a. had gone b. went c. was going d. has gone
44. No sooner arrive at the company than I sent an e-mail to the company. ٢٠٢٤ المنيا
 a. I had b. had I c. have I d. did I
45. She arrived late. The movie at the cinema 20 minutes earlier. ٢٠٢٤ البرشين
 a. was beginning b. had begun c. has begun d. began
46. After dinner, I served the dessert that I the afternoon before. ٢٠٢٤ بركة السبع
 a. prepared b. had prepared c. have prepared d. was prepared
47. The famous author the Noble Prize until he had written his last novel. ٢٠٢٤ قها
 a. awarded b. didn't award c. hadn't awarded d. wasn't awarded



Exercise ٥٨ Language Level 3

48. The facts by the scientist before they wrote their reports. ٢٠٢٤ الشروق
 a. had checked b. had been checked
 c. have checked d. has been checked
49. After , the food was served on the table. ٢٠٢٤ قويسنا
 a. cooking b. had cooked c. been cooked d. being cooked
50. I wish I more for this test: I can't answer a lot of questions. ٢٠٢٤ طوخ ٢٠٢٤ ميت غمر
 a. study b. had studied c. have studied d. studied
51. Having , the medicine made me feel better. ٢٠٢٤ قلين
 a. taken b. being taken c. been taken d. taking
52. My sister was surprised to discover that she to a higher position in the company. ٢٠٢٤ شرق المنصورة ٢٠٢٤ طوخ
 a. has promoted b. had promoted c. had been promoted d. will promote
53. All the lights off before the film started.
 a. had turned b. have been turned c. have turned d. had been turned
54. When I the results of the final exam, I was very happy. ٢٠٢٤ شرق المحلة
 a. had told b. had been told c. was telling d. told
55. He to sit down until he had apologized. ٢٠٢٤ إسنا
 a. doesn't allow b. didn't allow c. wasn't allowed d. hadn't allowed
56. , my car was sold for a higher price. ٢٠٢٤ بسيون
 a. After it had fixed b. Having fixed c. Having been fixed d. After was fixed
57. The people of the city hardly safe until the police had caught the murderer. ٢٠٢٤ أسبوط ٢٠٢٤ دمنهور
 a. felt b. didn't feel c. hadn't felt d. won't feel
58. , my shoes looked almost new. ٢٠٢٤ بني سويف
 a. Polishing b. Having polished c. To be polished d. Having been polished
59. The accused man until he had proved his innocence. ٢٠٢٤ أبو حماد
 a. didn't release b. had released c. wasn't released d. released

60. No sooner the thief see the police than he ran away. طامية ٢٠٢٤
 a. do b. does c. had d. did
61. The accused person set free until he had paid a bail.
 a. didn't b. won't c. wasn't d. doesn't
62. Which sentence is structurally right? بلقاس ٢٠٢٤
 a. I went out till I had breakfast. b. I don't go out till I had breakfast.
 c. I didn't go out till I had had breakfast. d. I didn't go out till I have had breakfast.
63. I wish I more for this test; I can't answer a lot of questions. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤
 a. study b. had studied c. have studied d. studied
64. After the house , we furnished it. ساقلتة ٢٠٢٤
 a. had been painted b. has painted c. had painted d. is painted
65. Hardly had to the airport by buses, when they started checking out. بني سويف ٢٠٢٤
 a. they take b. they taken c. they been taken d. they being taken
66. I'd rather you the story last week. الخارجة ٢٠٢٤
 a. finished b. had been finished c. finish d. had finished
67. On the bad news about her exam results, she fainted. دمياط ٢٠٢٤
 a. had heard b. hearing c. heard d. am hearing
68. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct: SB R.1
 a. He realized he had forgotten his wallet after he paid for the meal.
 b. He realized he had forgotten his wallet after he has paid for the meal.
 c. He realized he forgot his wallet after he had paid for the meal.
 d. He realized he had forgotten his wallet after he had paid for the meal.
69. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct: SB R.1
 a. The tickets were sold out before we had reached the box office.
 b. The tickets had been sold out before we reached the box office.
 c. The tickets have been sold out before we reached the box office.
 d. The tickets was sold out before we had reached the box office.
70. As soon as I arrived at the station, the train came. This means that ابوقرقاص ٢٠٢٤
 a. The train came first, then I reached the station.
 b. The train came at the same time of my arrival.
 c. The train came and left before my arrival. d. The train came after my arrival.
71. Having the report , the secretary handled it to the manager. شمالوط ٢٠٢٤
 a. typed b. had typed c. been typed d. was typing

2) Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- I was shocked when I saw the results. I didn't expect them to be so bad. (because)
- The concert started after the audience took their seats. (before)
- The documents were missing. Someone took them earlier. (had been taken)
- He had left the office before it rained. (been)
- After she had checked the engine, she wrote a report. (was)
- He had worked for the company for ten years. Then he resigned. (after)
- The bus left. We had bought the tickets. (before)
- I met him yesterday. I had seen him once before. (once)
- The rain stopped. We had reached home. (when)
- He couldn't answer the question. He hadn't revised the lesson. (because)



Unit 2

Startups & Young Entrepreneurs



Lessons

3

Present Tenses in Context

4

Small Places, Big Impact!

Key Vocabulary

boost ^(v)	يعزز / يقوى	notable ^(adj)	ملحوظ	process ^(n/v)	يشغل / يصنع
portion ⁽ⁿ⁾	حصة / نصيب	flax ⁽ⁿ⁾	كتان	processing ⁽ⁿ⁾	تصنيع
pesticides ⁽ⁿ⁾	مبيدات	craft ⁽ⁿ⁾	حرفة يدوية	source ⁽ⁿ⁾	مصدر
investment ⁽ⁿ⁾	استثمار	harvest ^(n/v)	حصاد / يحصد	availability ⁽ⁿ⁾	إتاحة
organic ^(adj)	عضوي	society ⁽ⁿ⁾	مجتمع	budget ⁽ⁿ⁾	ميزانية
heritage ⁽ⁿ⁾	تراث	cultivation ⁽ⁿ⁾	زراعة	employment ⁽ⁿ⁾	توظيف

Main Vocabulary

coordinator ⁽ⁿ⁾	منسق	background ⁽ⁿ⁾	خلفية	opportunities ⁽ⁿ⁾	فرص
motivation ⁽ⁿ⁾	دافع / تحفيز	perfumes ⁽ⁿ⁾	عطور	application ⁽ⁿ⁾	طلب وظيفة / تطبيق
population ⁽ⁿ⁾	سكان	traditional ^(adj)	تقليدي	clarity ⁽ⁿ⁾	وضوح
income ⁽ⁿ⁾	دخل	productive ^(adj)	منتج / فعال / مثمر	context ⁽ⁿ⁾	سياق
trade ^(n/v)	تجارة / يتاجر	governorate ⁽ⁿ⁾	محافظة	client ⁽ⁿ⁾	عميل
house ^(v)	يسكن	remote ^(adj)	بعيد / نائي	update ^(n/v)	تحديث / يحدث
raw materials ⁽ⁿ⁾	مواد خام	increase ^(n/v)	زيادة / يزداد	timeline ⁽ⁿ⁾	جدول زمني
collect ^(v)	يجمع	rainwater ⁽ⁿ⁾	مياه الأمطار	practical ^(adj)	عملي
promote ^(v)	يدعم / يرقى	crops ⁽ⁿ⁾	محاصيل	growth ⁽ⁿ⁾	نمو
enhance ^(v)	يقوى / يعزز	preserve ^(v)	يحافظ	colleague ⁽ⁿ⁾	زميل
participate ^(v)	يشارك	paid ^(adj)	مدفوع	sign-off ⁽ⁿ⁾	توقيع
overall ^(adj)	إجمالي / عام / بشكل عام	local ^(adj)	محلي	specialty ⁽ⁿ⁾	تخصص
kindness ⁽ⁿ⁾	طيبة	satisfaction ⁽ⁿ⁾	رضا	retired ^(adj)	متقاعد
maintain ^(v)	يحافظ	palm ⁽ⁿ⁾	نخيل	reward ^(n/v)	مكافأة / يكافئ
appreciate ^(v)	يقدر	values ⁽ⁿ⁾	قيم / مبادئ	voluntary ^(adj)	تطوعي
request ^(n/v)	طلب / يطلب	purpose ⁽ⁿ⁾	غرض	empathy ⁽ⁿ⁾	تعاطف
professionalism ⁽ⁿ⁾	إحترافية	cooperate ^(v)	يتعاون	patience ⁽ⁿ⁾	صبر
respect ^(n/v)	احترام / تقدير / مراعاة	assist ^(n/v)	يساعد / يعاون / مساعدة	around ^(adv)	حوالي / تقريباً / حول
leadership ⁽ⁿ⁾	قيادة / زعامة / ريادة	cultural ^(adj)	ثقافي	responsibility ⁽ⁿ⁾	مسؤولية / واجب
essential ^(adj)	أساسي / جوهري	task ⁽ⁿ⁾	مهمة / عمل / واجب	voluntary work	عمل تطوعي

Collocations

preserve crafts	يحافظ على المهن اليدوية	make a visible difference	يشكل فارق ملحوظ
bring joy and comfort	يسبب السعادة والراحة	share experiences	يتشارك التجارب
create pride	يسبب الفخر	create jobs	يوفر وظائف
help increase incomes	يساعد في زيادة الدخل	measured in money	يقاس بالنقد
enhance tourism	يحسن السياحة	maintain professionalism	يحافظ على الاحترافية

Expressions & Prepositions

social connections	روابط اجتماعية / علاقات اجتماعية	vital for	حيوي لـ
eco-friendly packaging	تعبئة صديقة للبيئة	focus on	يركز على
a large portion	نصيب كبير	set up	ينشئ
paid employment	عمل مدفوع الاجر	specialize in	يتخصص في
elderly patients	المرضى كبار السن	relate to	يرتبط بـ
of all ages	من جميع الأعمار / لكل الفئات	aim to	يهدف الى
financial rewards	مكافآت مالية	hesitate to	يتردد ان
cultural heritage	التراث الثقافي	look forward to	يتطلع الى
flax-producing village	قرية منتجة للكتان	contribute to	يساهم في / يشارك في
problem solving	حل المشكلات	engage in	يستبك مع / يتورط في
practical skills	مهارات عملية / تطبيقية	participate in	يشارك في
be recognized for	يقدر من أجل / معروف بـ	communicate with	يتواصل مع
be notable for	جدير بالملاحظة من أجل / مشهور بـ	provide.....for	يوفر

Definitions

notable	ملحوظ / بارز	► worthy of attention or recognition due to being significant, remarkable, or important
pesticides	مبيدات	► chemicals used to prevent, control, or eliminate pests that can harm plants, animals, or humans
organic	عضوي	► products or methods that are produced without the use of synthetic chemicals, pesticides, or fertilizers
crafts	حرف يدوية	► activities or items created by hand, often involving skill and creativity, such as pottery, or sewing
cultivation	زراعة	► the process of preparing and nurturing soil to grow crops or plants
process	يصنع	► to prepare, treat, or change something by a series of steps
portion	حصة / نصيب	► a part or amount of something larger
heritage	تراث	► the traditions, achievements, and beliefs passed down from previous generations

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
notable	بارز	remarkable / significant / exceptional	unimportant / insignificant / ordinary
organic	عضوي	natural / sustainable	artificial / non-organic
portion	نصيب	part / share / segment	whole / entirety / total
boost	يعزز	increase / enhance / raise	decrease / reduce / hinder
availability	اتاحة	accessibility / presence	unavailability / scarcity
clarity	وضوح	accuracy / transparency	ambiguity / confusion

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
process	يعالج	processing	معالجة	processed	معالج
develop	يطور	development	تنمية / تطوير	developed	متطور
vary	يتنوع	variety	تنوع	various	متنوع
specialize	يتخصص	specialization	تخصص	specialized	متخصص
volunteer	يتطوع	volunteer	متطوع	voluntary	تطوعي



Language Notes

Notice the Difference

boost	يعزز / يعزّز	boast	يتباهى
valuable	ثمين / ذو قيمة	valuables	أشياء ثمينة / مقتنيات عالية
society	مجتمع (جميع الأفراد)	community	مجتمع (فئة معينة)
raw	خام / نئ	row	صف
realize	يُدرك / يحقق	recognize	يتعرف على / يعترف بـ
heritage	تراث	inheritance	ميراث
various	متنوع / مختلف	variety	تنوع / تشكيلة
export to	يُصدر إلى	import from	يستورد من
pesticides	مبيد آفات (القتل الآفات)	fertilizers	سماد (يساعد على النمو)
operation	عملية (جراحية / تشغيل)	process	عملية (خطوات / تصنيع)
source	مصدر	resource	مورد
strengthen	قوة / متانة / ميزة	strengthen	يقوّي / يعزز / يدعم
provide (someone) with (something)	يُمد شخص بشيء	provide (something) for (someone)	يوفر شيء لشخص

award, reward & rewarding

award	جائزة رسمية (تمنح للإنجاز أو تفوق، غالباً من مؤسسة أو جهة رسمية)	► She won an award for best actress.
reward	مكافأة (تعطى مقابل جهد أو خدمة أو عمل)	► He received a reward for returning the lost wallet.
rewarding	مجزّي / مرضي	► Teaching young children is a very rewarding job.

note, notable & notably

note	ملاحظة / ورقة صغيرة	► Please note the change in the meeting schedule.
notable	بارز / ملحوظ	► She made a notable contribution to science.
notably	بشكل بارز / على نحو ملحوظ / خصوصاً	► She is talented, notably known for her paintings.

grow, growing & growth

grow	ينمو	► Plants need sunlight and water to grow .
growing	متنامي	► He's excited about his growing collection of books.
growth	نمو	► Regular exercise is important for healthy growth .

"Small Place"

Before you start: Think and discuss in pairs:

Reading

1) Read then Answer the following questions.

1. Why do you think the Egyptian government is focusing on villages for economic growth? How can this help the country overall?
2. Choose one of the villages mentioned in the text. Explain how its specialty contributes to both the local and national economy?
3. How can supporting small businesses and traditional crafts in villages help create jobs for young people?
4. What do you infer from the text about Egyptian villages?
5. How can promoting village products help improve Egypt's image in the world?



2) Read the following article

Egypt aims to achieve economic **growth**⁽¹⁾ by focusing on its villages, which are vital for **development**⁽²⁾ and **investment**⁽³⁾. There are 4,740 villages in Egypt, **housing**⁽⁴⁾ about 57% of the **population**⁽⁵⁾. Many villages have become known for their various industries and **crafts**⁽⁶⁾, which have helped **increase** family incomes and provide jobs for young people.

The Egyptian government has introduced programs to support small and **medium** businesses in these areas, such as a program allowing factories to be **set up**⁽⁷⁾ at home. Some villages **specialize in**⁽⁸⁾ fishing, trade, and painting, while others export **raw materials**⁽⁹⁾ like **perfumes** to international markets.



- (١) نمو
- (٢) تنمية
- (٣) استثمار
- (٤) يستضيف
- (٥) سكان
- (٦) حرفة يدوية
- (٧) ينشئ
- (٨) يتخصص في
- (٩) مواد خام
- (١٠) بارز
- (١١) يخصص
- (١٢) عضوي
- (١٣) دخل
- (١٤) زراعة

The village of "Shubra Beloula" is **notable**⁽¹⁰⁾ for producing a large **portion** of the world's **jasmine** for perfumes, with around 4 tons of the flower **harvested**⁽¹¹⁾ from there. Farmers collect jasmine flowers early in the morning and send them to factories for **processing**.

"Sidi Heneish" in Marsa Matrouh is **famous for** its **organic**⁽¹²⁾ figs, grown without **pesticides** and with **rainwater**. This village is part of a world project to **promote** clean **crops** for export.

In Aswan, "Baharif" is recognized for its date palms, producing around 300,000 trees, which are a key source of **income**⁽¹³⁾. The villagers **engage in** various crafts related to palm **cultivation**⁽¹⁴⁾.

"Shubra Mellas" in Gharbia Governorate is Egypt's largest **flax-producing village**, exporting to countries like China and Belgium. The flax plants provide income and are historically significant.

These villages contribute significantly to Egypt's economy by increasing exports and enhancing tourism, showing local industries and cultural **heritage**, thus improving

Egypt's international image and **preserving** traditional crafts.

Omar Khalil, a young Egyptian entrepreneur, had always dreamed of creating his own business. By the age of 25, he had developed a small **startup**⁽¹⁾ that focused on eco-friendly **packaging**⁽²⁾. Before launching it, he had studied environmental engineering at Alexandria University, where he gained useful knowledge about **sustainable**⁽³⁾ materials.

- (1) شركة ناشئة
- (2) تعبئة
- (3) مستدام
- (4) مستثمر
- (5) تمويل
- (6) بالخارج
- (7) نجاح

By the time his first products reached the market, many single-use plastics had already been banned in some cities. Omar saw this as a chance. He explained that his team had designed boxes and cups from recycled fibers and that local shops had welcomed the idea. Within a year, his products had been used in more than 50 cafes.

Before long, **investors**⁽⁴⁾ noticed his efforts. By the time they offered him **funding**⁽⁵⁾, Omar had built strong partnerships with suppliers and Several agreements had already been signed. He felt proud because his vision had been recognized both in Egypt and **abroad**⁽⁶⁾.

Looking back, Omar said he could clearly see how much he had achieved before turning 30. He also believed that many lessons had been learned along the way, proving that **success**⁽⁷⁾ is built step by step.



انتظروا!!!!

كتاب مراجعة العمالة

للفصل الثاني الثانوي

العمالة





Exercise 04

Key Vocabulary

1. A healthy diet can significantly your energy levels.
a. boost b. reduce c. hinder d. ignore
2. He made a/an contribution to the project, which helped the team achieve its goal.
a. small b. notable c. insignificant d. minor
3. The market was full of local , including pottery and woven baskets.
a. pesticides b. crafts c. incomes d. budgets
4. The factory raw materials into finished products through a series of stages.
a. processes b. rules c. destroys d. transports
5. You should only eat a small of dessert to maintain a balanced diet.
a. budget b. organic c. pesticide d. portion
6. Farmers use to protect crops from harmful insects and diseases.
a. processing b. investment c. pesticides d. cultivation
7. The Nile is the main of water for Egypt.
a. source b. heritage c. harvest d. portion
8. The of tomatoes is expected to yield a record amount this year.
a. budget b. harvest c. quality d. source
9. The of food involves turning raw ingredients into products that can be sold in stores.
a. operation b. delivery c. processing d. wasting
10. The country is proud of its rich cultural, which is preserved in museums.
a. application b. budget c. cultivation d. heritage
11. Successful depends on good soil, proper irrigation, and weather conditions.
a. availability b. cultivation c. heritage d. transplant
12. Making an early in technology can help you build wealth over time.
a. cultivation b. pesticides c. investment d. heritage
13. We need to identify the of the problem before we can fix it.
a. resource b. source c. significant d. reason
14. Some people are worried about the potential health risks of in food.
a. pesticides b. heritage c. portion d. application
15. The of fresh fruits and vegetables depends on the season and weather conditions.
a. heritage b. coordinator c. availability d. application
16. The company is looking to expand and create new opportunities for qualified workers.
a. conflict b. employment c. unemployment d. retirement
17. Many people prefer buying fruits and vegetables because they are grown without chemicals.
a. organic b. fast c. artificial d. chemical
18. Protecting sites from destruction is crucial for future generations.
a. availability b. cultivation c. portion d. heritage
19. Before going on the trip, we need to plan a to manage our expenses.
a. menu b. craft c. budget d. overall

20. Organic farming avoids the use of harmful

- a. profits b. pesticides c. capital d. risks

SB

21. Flax is a plant used to make

- a. fuel b. paper c. fabric d. medicine

SB



Exercise 04 Main Vocabulary

22. She took full advantage of the available to study abroad and gain international experience.

- a. dangers b. opportunities c. problems d. struggles

23. It's important to a healthy diet in order to live a long life.

- a. maintain b. forget c. ignore d. lose

24. The hotel can up to 500 guests for the conference.

- a. house b. rent c. ignore d. conflict

25. I need to fill out a/an form for the new job position.

- a. motivation b. portion c. complaint d. application

26. The professor explained the concept with great, making it easy for all the students to understand.

- a. confusion b. distraction c. clarity d. noise

27. He had a very day at work, completing all his tasks and even helping his colleagues.

- a. boring b. productive c. stressed d. lazy

28. The two countries have a long history of, exchanging goods like spices and crops.

- a. fighting b. difference c. governorate d. trade

29. The manager provided strong for the team by admiring their achievements.

- a. motivation b. stress c. violence d. ignorance

30. They went on a trip to a island where technology was unavailable.

- a. urban b. busy c. remote d. smart

31. The company is planning to its production capacity to meet growing demand.

- a. reduce b. lose c. decrease d. increase

32. The engineer came up with a design that reduces waste and costs.

- a. practical b. impossible c. unimportant d. inorganic

33. The museum organizes many events to celebrate the local heritage and traditions.

- a. industrial b. educational c. cultural d. scientific

34. His is in digital marketing, where he has several years of experience.

- a. Kindness b. patience c. weakness d. specialty

35. In many countries, festivals are celebrated with music, food, and dancing to honor cultural custom.

- a. traditional b. sociable c. scientific d. industrial

36. I truly your help with the project; it made a big difference.

- a. reject b. forget c. appreciate d. ignore

37. He showed great in his presentation, answering all questions confidently and respectfully.

- a. professionalism b. stress c. dishonesty d. laziness

38. The team must in order to complete the project on time.

- a. argue b. cooperate c. ignore d. delay



Exercise 04 Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

39. He decided to specialize software development after completing his degree.
a. with b. in c. of d. for
40. The new program aims to joy to elderly patients in nursing homes.
a. take b. do c. make d. bring
41. The meeting allowed participants to experiences and learn from each other's challenges.
a. hide b. ignore c. share d. forget
42. Volunteering in the community can truly a visible difference by improving local facilities.
a. make b. require c. take d. keep
43. To ensure the project's success, the team needs to a strategy.
a. abandon b. delay c. develop d. forget
44. Parents work hard to provide money their children's needs and education.
a. for b. with c. by d. of
45. It is important to crafts by teaching younger generations traditional skills.
a. preserve b. deserve c. carry d. make
46. It is important to focus your goals and not be distracted by irrelevant tasks.
a. of b. with c. in d. on
47. The city is known its beautiful parks and vibrant cultural scene.
a. with b. for c. of d. by
48. Local businesses help communities by providing jobs and supporting local initiatives.
a. destroy b. build c. decline d. neglect
49. Many villages are being turned from consumers into
a. experts b. producers c. tourists d. investors
50. They decided to set a new company to offer innovative tech solutions.
a. on b. of c. in d. up
51. The team showed great during the final match.
a. strong b. strongly c. strengthen d. strength
52. Regular exercise can your muscles and bones.
a. strength b. strengthen c. strong d. strongness
53. I didn't how important family is until I traveled abroad.
a. realize b. recognize c. release d. reliance
54. I didn't her at first because she had changed so much.
a. realize b. remember c. regard d. recognize
55. The museum has kinds of ancient artifacts.
a. vary b. variety c. variation d. various
56. The restaurant offers a wide of delicious dishes.
a. various b. vary c. variety d. variable
57. Helping in charities is a kind of
a. voluntary work b. paid employment c. permanent job d. business

SB

58. He prefers because it provides financial stability.
 a. voluntary work b. free service c. paid employment d. kindness
59. Parents should teach their children good moral
 a. valuables b. values c. valuable d. valueless
60. This advice is really for your future career.
 a. valuable b. value c. valuables d. valueless
61. Please keep your in the hotel safe.
 a. values b. value c. valuable d. valuables

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

62. Her achievements in science were notable. The synonym of the underlined word "notable" is
 a. insignificant b. remarkable c. unimportant d. ordinary e. significant
63. They prefer organic foods because they are grown without harmful pesticides. The synonym of the underlined word "organic" is
 a. natural b. artificial c. chemical d. sustainable e. processed
64. She served a generous portion of pasta for dinner. The antonym of the underlined word "portion" is
 a. part b. share c. whole d. total e. segment
65. The new app update will boost the performance of your device. The synonym of the underlined word "boost" is
 a. decrease b. enhance c. increase d. reduce e. hinder
66. The availability of fresh fruits is higher in summer than in winter. The synonym of the underlined word "availability" is
 a. accessibility b. scarcity c. shortage d. presence e. lack
67. The availability of resources is limited in remote areas. The antonym of the underlined word "availability" is
 a. amount b. accessibility c. scarcity d. presence e. unavailability
68. The portion of the cake she took was much smaller than I expected. The synonym of the underlined word "portion" is
 a. part b. share c. whole d. total e. entirety
69. Despite the notable success of the project, the team faced several challenges. The antonym of the underlined word "notable" is
 a. insignificant b. extraordinary c. ordinary d. exceptional e. remarkable



القاعدة سبق شرحها بالكامل في الجزء الأول



Exercise 04

Language Level 1

1. Having set his alarm clock, he to bed. طنطا ٢٠٢٣
 a. had gone b. went c. was going d. has gone
2. My father was happy because I the exam. ابو كبير ٢٠٢٣
 a. pass b. would pass c. have passed d. had passed
3. Scarcely had I reached the station the train moved. بنها ٢٠٢٣
 a. after b. when c. that d. than
4. Grandma took the medicine before to bed. ابو تيج ٢٠٢٣
 a. went b. had gone c. going d. gone
5. been arrested, the thief was sent to jail. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
 a. After b. Having c. Hardly d. Before
6. No sooner the military service than I travelled abroad. ابو تيج ٢٠٢٣
 a. finished b. I had finished c. had I finished d. I have finished
7. I had a cup of tea after my lunch. هيا ٢٠٢٣
 a. had eaten b. eating c. ate d. have eaten
8. No sooner had I had the problem all my friends came to help me. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
 a. than b. when c. then d. after that
9. We'd read our lessons than the bell rang. ٢٠٢٣
 a. better b. rather c. hardly d. no sooner



Exercise 04

Language Level 2

10. No sooner the room than he slept. ابوتشت ٢٠٢٤
 a. he had entered b. he entered c. had he entered d. he enters
11. Hardly his passport when he reported the police. شرق طنطا ٢٠٢٤
 a. had he lost b. he had lost c. does he lose d. he loses
12. The police earlier in the evening before we arrived. فاقوس ٢٠٢٤
 a. have been called b. had been called c. have called d. has been called
13. No sooner the noise than we rushed to the explosion spot. البدشين ٢٠٢٤ السويس ٢٠٢٤
 a. had we heard b. did we heard c. we had heard d. we heard
14. Having , the pain killer made me feel relaxed. بيا ٢٠٢٤
 a. taken b. been taken c. taking d. being taken
15. My brother wishes he the job offered to him last year. Now, he is broke. جرجا ٢٠٢٤
 a. had taken b. took c. would take d. takes
16. My car worked well after it الحسينية ٢٠٢٤
 a. fixed b. had been fixed c. had fixed d. was fixing
17. The author to publish his new story until he had changed its end. بيا ٢٠٢٤
 a. wasn't permitted b. hadn't permitted c. permitted d. didn't permit

18. The boy knocked on the door. There was nobody inside. His mum yet. ٢٠٢٣ شرين
a. don't return b. haven't returned c. hasn't returned d. hadn't returned
19. By the time the guests arrived, all preparations ٢٠٢٣ ههيا
a. had been made b. had made c. has made d. has been made
20. When I arrived at the station, the train had left. This means I train. ٢٠٢٣ القوصية
a. caught b. didn't miss c. could catch d. missed
21. Their flat until they had bought all the materials from the shops. ٢٠٢٣ كفر الزيات
a. didn't paint b. wasn't painted c. hadn't painted d. wasn't painting
22. The police found the money which from the bank. ٢٠٢٣ بليس
a. stolen b. had stolen c. has stolen d. had been stolen
23. When he was on holiday, Omar his grandpa every day. ٢٠٢٣ أجا
a. was visiting b. visited c. had visited d. visit
24. Hamdy back until he had finished all the tasks at the office. ٢٠٢٣ أجا
a. didn't b. wouldn't c. wasn't d. doesn't
25. Having , my room looked nicer. ٢٠٢٣ اسويط
a. painting b. being painted c. painted d. been painted
26. When I came home, I realized that I my wallet. ٢٠٢٣ الفيوم
a. had lost b. was lost c. losing d. loss
27. As soon as she returned home, she realised that she her watch in her office. ٢٠٢٣ قنا
a. had been left b. will leave c. has left d. had left
28. The car until its engine had broken down. ٢٠٢٣ البحيرة
a. wasn't sold b. didn't sell c. hasn't sold d. won't be sold
29. I had made sure the information was true, I forwarded it to my friend. LM
a. By the time b. After c. As soon as d. b & c
30. Last year, I spent a week in Italy. I of going there since childhood.
a. have dreamed b. had been dreaming
c. dreamed d. have been dreaming
31. Tamer was surprised to discover that his father him a new mobile on his birthday. LM
a. had been bought b. has been bought c. have bought d. had bought
32. When food , my father had already returned home. LM
a. was made b. had been made c. had made d. made
33. No sooner had I arrived at the office than I an email to the exporting company. LM
a. was sending b. have sent c. sent d. had sent
34. As soon as I met him, I knew I him somewhere before.
a. saw b. seen c. have seen d. had seen
35. I found the wallet which lost last Sunday. ٢٠٢٤ الفيوم
a. had b. was being c. have d. had been
36. When I went to the stadium, the match , so I missed the beginning. ٢٠٢٤ غرب المنصورة LM
a. had already started b. hasn't started yet
c. hadn't started yet d. has already started
37. They felt bad about selling the house as they it for more than sixty years. ٢٠٢٤ الرقازيق
a. were owning b. had been owning c. have owned d. had owned

38. I nobody until Ali had arrived.

- a. met b. didn't meet c. hadn't met d. wasn't met

39. By midnight yesterday, my friend and broken his leg.

- a. fall b. has fallen c. had fallen d. was fallen

ديرب نجم ٢٠٢٤

40. First, I my work. Then I met my friends in the club.

- a. will finish b. finished c. have finished d. had finished

LM

41. This time yesterday, Fatima all her lessons for the quiz already.

- a. was revising b. revised c. had revised d. has revised

ديرب نجم ٢٠٢٣

42. Egypt qualified for the world football cup finals in 2018. It since 1990.

- a. hadn't qualified b. hasn't qualified c. didn't qualify d. won't qualify



Exercise ٥٨ Language Level 3

43. Omar felt better after he the right medicine for his illness.

- a. had given b. had been given c. giving d. has been given

القوسية ٢٠٢٣

44. I'd rather you the report last week.

- a. had finished b. finished c. have finished d. were finished

الغيا ٢٠٢٣

45. his answers carefully, he realized that he had made a mistake.

- a. Being checked b. Checked c. Had checked d. Checking

أجا ٢٠٢٣

46. The river was very full because it for a week.

- a. rain b. being rained c. had been raining d. rains

47. When I went to the service centre, I was pleased to find that my car well.

- a. has been repairing b. was repairing c. had repaired d. had been repaired

LM

48. I until I make sure my car is safe for the trip.

- a. didn't travel b. have travelled c. won't travel d. hadn't travelled

LM

49. She for the exam all week so she got the full marks.

- a. studying b. had been studying c. had studied d. studies

50. I'd rather Nada her mother at the club last week.

- a. is meeting b. meets c. met d. had met

51. It wasn't Jana had passed her exam that she travelled abroad.

- a. before b. after c. until d. when

52. She no replies until one day, she got a letter.

- a. receives b. had received c. has received d. hadn't received

أسوان ٢٠٢٣

53. Really, it was the most amazing novel I

- a. will ever read b. was ever reading c. have ever been read d. had ever read

LM

2) Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- He left the house. Then it started to rain. (after)
- She had finished her homework. Then she went to bed. (before)
- The train departed. We arrived at the station. (by the time)
- The guests arrived. She had prepared the food. (when)
- I had studied hard. I passed the exam. (because)
- She had lost her keys. She couldn't open the door. (since)
- I visited the museum. I had read about it before. (already)
- The teacher entered the class. The students had made noise. (after)
- They had completed the project. The manager congratulated them. (when)

لاحظ الفرق ما بين استخدام الروابط الزمنية في المضارع وفي الماضي:

استخدام الروابط الزمنية مع المضارع والمستقبل

after
before
as soon as

inf. / inf. + s مضارع بسيط

have / has + P.P مضارع تام

+ will + inf. مستقبل بسيط

- ★ After I (do) **have done** my homework, I'll go to bed.
- ★ He **will** have dinner before he **types** the reports.

inf. / inf. + s مضارع بسيط
won't + مصدر + until + مضارع تام have / has + P.P

- ★ He **won't** come until I **phone** (have phoned) him.

استخدام الروابط الزمنية مع الماضي:

تستخدم لترتيب الأحداث فيكون الحدث الأول ماضى تام والثانى ماضى بسيط

after = before that
as soon as - once
because - since - as
when

ماضى بسيط + ماضى تام +

- ★ After she **had cooked**, she **set** the table.
- ★ I **didn't swim** because I **had forgotten** my swimming suit.

before = after that
by the time
when

ماضى تام + ماضى بسيط +

- ★ Before he **watched** TV, he **had read** the novel.

ماضى تام + until / till + ماضى بسيط منفى

- ★ I **didn't leave** home until my mother **had come**.

1. I about the good news until she has informed me.
a. won't know b. didn't know c. hadn't known d. wasn't knowing
2. The train before we arrived at the station.
a. had left b. has left c. was leaving d. will leave
3. I till my friend arrives to go to the club together.
a. left b. didn't leave c. won't leave d. am leaving
4. I'll go to bed after I my homework.
a. do b. have done c. had done d. a & b
5. After he had examined the athlete, the doctor him permission to join the competition.
a. gave b. given c. had given d. gives
6. They able to come until I had called them.
a. aren't b. didn't c. won't d. weren't

البريد الإلكتروني للأعمال

business email

A Definition of the business email

- ★ A formal message sent for professional purposes in a work or business context.
رسالة رسمية يتم إرسالها لأغراض مهنية في سياق العمل أو الأعمال.
- ★ It is used to communicate with colleagues, clients, customers, managers, or other professionals.
يتم استخدامه للتواصل مع الزملاء والعلماء والزبائن والمديرين أو غيرهم من المهنيين.
- ★ Unlike personal emails, business emails follow a more formal and polite format to maintain professionalism and clarity.
على عكس رسائل البريد الإلكتروني الشخصية، تتبع رسائل البريد الإلكتروني للأعمال تنسيقاً أكثر رسمية ومهذباً للحفاظ على الاحترافية والوضوح.

B Key Phrases for Business Emails

A. Subject Line - Keep it short and clear

الموضوع: احرص على أن تكون مختصرة وواضحة

B. Greetings (Formal)

التحية: رسمية

C. Opening Lines

الافتتاحية

D. Polite Requests

الطلب المهذب

E. Closing Phrases

الجملة الختامية

F. Sign-Offs

التوقيع

- ▶ Meeting Request – Project Update.
- ▶ Follow-Up: Job Application
- ▶ Dear Mr. Smith.
- ▶ Dear Ms. Johnson.
- ▶ Dear Hiring Manager.
- ▶ Dear Sir/Madam, (if name unknown)
- ▶ I hope this email finds you well.
- ▶ I am writing to... ▶ I would like to ask about...
- ▶ Thank you for your email.
- ▶ Could you please...?
- ▶ I would appreciate it if you could...
- ▶ Please let me know...
- ▶ Thank you for your time.
- ▶ I look forward to your reply.
- ▶ Please do not hesitate to contact me.
- ▶ Yours sincerely, (if you used their name)
- ▶ Yours faithfully, (if you didn't know the name)

C Planning Your Email

Read the plan below, then complete the examples in the table:

Section	What to Include	Example
Subject Line	Clear and short	
Greeting	Dear [Mr./Ms. + Last Name],	
Paragraph 1	Introduce yourself (if needed) and state the purpose.	
Paragraph 2	Give details or ask your question politely.	
Paragraph 3	Say thank you and invite a response.	
Closing	Best regards, [Your Full Name], [Your Position / Contact]	

كتابة رسائل البريد الإلكتروني

Email

الأجزاء الرئيسية
لرسالة البريد
الإلكتروني

Sender
(From line)

المرسل

✎ يكتب هنا عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للشخص الذي أرسل الرسالة:

From: Ahmed 2025@yahoo.com

الجزء الذي يسبق @ يسمى (user name)

الجزء الذي يتبع @ يسمى (domain name)

Recipient
(To line)

المستلم

✎ يكتب هنا عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للشخص المرسل إليه الرسالة:

To: Al Daifi 2025@yahoo.com

الجزء الذي يسبق @ يسمى (user name)

الجزء الذي يتبع @ يسمى (domain name)

Subject
Line

شريط
الموضوع

✎ يكتب هنا موضوع الرسالة الإلكترونية:

Subject (About): Giants series

لا بد أن يصاغ اسم الموضوع بشكل جيد وواضح ومختصر ليشرح المستلم على فتح الرسالة.

Salutation
/ Greeting

التحية

✎ تختلف التحية باختلاف نوع اليمينيل فهناك:

- 1 الإيمينيل الرسمي: وهو إيمينيل يرسل إلى جهة رسمية (عمل / دراسة / شكوى /)
- 2 الإيمينيل الغير الرسمي: وهو إيمينيل يرسل إلى جهة غير رسمية (صديق / أقارب /)

formal email

informal email

Dear ,
Dear Sir(Madam),
Dear Mr (Mrs),

Hi ,
Hello ,
Hey ,

Body

الموضوع

✎ يحتوي موضوع البريد الإلكتروني على هدف الرسالة:

formal email

informal email

contractions لا تستخدم اختصارات

يمكننا استخدام مقدمة للترحيب

لا تستخدم كلمات مختصرة

يمكننا استخدام الاختصارات والكلمات

abbreviated words

المختصرة وصيغة الأمر

imperative لا تستخدم صيغة الأمر

active voice يكتب في المعلوم

يكتب في صيغة المجهول

passive voice

✎ تحتوي الخاتمة على شكر أو توديع للمرسل إليه:

formal email

informal email

Yours sincerely,
Yours faithfully,
Best wishes,
Regards,

Bye,
See you later,
See you soon,
Cheers, love,

Closing

الخاتمة

Signature

التوقيع

يمكننا توقيع الرسائل الإلكترونية الغير رسمية باسم المرسل، لكن رسائل البريد الإلكتروني الرسمية أو التجارية بها أقسام توقيع تتضمن: اسم المرسل / العنوان / اسم الشركة / معلومات التواصل



Exercise 04

Writing

1. A business email is typically sent for purposes in a professional context.
 a. casual b. personal c. professional d. informal
2. The of a business email should be clear and short.
 a. greeting b. subject line c. body d. conclusion
3. When you don't know the recipient's name, we use the greeting "Dear".
 a. friend b. buddy c. cousin d. Sir/Madam
4. A common opening line in a business email is "I hope this email you well".
 a. finds b. makes c. reaches d. contacts
5. A common closing phrase is "I look forward to from you soon".
 a. working b. meeting c. calling d. hearing
6. A business email is a communication used to discuss work-related matters, maintain professional relationships, and share important information.
 a. formal b. personal c. informal d. private
7. A formal closing in a business email might be: "I appreciate your in this matter".
 a. absence b. attention c. approval d. refusal
8. A business email is used to communicate with
 a. friends b. family c. professionals d. neighbors
9. The main purpose of business emails is to work-related information and maintain professional relationships.
 a. share b. hide c. delay d. ignore
10. A business email usually includes a line, greeting, body, and a polite closing..
 a. topic b. subject c. casual d. informal
11. The key feature of a business email is its format, which differs from personal emails.
 a. relaxed b. emotional c. formal d. friendly
12. The goal of a business email is to clear and effective communication between professionals.
 a. confuse b. maintain c. avoid d. ignore
13. If you do not know the recipient's name, the appropriate sign-off is "Yours".
 a. sincerely b. casually c. respectfully d. faithfully
14. In the first paragraph, you should introduce yourself and state the of the email.
 a. purpose b. problem c. name d. background
15. In the second paragraph of a business email, you should or ask your question politely.
 a. complain b. criticize
 c. give details d. ask personal questions
16. In the third paragraph, you should say thank you and invite a
 a. dismissal b. response c. complaint d. delay
17. The subject line should be and give a clear idea of the content of the email.
 a. unclear b. lengthy c. short d. complicated



Exercise 04

Translation

1. Wars have disastrous effects on the stability of countries as they hinder the development projects and the economic growth all over the world.

سمالوط ٢٠٢٤

- أ. الحروب لها آثار مدمرة على اقتصاد الدول لأنها تعرقل مشاريع التنمية والنمو الاقتصادي في جميع أنحاء العالم.
- ب. الحروب لها آثار كارثية على استقرار الدول لأنها تعرقل مشاريع التنمية والنمو الاقتصادي في جميع أنحاء العالم.
- ج. الحروب لها آثار مرعبة على أمن الدول لأنها تعوق مشاريع التنمية والنمو الاقتصادي في جميع أنحاء العالم.
- د. الحروب لها آثار كارثية على قوة الدول لأنها تعوق موضوعات التنمية والنمو الاقتصادي في جميع أنحاء العالم.

2. Egypt has a rich history and culture dating back thousands of years, starting with the Pharaonic culture, then the Christianity and Islam. Egypt is among the earliest civilizations.

كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٤

- أ. تتمتع مصر بتاريخ وثقافة غنية مستمرة إلى آلاف السنين، بدءًا بالثقافة الفرعونية ثم المسيحية والإسلام، فمصر من أقدم الحضارات.
- ب. تتمتع مصر بتاريخ وثقافة غنية يعود تاريخها إلى آلاف السنين، بدءًا بالثقافة الفرعونية ثم المسيحية والإسلام، فمصر من أقدم الحضارات.
- ج. تتمتع مصر بتاريخ وثقافة مكلفة يعود تاريخها إلى آلاف السنين، بدءًا بالثقافة الفرعونية ثم المسيحية والإسلام، فمصر من أبكر الحضارات.
- د. تتمتع مصر بتاريخ وتقدم غني يعود تاريخها إلى آلاف السنين، بدءًا بالثقافة الفرعونية ثم المسيحية والإسلام، فمصر من أقدم الحضارات.

المنيا ٢٠٢٥

٣. إن التعليم هو حجر الزاوية في نظام أي مجتمع متطور. فهو يعتبر أداة المعرفة والوعي والتنمية.

- a. Education is the cornerstone of the system of any developing country. It is considered the tool for knowledge, awareness, and development.
- b. Education is the cornerstone of the system of any developed country. It is considered the tool for knowledge, awareness, and devotion.
- c. Education is the cornerstone of the system of any developed country. It is thought the tool for knowledge, awareness, and development.
- d. Education is the cornerstone of the system of any developed country. It is considered the tool for knowledge, awareness, and development.

٤. تقوم الحكومة بتنفيذ العديد من المشروعات القومية العملاقة في كل أنحاء البلاد وتهدف هذه المشروعات إلى توفير فرص عمل للمواطنين وزيادة الإنتاج المحلي والقضاء على البطالة.

الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤

- a. The government is implementing many tiny national projects throughout the world. These projects aim to provide job opportunities for citizens, lessen local production, and eliminate unemployment.
- b. The government carries out many giant national projects throughout the country. These projects aim to provide job opportunities for foreigners, increase international production, and eliminate unemployment.
- c. The government is carrying out many giant national projects all over the country. These projects aim to provide job opportunities for citizens, increase local production, and eliminate unemployment.
- d. The government is carrying out many giant national projects throughout the countryside. These projects aim to provide job opportunities for citizens, increase local products, and eliminate unemployment.

٥. يساعدنا تعلم اللغات الأجنبية وخاصة الإنجليزية على فهم الاتجاهات العلمية والثقافية الحديثة ومواكبة التطور التكنولوجي.

الجيزة ٢٠٢٥

- a. Learning foreign languages, especially English, help us understand modern scientific, cultural directions and slay with the development of technology.
- b. Learning foreign languages, special English, helps us understand modern scientific, natural trends and keep pace with the development of technology.
- c. Studying foreign languages, special English, helps us understand modern scientific, cultural trends and keep pace with the development of technology.
- d. Learning foreign languages, specially English, helps us understand modern scientific, cultural trends and keep pace with the development of technology.



Read the following passage and answer the questions: (8 ms)

شرق طنطا ٢٠٢٥

Social media is a digital technology that allows the sharing of ideas and information, including text and visuals, through virtual networks and communities. Nowadays, a lot of people are using social media sites, such as Facebook, Twitter, Instagram and so on. Since the Internet has propagated rapidly, social media has progressed a lot. People are using smart phones or devices which can access the Internet. It helps contact friends, family, and other people. It could, however, be abused if you don't use it properly. People can get mental and physical disorders easily through using social media. People might think social media is not the cause of the disorders. They argued that social media is good for mental diseases because it helps them express their feelings or thoughts easily. However, social media just offers limited meetings. They just meet on websites, not physical meetings.

When people are using social media, they do not need to move a lot. As a result, it leads to mental and physical disorders. Social media also doesn't help with their studies or talents. I did surveys about relationships between using social media and studying last semester. Most students answered that using social media is not helpful to study. Also, students who got good grades spent just a little time on social media. Using social media easily steals your time from what you really want to do. If you do not pay attention, your time is gone very fast.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What kind of diseases can using social media cure?
 - Mental diseases
 - Physical diseases
 - Incurable diseases
 - Simple diseases
- Using social media is for students.
 - beneficial
 - useful
 - important
 - useless
- The word "propagated" in the passage means
 - limit
 - hurried
 - provided
 - spread
- Social media helps people
 - study their lessons
 - practise their favourite hobbies
 - express their feelings easily
 - eat well
- The meetings on social media are
 - physical
 - mental
 - virtual
 - economical
- Modern technology helped people to use social media
 - more
 - less
 - limited
 - rarely
- The underlined word "physical" in the passage means
 - relating with physics
 - relating to the mind
 - relating to the body
 - relating to psyche
- According to the passage social media
 - makes people active
 - makes people lazy
 - makes people helpful
 - makes people move much



General Exercises

on

Unit

2



A

Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the (2) correct answers out of the (5) options given:

1. He has visited countless countries during his travels. The antonym of the underlined word "countless" is.....
a. plenty b. endless c. limited d. infinite e. rare
2. The organic vegetables taste better but can be more expensive than regular ones. The antonym of the underlined word "organic" is
a. pure b. natural c. artificial d. chemical e. sustainable

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. She enjoys making handmade jewelry and other during her free time.
a. foods b. crafts c. machines d. tools
4. The store sells a variety of, each with unique scents like jasmine and rose.
a. chocolates b. perfumes c. fruits d. shoes
5. Learning a new language requires a lot of and persistence.
a. impatience b. weakness c. patience d. award
6. The company offers a for employees who achieve outstanding performance..
a. penalty b. reward c. fine d. punishment
7. Water is vital human survival, and we should conserve it wisely.
a. on b. of c. for d. from
8. I drank some tea., I had eaten lunch.
a. Before that b. After that c. Before d. After
9. Last year was my first visit to Saudia Arabia, I there before.
a. had never been b. have never been c. had been d. have been
10. I had written this book. After that, I a rest.
a. had taken b. taking c. taken d. took
11. She didn't come on time she had had a car crash.
a. until b. since c. while d. in case
12. He the Nobel Prize until he had written 10 novels.
a. wasn't awarded b. hadn't awarded c. didn't award d. awarded
13. I realized that I a silly mistake in the exam when I checked my answers.
a. have made b. had made c. am making d. made
14. Business emails must have a more tone compared to personal emails .
a. friendly b. informal c. personal d. professional

الجيرة منازل ٢٠٢٤

منقول ٢٠٢٤

شرق الزقازيق ٢٠٢٤

الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

B

Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

دمهور ٢٠٢٤

People from long ago used to live in groups in caves or in jungles. They wandered from place to place hunting animals and looking for food like nuts, roots, wild fruits and berries. Then later, people began to settle along or near rivers because they were sources of water, food, trade and transport. They used the river water for drinking, cooking and washing. Their animals also drank from these rivers.

The rivers were full of fish. Rivers also made good farmland for these early river settlers. During the yearly flood, rivers carried along with them river mud which was very fertile. This fertile soil was left behind after each flood. Thus, river banks or valleys were suitable places for farming. The people started to **cultivate** their own crops.

Besides the fertile soil, rivers also provided a form of transport. Men began to use rafts and boats as a form of water transport to carry their extra food. **They** sailed to another part of

the river to trade with the other settlers. So, they became farmers as well as traders. When they began to travel up and down the rivers, they learnt about the customs and beliefs of the other settlers.

As trade and transport grew, the population also grew. These river settlements grew into cities, and these cities became centres of great civilisations like those found in early Egypt, India and China. These civilizations had powerful governments with many laws and government workers.

1. All the statements are true EXCEPT:
 a. As trade and transport grew, the population of river settlements also grew.
 b. As the river settlements grew, they became cities and centers of civilization.
 c. Egypt, India and China were at times centers of great civilization.
 d. Egypt, India and China were the only important and powerful countries in the world to have rivers.
2. The word **cultivate** can best be replaced with " ".
 a. buy b. look for c. obtain d. grow
3. The best title to this passage would be " ".
 a. Rivers and the beginning of civilization b. River cities
 c. Rivers and the customs and beliefs of the settlers d. River water
4. Rafts and boats helped the people living near the rivers to be
 a. farmers b. farmers and traders c. travellers d. sailors
5. "They wandered from place to place" means they
 a. were surprised b. travelled c. settled d. developed
6. The river banks were suitable for farming for the early settlers because
 a. the land is used once a year b. the river is used for transport
 c. people settled down there d. the soil was fertile
7. Rivers have always been
 a. sources of food b. routes for travelling c. sources of fresh water d. all are true
8. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to
 a. farmers b. traders c. the other settlers d. men from villages by rivers



Writing

1. Advertising through the internet involves email, social media and online ads marketing.

- أ- أن الإعلان عن طريق الإنترنت يشمل تسويق البريد الإلكتروني ووسائل التواصل الاجتماعي والإعلانات عبر الإنترنت
 - ب- أن الإعلان من خلال الإنترنت يشمل ترجمة البريد الإلكتروني ووسائل التواصل الاجتماعي والإعلانات عبر الإنترنت
 - ج- أن الإعلان عن طريق الإنترنت يتضمن إرسال البريد الإلكتروني ووسائل التواصل الاجتماعي والإعلانات عبر الإنترنت
 - د- أن الإعلان عن طريق الإنترنت يشمل تسويق البريد الإلكتروني ووسائل التواصل الاجتماعي والرسائل عبر الإنترنت
٢. للحفاظ على النظافة العامة، ينبغي العمل على تواجد سلال قمامة كافية في أماكن العمل والأماكن العامة مبيت غمر ٢٠٢٤

- a. To keep public cleanliness, enough letter bins should find at work places and public ones.
- b. To keep private cleanliness, enough litter bins should be found at work places and public ones.
- c. For keeping public cleanliness, enough litter baskets should be found at work places and public ones.
- d. For keeping public health, enough litter containers should be found at work place public ones.

Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

1. I ate lunch then I went out with my friends. (after)
2. The lights went out. The match had started. (before)

Answer the following questions:

1. How has modern travel changed compared to the 1870s?
2. Do you think challenges and risks are necessary for progress? Explain.
3. Why might Fogg refuse to plan for accidents during his journey?

Write a business email (about 150 words) to a company asking for:

information about a product or service

1) Complete the following dialogue: (2 Marks)

أزهر المنيا ٢٠٢٣

- Hazem** I have heard that you always revise at night, ① ?
Emad Yes. That's right.
Hazem ② ?
Emad One advantage is that it's much quieter at night.
Hazem ③ ?
Emad A negative side is that I ④

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (5 Marks)

أزهر سوهاج ٢٠٢٣

Internet addiction has become one of the serious problems especially among young people over the last few years. Spending too much time surfing websites or chatting with friends affects physical and mental health negatively. They spend their precious time doing unimportant things and as a result they neglect their duties. Students lose concentration on their study and become more likely to hate their lessons. Workers also don't concentrate on their jobs and make frequent and sometimes big mistakes. People who are addicted to the internet also lose their ability to communicate face to face with other people. They also get irritable when they lose their access to the internet.

Answer the following questions:

- When has the internet addiction become a problem?
.....
- What happens to students when they become addicted to the internet?
.....
- When do people addicted to the internet become irritable?
.....

Choose the correct answer:

- Spending too much time surfing the internet affects health
 a. positively b. negatively c. rarely d. slightly
- Workers addicted to the internet make mistakes.
 a. few b. minor c. easy d. frequent

3. Translate into Arabic: (1 Mark)

أزهر الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

Hard work leads to success in life.

.....

.....

.....

Translate into English: (1 Mark)

يجب أن نحافظ على نظافة البيئة.

.....

.....

.....



Unit 3

Sustainable Development Goals

Learning Outcomes

Reading

answer critical reading questions about Egypt Vision 2030, and guess the meanings of bold words based on context and read passages about education and healthcare in relation to the vision.

Listening

identify the main idea of a spoken text about healthcare, and guess the meaning of unknown words using context clues.

Speaking

talk with a partner about your personal goals for 2030.

Writing

write descriptive sentences using adjectives and adverbs correctly, write a blog post.

Language

correctly use adjective to describe nouns, correctly use adverbs to modify verbs.



Unit 3

Sustainable Development Goals



Lessons

1 Egypt Vision 2030

2 Egypt's Path to Better Healthcare

Key Vocabulary

sustainable (adj)	مستدام	leadership (n)	القيادة	screening (n)	فحص / كشف طبي
development (n)	تنمية / تطوير	strengths (n)	نقاط القوة / المزايا	initiative (n)	مبادرة
vision (n)	رؤية	civil society (n)	المجتمع المدني	vaccination coverage (n)	مدى انتشار التطعيم
strategy (n)	إستراتيجية / خطة	pillar (n)	ركيزة / عمود أساسي	infrastructure (n)	بنية تحتية
economic (adj)	اقتصادي	inclusive (adj)	شامل	guarantee (v/n)	ضمان / يضمن
prosperity (n)	ازدهار	affordable (adj)	في المتناول	campaign (n)	حملة
generation (n)	جيل	universal (adj)	شامل / عام / كلي	insurance (n)	تأمين
equitable access (n)	الوصول العادل	chronic disease (n)	مرض مزمن	blood pressure (n)	ضغط الدم
		roadmap (n)	خارطة طريق / خطة واضحة		

Main Vocabulary

participate (v)	يشارك	long-term (adj)	طويل الأمد / بعيد المدى	foreign (adj)	أجنبي / خارجي
participation (n)	مشاركة	step (n)	خطوة	investor (n)	مستثمر
principle (n)	مبدأ	regional (adj)	إقليمي	professor (n)	أستاذ جامعي
path (n)	مسار / طريق	classes (n)	طبقات / فئات	population (n)	تعداد سكاني / سكان
agency (n)	وكالة	position (n)	موقع / مكانة	natural gas (n)	غاز طبيعي
advantage (n)	ميزة / فائدة	high-quality (adj)	عالي الجودة	globalization (n)	عولمة
equally (adv)	بشكل متساو / بالتساوي	citizen (n)	مواطن	industrialization (n)	التصنيع / التحول إلى الإنتاج الصناعي
opportunity (n)	فرصة	funding (n)	التمويل	privatization (n)	خصخصة
gap (n)	فتحة / ثغرة	hepatitis (n)	التهاب الكبد	replace (v)	يستبدل / يحل محل
resources (n)	موارد	diabetes (n)	مرض السكري	transportation (n)	مواصلات / نقل
asthma (n)	مرض الربو	healthcare (n)	الرعاية الصحية	detection (n)	اكتشاف / كشف
fairness (n)	عدالة	investment (n)	استثمار	security (n)	أمن
balanced (adj)	متوازن	private (adj)	خاص	production (n)	إنتاج
membership (n)	عضوية	justice (n)	عدالة	prevent (v)	يمنع
partner (n)	شريك	economy (n)	اقتصاد	hire (v)	يوظف / يستأجر
sector (n)	قطاع	presidential (adj)	رئاسي	rights (n)	حقوق
launch (v)	يطلق / يبدأ	injuries (n)	إصابات	environment (n)	بيئة
vaccination (n)	تطعيم	fitness (n)	لياقة بدنية		

Collocations

give an advantage	يمنح ميزة / يعطي أفضلية	support social justice	يدعم العدالة الاجتماعية
guarantee a future	يضمن مستقبلاً	grow the economy	يُنمّي / يطور الاقتصاد
build prosperity	يُبنى ازدهاراً / يحقق الرخاء	have opportunities	يحصل على فرص
see a doctor	يذهب إلى الطبيب	have access to	يتمكن من الوصول إلى

Expressions & Prepositions

quality of life	جودة الحياة	digital technology	التكنولوجيا الرقمية
a step towards	خطوة تجاه	work together to	يعمل معاً لـ
regional leadership	القيادة الإقليمية	take part in	يشارك في
civil society	المجتمع المدني	benefit from	يستفيد من
face the hopes of its people	يواجه آمال شعبه	depend on	يعتمد على
receive vaccination	يتلقى التطعيم	sign up	يسجل / يشترك
health insurance system	نظام التأمين الصحي	focus on	يركز على
higher-quality healthcare	رعاية صحية ذات جودة عالية	close gaps between regions	يسد الفجوات بين المناطق
create a healthier future for	يخلق مستقبلاً أكثر صحة لـ	in addressing global changes	في معالجة التغيرات العالمية

Definitions

sustainable	مستدام / قابل للاستمرار	able to continue over time without causing harm to the environment, economy, or society
vision	رؤية / هدف مستقبلي	a clear idea or plan for the future; something someone hopes to achieve
comprehensive	شامل	complete and covering all or nearly all aspects of something
economic	اقتصادي	related to money, trade, jobs, or the production and use of goods and services
pillars	أعمدة / ركائز أساسية	important parts or strong supports of a system, idea, or structure
affordable	ميسور التكلفة / غير غال	not too expensive
universal	عالي / شامل للجميع	relating to or done by all people or things in the world
chronic disease	مرض مزمن	a long-term disease, like diabetes or asthma
equitable access	وصول عادل ومنصف	fair and equal opportunities for all to get the same services
screening	فحص طبي مبكر	checking people for diseases before they show symptoms
initiative	مبادرة	a new plan or program started to solve a problem
vaccination coverage	نسبة التغطية بالتطعيم	the percentage of people who have received vaccines
infrastructure	بنية تحتية	basic systems and services, such as hospitals and roads

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
comprehensive	شامل / كامل	complete / thorough / extensive	partial / limited / incomplete
pillar	ركيزة / عمود	support / foundation / mainstay	weakness / flaw / instability
sustainable	مستدام	renewable / maintainable / enduring	unsustainable / temporary / short-lived
inclusive	شامل / يشارك الجميع	comprehensive / embracing	exclusive / limited / selective
advantage	ميزة / أفضلية	benefit / edge / upper hand	disadvantage / drawback
goal	هدف	aim / target / objective	failure / loss / defeat
detection	اكتشاف	identification/ discovery/ recognition	ignorance / oversight / neglect
health	صحة	wellbeing / fitness / wellness	illness / sickness / disease

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
preside	يرأس	president	رئيس	presidential	رئاسي
develop	يطور	development	تطوير	developing	نامي
				developed	متطور
sustain	يدعم / يحافظ	sustainability	استدامة	sustainable	مستدام
participate	يشارك	participation	مشاركة	participatory	تشاركي
govern	يحكم	government	حكومة	governmental	حكومي
include	يشمل	inclusion	شمول	inclusive	شامل
balance	يوازن	balance	توازن	balanced	متوازن



Language Notes

Notice the Difference

so that + جملة	لكي	in order to + مصدر	من أجل / لكي
towards	نحو / تجاه	upwards	للأعلى
economic	اقتصادي	economical	موفر / اقتصادي من حيث التكلفة
fair	عادل	fairness	عدالة
in addition + جملة	بالإضافة إلى ذلك	in addition to + n / ing	بالإضافة إلى
inclusive	شامل (يشارك الجميع)	exclusive	حصري (لا يشمل الآخرين)
path	مسار / طريق	pass	ممر / يمر
private	خاص (ملكية)	special	مميز (ذو طابع خاص)
health	صحة	wealth	ثروة
a success story	قصة نجاح (حكاية عن نجاحات)	a successful story	قصة ناجحة حققت نتائج
abroad	في الخارج	aboard	على متن (طائرة / سفينة / حافلة)
injured	مصاب	injury	إصابة
quality	جودة	quantity	كمية

wise, wisely & wisdom

wise	حكيم / عاقل	It is wise to plan your future carefully.
wisely	بحكمة	Resources should be used wisely to ensure sustainability.
wisdom	حكمة	His wisdom helped the team make the right decisions.

comprehensive, comprehensively & comprehension

comprehensive	شامل / كامل	We need a comprehensive plan to solve the problem.
comprehensively	بشكل شامل	The topic was comprehensively discussed in the meeting.
comprehension	فهم / إدراك	Her comprehension of English is excellent.

economic, economically, economy & economist

economic	اقتصادي	The country is facing serious economic problems.
economically	اقتصادياً / من الناحية الاقتصادية	The country is developing economically to improve citizens' lives.
economy	اقتصاد	A strong economy helps people feel secure about their future.
economist	اقتصادي (خبير اقتصادي)	The government consulted economists to plan sustainable development.

Egypt Vision 2030

Before you read

1. Where do you see yourself in 2030?
2. How can you achieve this?



1) Read the following article about "Egypt Vision 2030"

Sustainable Development Strategy (SDS) means a **long-term** ⁽¹⁾ plan that focuses on improving people's lives in a fair and balanced way. It aims to grow the **economy** ⁽²⁾, support **social justice** ⁽³⁾, and protect the environment so that every person and future **generations** ⁽⁴⁾ can enjoy a good quality of life. In Egypt, this **vision** ⁽⁵⁾ is called **Egypt Vision 2030**.

Egypt Vision 2030 is a **step** ⁽⁶⁾ towards **comprehensive** ⁽⁷⁾ national development. Its goal is to **build prosperity** through **economic** ⁽⁸⁾ growth, social **fairness** ⁽⁹⁾, and stronger regional **leadership** ⁽¹⁰⁾.

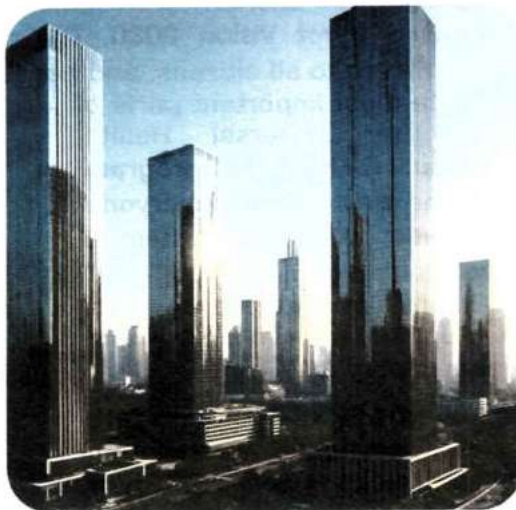
SDS acts as a **roadmap** ⁽¹¹⁾ to help Egypt make the most of its strengths and **face the hopes of its people** for a better life. The strategy depends on the **participation** ⁽¹²⁾ of the classes, which means that **civil society** ⁽¹³⁾, government **agencies** ⁽¹⁴⁾, and local and international **partners** all worked together to design the plan.

Because of Egypt's unique position in the region and the world, the SDS gives the country an advantage in **addressing** ⁽¹⁵⁾ global changes.

The SDS follows the **principle** ⁽¹⁶⁾ of sustainable development, which is about improving people's quality of life while also **protecting the rights of** future generations. It focuses on three main **pillars** ⁽¹⁷⁾:

- the economy
- society
- the environment

In addition, the SDS is **built on the ideas of inclusive** ⁽¹⁸⁾ and balanced development. This means that every person should **take part in** development, **benefit from** it equally, and **have fair opportunities**. The strategy also aims to close **gaps** ⁽¹⁹⁾ between regions, use resources wisely, and **guarantee** ⁽²⁰⁾ a better future for the next generation.



١. طويل الأمد
٢. الاقتصاد
٣. العدالة
٤. الأجيال
٥. رؤية / هدف
٦. مستقبل
٧. خطوة
٨. شامل
٩. اقتصادي
١٠. عدالة
١١. قيادة
١٢. خارطة طريق
١٣. مشاركة
١٤. المجتمع المدني
١٥. وكالة
١٦. معالجة
١٧. مبدأ
١٨. ركائز
١٩. شامل
٢٠. ثغرات
٢١. ضمان

2) Answer the following questions.

1. What does Egypt vision aim at?
2. What does (SDS) refer to?
3. What sectors does Egypt try to develop?



Listening

Before you start

1) Answer the following questions.

1. What do you think makes a healthcare system "good" or "successful"?
2. Is it free or affordable?
3. Are hospitals modern and clean?
4. Can people see a doctor quickly?



Egypt's Path to Better Healthcare

Egypt is working hard to **create a healthier future** for its people. This goal is **part of** a national plan called **Egypt Vision 2030**. The country wants to provide **high-quality**⁽¹⁾, **affordable**⁽²⁾ healthcare to all citizens, and hopes to **become a leader** in healthcare in the region. One of the most important parts of this plan is the Universal Health **Insurance**⁽³⁾ System (UHS). This program started in 2018 and **aims to** cover everyone in Egypt **by the year 2030**. The system is changing how healthcare is **funded**⁽⁴⁾ and delivered. Millions of Egyptians have already signed up, and many hospitals and clinics are being improved.

In addition to the UHS, there are several **presidential**⁽⁵⁾ health **campaigns**⁽⁶⁾ that have helped millions of people. For example, the **100 Million Healthy Lives Initiative** tested over 60 million Egyptians for **hepatitis**⁽⁷⁾ C and other serious **diseases**⁽⁸⁾. Other programs **focus on** women's health and the early **detection of chronic illnesses** like **diabetes**⁽⁹⁾ and high **blood pressure**⁽¹⁰⁾. **Vaccination**⁽¹¹⁾ is another success story. Over 95% of Egyptians now receive their vaccinations on time. Finally, Egypt is making big **investments**⁽¹²⁾ in health infrastructure. The government plans to open 58 new hospitals by 2025, and it is also using digital technology and working with **private**⁽¹³⁾ companies to improve services. The goal is to make sure everyone in every part of the country has fair and equal access to healthcare.



- (١) عالية الجودة
- (٢) في المتناول
- (٣) تأمين
- (٤) يمول
- (٥) رئاسي
- (٦) حملات
- (٧) التهاب الكبد
- (٨) أمراض
- (٩) مرض السكري
- (١٠) ضغط الدم
- (١١) التطعيم
- (١٢) استثمارات
- (١٣) خاص

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Egypt Vision 2030 aims to
 a. build more schools
 b. improve roads and transportation
 c. provide quality healthcare to all
 d. reduce internet costs
2. What does UHS aim to do?
 a. Offer free medicine to tourists
 b. Improve healthcare funding and delivery
 c. Train doctors to work abroad
 d. Replace private hospitals
3. What does the "100 Million Healthy Lives" initiative focus on?
 a. Planting trees in cities
 b. Teaching fitness in schools
 c. Screening people for diseases
 d. Selling healthy food
4. What kind of diseases are covered by early detection programs?
 a. Common colds
 b. Chronic diseases
 c. Injuries
 d. Skin conditions



Exercise 04 Key Vocabulary

1. The new roads and schools are part of the country's plan for economic
 a. vaccination b. holiday c. accident d. development
2. The older should teach young people about the importance of protecting nature.
 a. generation b. festival c. vaccination d. solution
3. Education and hard work are the keys to a country's long-term
 a. poverty b. prosperity c. illnesses d. conflict
4. The company's for the future includes using renewable energy to protect the planet.
 a. mistake b. vision c. problem d. danger
5. The team discussed a new to increase sales and attract more customers.
 a. prosperity b. vaccination c. accident d. strategy
6. The teacher gave a review that covered all the topics before the exam.
 a. narrow b. comprehension c. comprehensive d. weak
7. This store offers good quality products at a/an price for everyone.
 a. expensive b. guarantee c. chronic d. affordable
8. We must use water carefully to ensure a future for our children.
 a. broken b. harmful c. sustainable d. temporary
9. The government introduced new policies to solve the country's problems.
 a. economy b. economist c. natural d. economic
10. It's important to know your and weaknesses when preparing for a job interview.
 a. strengths b. problems c. dangers d. mistakes
11. Education is a key of building a strong and successful society.
 a. pillar b. obstacle c. branch d. route
12. The new program is designed to be, welcoming people from all backgrounds and abilities.
 a. exclusive b. inclusive c. harmful d. limited
13. Education should be a/an right, available to all children worldwide.
 a. universal b. regional c. special d. national
14. She suffers from a/an illness that needs long-term care and treatment.
 a. economic b. economical c. chronic d. affordable
15. The government is working to provide opportunities for education to all citizens.
 a. screening b. strict c. chronic d. equitable
16. Every student should have to the internet to study and learn effectively.
 a. access b. exit c. block d. secret
17. Health workers organized a free to check people for early signs of cancer.
 a. screaming b. screening c. guarantee d. infrastructure
18. High blood can lead to serious heart problems if not treated.
 a. level b. temperature c. pressure d. stress
19. The government is working hard to achieve development that meets the needs of the present without harming future generations.
 a. narrow b. temporary c. sustainable d. destructive
20. This product comes with a one-year against defects or damage.
 a. infrastructure b. strategy c. screening d. guarantee

21. The company launched a new to reduce plastic waste and protect the environment.
 a. initiative b. mistake c. vaccination d. access
22. Children receive a / an to protect them from dangerous diseases.
 a. screen b. infrastructure c. vaccination d. guarantee
23. The government increased health insurance to include more families.
 a. coverage b. chronic c. pressure d. path



Exercise 04 Main Vocabulary

24. Tourism plays an important role in supporting the country's
 a. festival b. economy c. mountain d. forest
25. The judge worked hard to make sure that everyone was treated with
 a. justice b. noise c. traffic d. furniture
26. The manager presented a clear to achieve the company's goals within five years.
 a. roadmap b. recipe c. road d. root
27. Regular exercise is an important toward staying healthy.
 a. region b. class c. step d. position
28. The teacher encouraged students' active in class discussions.
 a. pollution b. participation c. celebration d. decoration
29. The United Nations has a special that helps provide food and medicine to countries in crisis.
 a. pillar b. disease c. agency d. civil
30. Honesty is an important that everyone should follow in daily life.
 a. partiple b. citizen c. population d. principle
31. Hard work and determination are the to achieving your dreams.
 a. path b. block c. citizen d. diabetes
32. Saving money is important for your financial security.
 a. short-term b. long-term c. temporary d. instant
33. He is my business in our new restaurant project.
 a. region b. position c. partner d. step
34. Knowing more than one language gives you a / an when applying for jobs.
 a. gap b. advantage c. disadvantage d. demerit
35. The teacher treated all the students, without showing favoritism.
 a. equally b. partially c. unequally d. separately
36. This scholarship is a great for students to study abroad.
 a. disadvantage b. demerit c. gap d. opportunity
37. Water and oil are natural that must be used wisely.
 a. fairness b. resources c. balance d. opportunities
38. The judge is known for his honesty and in making decisions.
 a. fairness b. hepatitis c. dishonesty d. cruelty
39. It's important to eat a / an diet to stay healthy and strong.
 a. balanced b. unhealthy c. heavy d. irregular
40. Factories must reduce pollution to protect the natural
 a. machines b. gaps c. environment d. buildings
41. Climate change has different effects on various ecosystems.
 a. regional b. conflict c. personal d. private

42. There is a huge between rich and poor people in some countries.
 a. tap b. gap c. globalization d. agency
43. Many countries rely on as a source of energy.
 a. natural gas b. sugar cane c. water bottles d. paper
44. The spread of culture and technology across countries is called
 a. privatization b. globalization c. transportation d. literacy
45. The country's rapid has created many new jobs.
 a. recreation b. relaxation c. industrialization d. farming
46. The government decided on the of state-owned companies.
 a. protection b. celebration c. taxation d. privatization
47. The country will hold elections next month.
 a. detection b. private c. presidential d. president
48. The doctor explained that is a serious disease that affects the liver.
 a. blood pressure b. flu c. cold d. hepatitis



Exercise Ph

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives, Notes & Definitions

49. A strong economy helps to build and improve living standards.
 a. prosperity b. poverty c. waste d. debts
50. Doctors should focus preventing diseases rather than only treating them.
 a. at b. in c. on d. with
51. means related to money, trade, jobs, or the production and use of goods and services.
 a. Infrastructure b. Sustainable c. Vision d. Economic
52. New businesses and investments can help the economy of a country.
 a. limit b. destroy c. reduce d. grow
53. Young people should opportunities to develop their talents.
 a. face b. have c. avoid d. waste
54. If you feel unwell, it's important to see a
 a. fever b. symptom c. doctor d. diagnose
55. means not too expensive.
 a. Universal b. Affordable c. Economist d. Pillars
56. We should all work together to the environment for future generations.
 a. protect b. pollute c. waste d. destroy
57. The committee will act an advisor to the president.
 a. in b. as c. on d. for
58. Scientists are involved global climate changes.
 a. in b. on c. at d. for
59. The word means important parts of a system, idea, or structure.
 a. pillars b. comprehensive c. screening d. sustainable
60. Students are encouraged to part in school activities.
 a. bake b. make c. take d. bring
61. The campaign "100 Million Lives" aims to improve global health by 2030.
 a. Healthy b. Health c. Healthily d. Unhealthy
62. Everyone can benefit regular exercise and a healthy diet.
 a. in b. from c. on d. at

63. The word means to be able to continue over time without causing harm to the environment, economy, or society.
 a. sustainable b. comprehensive c. economic d. suitable
64. Many organizations work to social justice for all members of society.
 a. avoid b. ignore c. neglect d. support
65. A/An means a clear idea or plan for the future; something someone hopes to achieve.
 a. infrastructure b. vision c. initiative d. screening
66. means complete and strong supports covering all or nearly all aspects of something.
 a. Universal b. Affordable c. Comprehensive d. Pillars
- Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.**
67. Eating vegetables is important for good health. "Health" is opposite in meaning to ".....".
 a. illness b. wellbeing c. sickness d. fitness e. wellness
68. We need a comprehensive plan to solve the city's traffic problems. The synonym of "comprehensive" is
 a. complete b. partial c. thorough d. limited e. incomplete
69. Speaking two languages is an advantage in finding a good job. The antonym of "advantage" is
 a. drawback b. benefit c. disadvantage d. edge e. upper hand
70. Education is one of the main pillars of a successful society. In this sentence, "pillars" can be replaced by
 a. weakness b. support c. flaw d. foundation e. ruin
71. We must find sustainable ways to protect the environment. The synonym of "sustainable" is
 a. unsustainable b. temporary c. renewable d. short-lived e. maintainable
72. Early detection of diseases can save lives. The antonym of "detection" is
 a. identification b. ignorance c. discovery d. oversight e. recognition
73. We need inclusive policies that support everyone equally. In this sentence, "inclusive" can be replaced by
 a. comprehensive b. exclusive c. overall d. limited e. selective
74. Technology gives us the advantage of faster communication. The synonym of "advantage" is
 a. disadvantage b. benefit c. drawback d. edge e. handicap
75. The school creates an inclusive environment for all students. "Inclusive" is opposite in meaning to ".....".
 a. comprehensive b. limited c. complete d. exclusive e. embracing
76. The team worked hard to achieve their goal of winning the match. In this sentence, "goal" can be replaced by
 a. failure b. defeat c. aim d. loss e. target
77. The police used special equipment for the detection of explosives. The synonym of "detection" is
 a. identification b. discovery c. ignorance d. oversight e. neglect
78. The company is working on sustainable energy solutions. The antonym of "sustainable" is
 a. renewable b. maintainable c. unsustainable d. enduring e. temporary

الصفات والأحوال

Adjectives and adverbs

الصفات والأحوال Adjectives and adverbs

١- الصفة هي كلمة تصف الاسم أو الضمير وتأتي:

١ قبل الاسم الموصوف

♦ He bought a **new** flat. ♦ She was a **clever** student.

(am - is - are - was - were - be - been - being) V. to be بعد ٢

♦ He is **lazy**. ♦ They are **active**.

٣ بعد الحال

♦ We are **very** tired.
♦ Our exams were **really** hard.

٤ بعد الكلمات التالية:

look - seem - sound - appear / feel - taste - smell - touch
go - get - come - become / stay - how - fall - grow

♦ Toka seems **ill**. ♦ He gets **tired** quickly.

٥ بعد الضمانات الغير محددة (someone - anyone - nothing - anywhere....)

♦ I met **someone** strange.
♦ Ali wants to go **somewhere** isolated.

٦ لا تتغير الصفة سواء كان الموصوف مفرداً أو جمعاً، مذكراً أو مؤنثاً.

★ He is **clever**. ★ She is **clever**. ★ They are **clever**.

٧ لاحظ أن الصفة بمفردها لا يأتي قبلها (a-an) أما إذا جاءت قبل اسم مفرد يعد يأتي قبلها (a-an).

★ This house is **new**. ★ It is **a new** house.

٨ لاحظ عند وضع the قبل الصفة تتحول إلى اسم جمع ويأتي بعدها فعل جمع:

★ **The poor** should be helped by **the rich**.

٩ لاحظ الفرق بين الصفة التي تنتهي بـ ed والتي تنتهي بـ ing:

► bored - excited - amazed - interested
► boring - exciting - amazing - interesting

نستخدم الصفة التي تنتهي بـ ed كصفة لمستقبل الحدث
نستخدم الصفة التي تنتهي بـ ing كصفة للمسبب للحدث

١٠ من حيث النوع تنقسم الصفة إلى نوعين:

١ صفة قصيرة تتكون من مقطع واحد عند النطق مثل:

big

small

short

tall

fast

slow

٢ صفة طويلة تتكون من أكثر من مقطع عند النطق مثل:

expensive

comfortable

dangerous

valuable

wonderful

important

الظرف كلمة تعبر عن التكرار أو الزمان أو المكان أو الغرض أو الدرجة أو الطريقة:
نستخدم الظرف لوصف الفعل أو الصفة ويأتي:

١ بعد الفعل الأساسي (فيما عدا الأفعال التي يأتي بعدها صفة)

- ❖ He swims **quickly**.
- ❖ She studies **hard**.

٢ قبل الصفة

- ❖ He is **extremely** exhausted.
- ❖ He was **quite** calm.

٣ بين جزئي الفعل (الفعل المساعد.... الفعل الأساسي)

- ❖ I could **successfully** combine my job with playing handball.
- ❖ She is **still** doing her homework.

٤ في بداية أو نهاية الجملة:

- ❖ Toka speaks English **fluently**.
- ❖ **Unfortunately**, she failed in her exam.

الحال
Adverb

الظرف غالباً ما يكون مشتق من الصفة عن طريق إضافة (y / ly / ily) إلى الصفة:

- quiet ➔ **quietly**
- slow ➔ **slowly**

- quick ➔ **quickly**
- terrible ➔ **terribly**

⚠ لاحظ أن بعض الصفات تنتهي بـ (ly) مثل

friendly	ودود	fatherly	أبوي	lonely	وحيد	elderly	كبار السن
lovely	محبوب	brotherly	أخوي	unlikely	غير محتمل	lively	حيوي

⚠ لاحظ أن الصفة المنتهية بـ (ly) تتحول عن طريق (in a ... way (manner):

- ★ Our teacher is **friendly**. He treats us **in a friendly way**.

⚠ هناك بعض الكلمات تعامل كظرف وكصفة:

hard	جاد / يجهد	daily	يومي / يومياً	high	مرتفع / على مستوى مرتفع
fast	سريع / بسرعة	weekly	أسبوعي / أسبوعياً	late	متأخر / في وقت متأخر
early	مبكر / في وقت مبكر	nearby	مجاور / بالقرب	low	منخفض / على مستوى منخفض

- ★ I found a job very **fast**.

- ★ He never comes **late**.

- ★ Ahmad has always worked **hard**.

- ★ The plane flies **high**.

⚠ هناك ظروف غير منتظمة مثل:

good	جيد	well	بشكل جيد
everyday	يومي	every day	كل يوم
indoor (outdoor)	داخلي / خارجي	indoors (outdoors)	بالداخل / بالخارج

- ★ Heba can swim **well**.

- ★ Chess is an **indoor** game.

⚠ لاحظ الفرق بين latter - late - later - lately

- ★ It was **late** at night.

- ★ We talked **late** that night.

- ★ I haven't seen him **lately**.

- ★ Building of the new library should begin in the **latter** part of next year.

hard (adj/adv)	جاد / يجرد	hardly (adv) = almost never	بالكاد / قلما
extreme (adj)	شديد / متطرف / أقصى	extremely (adv)	جدا / للغاية
good (adj)	جيد / طيب / صالح	well (adv/adj)	بشكل جيد / بصحة جيدة / على ما يرام
most (of) (adj)	معظم / غالبية	mostly (adv)	عامة / أساسا / عادة
everyday (adj)	يومي	every day (adv)	كل يوم

أنواع الظرف Adverb Kinds

1) Adverbs of manner

ظروف الكيفية

يصف كيفية حدوث الفعل ويحجب عن السؤال بـ (كيف How) يأتي قبل الفعل أو بعده.

❖ I did very **well**. ❖ They **quickly** closed the area.

2) Adverbs of place

ظروف المكان

تستخدم ظروف المكان لتحديد مكان أو اتجاه أو بعد حدوث الفعل مثل:

❖ I will meet **her** **outside**. ❖ There is a big factory **nearby**.

3) Adverbs of time

ظروف الزمان

تشير ظروف الزمان إلى وقت وقوع الحدث وتأتي في بداية أو نهاية الجملة:

❖ I met him **yesterday**. ❖ I will visit you **soon**.

4) Adverbs of frequency

ظروف التكرار

تشير إلى عدد المرات وتأتي في بداية أو نهاية الجملة أو قبل أو بعد الفعل مثل:

❖ I visited my uncle **every week**. ❖ I meet Ali **once** a week.

تستخدم بعض ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأصلي أو بعد (V. be):

❖ I **always** get up early. ❖ She is **never** lazy.

5) Adverbs of degree

ظروف الدرجة

ظروف توضع قبل الصفة أو الظرف بهدف تحديد الدرجة التي وصلت إليها الصفة:

❖ He is **extremely** tired. ❖ He was **quite** calm.

عند استخدام الاظرف المعبرة عن النفي في بداية الجملة فإن الفعل المساعد يتقدم على الفاعل (صيغة سؤال):

Inversion after adverbs

Seldom

Rarely

Little

No sooner.... than....

Not only.... but also....

Scarcely.... when....

Hardly.... when....

On no account

★ She **never** visits Luxor.

= **Never does** she visit Luxor.

★ He had **no sooner** studied than he slept.

= **No sooner had** he studied than he slept.

استخدام ظروف الدرجة مع الصفات

١ صفات عادية: هي صفات ذات معني عادي و يمكننا استخدام ظروف الدرجة التالية قبل الصفات العادية:

very / really / quite / rather / a bit / extremely

★ I'm **very** tired.

Mr Ahmed is a **very** good teacher.

يمكن استخدام الصفات العادية في المقارنة والتفضيل

★ He is **taller than** me.

He is **the tallest** boy in our group.

٢ صفات قوية: هي صفات ذات معني أقوى بكثير من الصفات العادية و يمكننا استخدام ظروف الدرجة التالية قبل الصفات القوية:

absolutely / totally / really / completely / utterly / awfully / entirely

★ The man was **really** exhausted.

Mr Ahmed is an **absolutely** amazing teacher.

لا تستخدم الصفات القوية في المقارنة والتفضيل

لاحظ الفرق بين الصفات العادية والصفات القوية

Ordinary		Strong	
clever	ماهر	brilliant	رائع
angry	غاضب	furious	غضبان جدا
bad	سيء	terrible	فظييع
big	كبير	enormous	ضخم

Ordinary		Strong	
old	قديم	ancient	عتيق
frightening	مخيف	terrifying	مرعب
happy	سعيد	delighted	مسرور
tired	متعب	exhausted	مرهق

٣ صفات مطلقة: هي صفات ذات معني مطلق. بمعنى أنها موجودة أو غير موجودة مثل: (main - dead - final....)

لا تستخدم الصفات المطلقة مع ظروف الدرجة

لا تستخدم الصفات المطلقة في المقارنة والتفضيل

★ My father is **dead**.

(very dead x) (deader than x)

لاحظ أن **quite / fairly** تعطى معنى ايجابى بينما **rather** تعطى معنى سلبى:

★ It is **quite** cold. (I can bear it)

It is **rather** cold. (I can't bear it)

لاحظ استخدام الظروف التالية قبل كل من الصفات القوية والضعيفة:

really - pretty

★ This building is **really big / enormous**.

تستخدم بعض ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأصلي أو بعد (V. be):

★ I **always** get up early.

She is **never** lazy.

لاحظ الفرق بين الصفة والاسم:

heavy	expensive - cheap	tall - high	big - small	young - old	الصفة
weight	price	height	size	age	الاسم

لاحظ التركيبات التالية

verb (فعل) + adverb (حال) = adjective (صفة) + noun (اسم)

★ She is a **careful worker**. = She **works carefully**.

It is + adj. = adverb

★ It is **funny** that he forgot his own name. = **Funnily**, he forgot his own name.

★ It is **shocking** that he lied. = **Shockingly**, he lied.



Exercise 04 Language Level 1

1. She sings SB
 a. beauty b. beautifully c. beautiful d. beautify
2. She speaks English. SB
 a. fluently b. fluent c. fluency d. flowing
3. He speaks English very SB
 a. fluent b. fluency c. fluently d. flowing
4. He ran to catch the bus. SB
 a. quick b. quickly c. quickness d. quicker
5. The soup tastes SB
 a. deliciously b. delight c. delicate d. delicious
6. This is a very room. SB
 a. brightness b. brightly c. brightening d. bright
7. She speaks English SB - R1
 a. clear b. clearly c. clarity d. clears
8. He is a student. He always gets high grades. SB - R1
 a. successful b. successfully c. succeed d. success
9. The teacher explained the lesson SB - R1
 a. careful b. carefully c. care d. cares
10. The team worked to finish the project on time. SB - R1
 a. hard b. hardly c. hardness d. harder
11. The new curriculum is designed to improve thinking skills. SB - R1
 a. careful b. carefully c. care d. cares
12. It is cold outside. SB - R1
 a. few b. many c. too d. a lot
13. She answered the question in a way. SB - R1
 a. logical b. logically c. logic d. logics
14. He looked at me when I interrupted him. أخميم ٢-٢٤
 a. angry b. anger c. angrily d. angered
15. We didn't leave our house yesterday as it was raining بور سعيد ٢-٢٤ العياط ٢-٢٤
 a. heavy b. heavily c. heaviness d. heavier
16. This food tastes ; you can share the meal with me. LM المراجعة ٢-٢٤
 a. delicious b. bad c. badly d. deliciously
17. Jane always works ههيا ٢-٢٤
 a. hardly b. hardy c. hard d. hardness
18. Nada speaks Chinese although she makes a lot of mistakes. المنيا ٢-٢٤
 a. fluently b. fluent c. fluency d. affluence
19. Noha speaks English like native speakers. الاسكندرية ٢-٢٤
 a. fluently b. fluency c. bad d. fluent
20. She is in need to see a doctor. She is burned. الابراهيمية ٢-٢٤
 a. bad b. badly c. worse d. well
21. He can see anything without his glasses. طامية ٢-٢٤
 a. nearly b. hard c. hardly d. wrong
22. Used-car sales have risen because of the increased cost of new cars. In this sentence 'used' is a/an طامية ٢-٢٤
 a. noun b. adverb c. verb d. adjective

23. He speaks two foreign languages
 a. as fluent b. fluently c. fluent d. more fluent شرق طنطا ٢٠٢٤
24. A: How is your ill aunt today? B: She is very well. What part of speech is "well" here?
 a. an adjective b. a pronoun c. an adverb d. a conjunction جرجا ٢٠٢٤
25. We arrived 20 minutes , but we were able to catch the train.
 a. late b. lately c. latter d. latest دمنهور ٢٠٢٤
26. The meeting was very organized. It was fruitful.
 a. best b. well c. good d. better الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤
27. They played very , they lost the match.
 a. well b. good c. bad d. badly أجا ٢٠٢٣
28. We should use friendly materials when making toys for young children.
 a. environment's b. environmentally c. an environment d. environmental قوص ٢٠٢٤
29. I like handball. The rules of this game are simple.
 a. quiet b. quieter c. quite d. quietly شربين ٢٠٢٣
30. Omar feels that he succeeded.
 a. happily b. pleasing c. cheerfully d. happy القوصية ٢٠٢٣
31. He speaks French
 a. bad b. nice c. good d. badly هيا ٢٠٢٣
32. Personally, I believe what he has said. The word "personally" is a/an
 a. verb b. noun c. adjective d. adverb كفر الزيات ٢٠٢٣
33. We were exhausted after a three-day journey without sleeping.
 a. very b. completely c. quiet d. quite قنا ٢٠٢٣
34. The footballer played today. He scored three goals!
 a. brilliantly b. brilliant c. badly d. lovely البحيرة ٢٠٢٣
35. A: How do science fiction books make Aya feel? B: They make her feel
 a. bore b. bored c. boring d. boredom
36. Most students are usually before taking exams.
 a. stress b. stressing c. stressful d. stressed
37. All people know that he has always been a businessman.
 a. success b. successful c. succeed d. succeeding
38. I've never seen such a film.
 a. funniest b. fun c. funnier d. funny
39. Mohamed Salah is a skillful player.
 a. high b. height c. highly d. as high شين القناطر ٢٠٢٤



Exercise ٥٨ Language Level 2

40. She can play the piano very ; she is talented.
 a. better b. good c. well d. badly ابوتشت ٢٠٢٤
41. The film is hilarious. We all loved it.
 a. very b. fairly c. absolutely d. terribly ملوي ٢٠٢٤
42. We watched a film last night. We were during watching it.
 a. frightened - frightening b. frightening - frightened
 c. terrified - terrifying d. scared - scary ديروط ٢٠٢٤
43. My friend was furious when we laughed at her/him.
 a. very b. slightly c. a little d. completely سوهاج ٢٠٢٤

44. Mai speaks Italian so , she always comes last at that subject. جرجا ٢٠٢٤
 a. bad b. terrible c. terribly d. wrong
45. After the match, the players were exhausted. كافر الشيخ ٢٠٢٤
 a. terribly b. very c. entire d. enough
46. Our team played قلاب ٢٠٢٤
 a. extreme well b. extreme good c. extremely good d. extremely well
47. The cost of living has risen these days. بلبس ٢٠٢٢
 a. dramatic b. dramatically c. dramatical d. drama
48. The two cars seem to be the same, but they have a/an different colour. ابو تيج ٢٠٢٢
 a. lot b. exactly c. slightly d. much
49. The teacher talked so that we could all hear him. ابو كبير ٢٠٢٢
 a. loud b. loudly c. loudest d. loudness
50. You're an and punctual worker; the manager is going to promote you. LM
 a. actively b. active c. action d. activate
51. This is an question; I can't answer it. LM
 a. extreme difficulty b. extreme difficult c. extreme difficulties d. extremely difficult
52. Hashem is a very active worker; he all the time. LM
 a. works hard b. hardly works c. works hardly d. a hard worker
53. He to find a job, but he had no luck.
 a. tried hard b. tried hardly c. hardly tried d. hard tried
54. It's hot in the desert in August, sometimes up to 50°C.
 a. bit b. quite c. extremely d. extreme
55. This book's brilliant. You must read it!
 a. totally b. very c. quite d. bit
56. This nurse has been working all night so she feels exhausted.
 a. very b. quiet c. little d. completely
57. She studies as as her friend does.
 a. carefully b. careful c. carefulness d. careless
58. Our teacher always treats us in way.
 a. father b. a fatherly c. fatherly d. a father
59. I'm not with my job. I want to change jobs.
 a. satisfied b. satisfy c. satisfying d. satisfaction
60. Our teacher always talks to us
 a. friend b. friendly c. a friendly d. in a friendly way
61. I think little Jenny today. She can go to school.
 a. seem better b. looks better c. seems best d. looks best
62. Everyone of us has their ambitions in life.
 a. personality b. personally c. persons d. personal



Exercise 04 Language Level 3

63. Which of the following sentence is grammatically incorrect? سمالوط ٢٠٢٤
 a. I speak fluently English now. b. I speak English fluently now.
 c. I speak fluent English now. d. I speak English more fluently than last year.
64. The past simple tense is quite easy. I can طامية ٢٠٢٤
 a. easily it study b. it study easily c. study it easily d. study easily it

65. Wise people work more; speak less. In this sentence, the word less is a/an..... . ٢٠٢٥ بسبون
- a. comparative adjective b. adverb of manner
c. adverb of degree d. positive adjective
66. Everybody congratulated him for the party. ٢٠٢٤ قويسنا
- a. well-organized extremely b. extremely well-organized
c. well-extremely organized d. extreme well organized
67. Which of the following is correctly structured? ٢٠٢٤ ساقنة
- a. He looked happily last week. b. He looked happy last week.
c. He looked happy at the children. d. He looked happiness at the children.
68. Which of the following is structurally incorrect? LM
- a. This soup smells badly. b. Hatim is a fast runner.
c. You should speak politely with others. d. What a wonderful book! .
69. Baher performs ; he is a musician. LM
- a. surprising / surprising b. surprisingly/ surprisingly
c. surprisingly/ surprising d. surprising / surprisingly
70. Which of the following **isn't** a correct adverb usage? LM
- a. Atef runs quickly. b. Faten is completely busy.
c. This juice smells badly. d. Surprisingly, Wael won the gold medal.
71. He is looking at me. He looks
- a. nervous / nervously b. nervous / nervous
c. nervously / nervous d. a nervous / a nervously
72. Two people were injured in a accident.
- a. serious / seriously b. seriously / serious c. a serious / a seriously d. serious / serious
73. Which sentence has the correct structure? ٢٠٢٤ بني سوييف
- a. She bought extreme expensive a car.
b. She bought an expensive extremely car.
c. She bought an extremely expensive car.
d. She bought expensive car extremely.
74. Huda speaks English more fluently than before. This means that ٢٠٢٤ قوص
- a. Huda used to speak English fluently, but now she doesn't.
b. Huda can speak English as fluently as she used to.
c. Huda didn't use to speak English as fluently as she does now.
d. Huda used to speak English more fluently than she does now.
- 2) Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:**
1. She always arrives on time for work. (punctual) SB - R1
2. My sister speaks French very well. (fluent) SB - R1
3. He is very slow when he does his homework. (slowly) SB - R1
4. It rains a lot in this city. (frequently) SB - R1
5. We go to the beach every summer. (always) SB - R1
6. The movie was boring, so I fell asleep. (bored) SB - R1
7. He speaks very quietly. (in a quiet way)
8. She cleans her room every weekend. (usually) SB - R1
9. They don't often go to the movie theater. (rarely) SB - R1
10. The teacher explained the lesson clearly. (clear)
11. He plays the piano skillfully. (skillful)
12. He is a careful driver. (carefully)



Unit 3

Sustainable Development Goals



Lessons

3
4

Egypt Education Vision 2030

Ambitious Projects

Key Vocabulary

cornerstone ⁽ⁿ⁾	حجر الأساس	enrol ^(v)	يسجل / يقيّد / يُلحق	congestion ⁽ⁿ⁾	ازدحام / احتقان
sector ⁽ⁿ⁾	قطاع	vocational ^(adj)	مهني	expand ^(v)	يوسع / يمدد
empower ^(v)	يمكن / يزود بالقوة	knowledgeable ^(adj)	واسع المعرفة	expansion ⁽ⁿ⁾	توسع / تمدد
rote memorization ⁽ⁿ⁾	الحفظ عن ظهر قلب	determination ⁽ⁿ⁾	عزيمة / إصرار	trade routes ⁽ⁿ⁾	طرق التجارة
enhance ^(v)	يعزز / يحسن	beneficial ^(adj)	مفيد	interactive ^(adj)	تفاعلي
illiteracy ⁽ⁿ⁾	الأمية	human capital ⁽ⁿ⁾	رأس المال البشري	restoration ⁽ⁿ⁾	ترميم / استعادة
prosper ^(v)	يزدهر / ينجح مالياً	visionary initiative ⁽ⁿ⁾	مبادرة ذات رؤية مستقبلية	solar installations ⁽ⁿ⁾	منشآت شمسية / تركيبات شمسية
prosperous ^(adj)	مزدهر / ناجح	curricula ⁽ⁿ⁾	مناهج	remarkable ^(adj)	رائع / استثنائي

Main Vocabulary

replace	يستبدل / يغير	training ⁽ⁿ⁾	تدريب	exist ^(v)	يوجد / يعيش
industries ⁽ⁿ⁾	صناعات	archaeological ^(adj)	أثري	priceless ^(adj)	لا يقدر بثمن
emphasize ^(v)	يؤكد / يشدد على	responsibility ⁽ⁿ⁾	مسؤولية	treasures ⁽ⁿ⁾	كنوز
effort ⁽ⁿ⁾	جهد / مجهود	entire ^(adj)	كامل / كل	attract ^(v)	يجذب
redesign ^(n/v)	يعيد / إعادة التصميم	experience ⁽ⁿ⁾	خبرة / تجربة	the globe ⁽ⁿ⁾	الكرة الأرضية / العالم
creativity ⁽ⁿ⁾	إبداع	ambitious ^(adj)	طموح (شخص)	display ⁽ⁿ⁾	عرض / معرض
critical thinking	التفكير النقدي	impressive	مدهش / مثير للإعجاب	artifacts ⁽ⁿ⁾	قطع أثرية
problem-solving ⁽ⁿ⁾	حل المشكلات	efficiently ^(adv)	بكفاءة / بفعالية	collection ⁽ⁿ⁾	مجموعة / تجميع
innovation	ابتكار / تجديد	sustainably ^(adv)	بشكل مستدام	tomb ⁽ⁿ⁾	قبر / مقبرة
method ⁽ⁿ⁾	طريقة / أسلوب	skillfully ^(adv)	بمهارة	3D model ⁽ⁿ⁾	نموذج ثلاثي الأبعاد
competitive ^(adj)	تنافسي	notable ^(adj)	بارز / ملحوظ	research ⁽ⁿ⁾	بحث / أبحاث
trends ⁽ⁿ⁾	اتجاهات / نزعات	smoothly ^(adv)	بسلاسة	reflect ^(v)	يعكس
efficiently ^(adv)	بكفاءة / بشكل فعال	large-scale ^(adj)	واسع النطاق	effective	فعال
emphasize ^(v)	يؤكد / يبرز	confidently ^(adv)	بثقة	heritage ⁽ⁿ⁾	تراث
transform ^(v)	يحول / يغير جذرياً	leadership ⁽ⁿ⁾	قيادة	funding ⁽ⁿ⁾	تمويل / تمويل مالي
creativity ⁽ⁿ⁾	إبداع / ابتكار	challenges ⁽ⁿ⁾	تحديات	infrastructure ⁽ⁿ⁾	البنية التحتية
glorious ^(adj)	مجيد / رائع	shortage ⁽ⁿ⁾	نقص / قلة	outdated ^(adj)	قديم / متقادم
eliminate ^(v)	يزيل / يقضي على	burden ⁽ⁿ⁾	عبء / مسؤولية ثقيلة	permanently ^(adv)	بشكل دائم

Collocations

reduce congestion	يقلل الازدحام	build a generation	يبنى جيلاً
drive sustainable development	يقود التنمية المستدامة	transform education	يحدث ثورة في التعليم
achieve these goals	يحقق هذه الأهداف	educational reform	إصلاح تعليمي
introduce efforts	يقدم جهوداً / يبذل جهوداً	make changes	يجري تغييرات
a leading country	دولة رائدة	new administrative capital	العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة

Expressions & Prepositions

keep up with	يواكب / يساير	ongoing training	تدريب مستمر
outlined goals	الأهداف المحددة / الموضحة	create a prosperous future	يخلق مستقبلا مزدهرا
invest in its human capital	يستثمر في رأس ماله البشري	save both time and money	يوفر الوقت والمال معا
on the global stage	على الساحة العالمية	move forward confidently	يتقدم بثقة
pass more smoothly	يمر بسلاسة أكبر	set a bright example	يضع مثالا مشرقا / يحتذى به
create industries	خلق صناعات	from across the globe	من جميع أنحاء العالم
high-quality education system	نظام تعليم عالي الجودة	cultural exchange	تبادل ثقافي
be intended to	يقصد به / مخصص لـ	accessible to	متاح لـ / يسهل الوصول اليه

Definitions

cornerstone	حجر الأساس / ركيزة	▶ the most important part or foundation of something
sector	قطاع / قسم	▶ a distinct part of a society, economy, or area of activity
rote memorization	الحفظ عن ظهر قلب	▶ learning by repetition without understanding
empower	يمكن / يزود بالقوة	▶ to give someone the authority, confidence, or ability to do something
enhance	يعزز / يحسن	▶ to improve or increase the quality, value, or attractiveness of something
illiteracy	الأمية	▶ the inability to read or write
prosperous	مزدهر / ناجح	▶ successful and wealthy
determination	العزيمة / الإصرار	▶ the quality of being firm in achieving a goal despite difficulties
curricula	المناهج الدراسية	▶ the subjects and content taught in a school or course
enroll	يسجل / يلتحق	▶ to officially register as a member of a course, school, or program
human capital	رأس المال البشري	▶ the skills, knowledge, and abilities of people that make them valuable for work and the economy
congestion	ازدحام	▶ a situation in which there is too much traffic or overcrowding

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
ambitious	طموح	determined / aspiring / driven	unambitious / indifferent / lazy
remarkable	رائع / ملحوظ	extraordinary / impressive / notable	unremarkable / insignificant
impressive	مدهش	striking / magnificent / outstanding	unimpressive / ordinary
modern	حديث	contemporary / up-to-date / advanced	outdated / old-fashioned / ancient
efficient	فعال	productive / competent / capable	inefficient / ineffective / unproductive
skillful	ماهر	talented / proficient / expert	unskilled / inept / incompetent
bright	مشرق / واعد	radiant / promising / shining	dim / dull / gloomy
prosperous	مزدهر	wealthy / flourishing / thriving	poor / impoverished / failing
notable	بارز	remarkable / significant / important	insignificant / trivial / minor
confident	واثق	assured / self-reliant / positive	insecure / doubtful / uncertain
large-scale	واسع النطاق	extensive / massive / broad	small-scale / limited / minor

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
memorize	يحفظ عن ظهر قلب	memorization	الحفظ / التلقين	memorized	محفوظ
empower	يمكن / يقوي	empowerment	التمكين	empowered	ممكن / معزز
enhance	يعزز / يحسن	enhancement	تعزيز / تحسين	enhanced	معزز / محسن
enroll	يسجل / يلتحق	enrollment	التسجيل / الالتحاق	enrolled	مسجل / ملتحق
know	يعرف	knowledge	المعرفة	knowledgeable	واسع المعرفة
prosper	يزدهر	prosperity	الازدهار	prosperous	مزدهر / ناجح
impress	يعجب / يترك أثر	impression	انطباع	impressive	رائع / مثير للإعجاب
install	يركب / يثبت	installation	تركيب / منشة	installed	مركب / مثبت



Language Notes

Notice the Difference

curricula (plural)	مناهج دراسية (متعددة)	curriculum (singular)	منهج دراسي (واحد)
rather than	بدلاً من / عوضاً عن	instead of	بدلاً من
receive	يستقبل / يتلقى	deceive	يخدع / يضل
increase	يزداد / يزيد	decrease	يقل / يخفض
capable of + ing	قادر على	able to + inf	قادر على
sector	قسم أو قطاع محدد (تعليمي / صحي)	department	قسم داخل مؤسسة أو منظمة (غالباً إداري)
enable	يمكن / يقوي	authorize	يمنح صلاحية / تفويض
memorization	الحفظ عن ظهر قلب	learning	التعلم / اكتساب المعرفة
training	تدريب	trainer	مدرب
rural	ريفي / قروي	urban	حضري / مدني
illiterate	أمي / غير متعلم	illiteracy	الأمية
leading	رائد / متقدم	leader	قائد
vision	رؤية / تصور للمستقبل	visionary	رؤيوي / ذو رؤية مستقبلية
repair	يصلح / تصلح	reform	إصلاح / تجديد
compete	يتنافس	competitive	تنافسي

• attract, attraction, attractive & attractively

attract	يجذب / يستقطب	► The museum attracts thousands of visitors every year.
attraction	جذب / معلم جذب	► The Pyramids are a famous tourist attraction .
attractive	جذاب / ملفت	► She has an attractive smile.
attractively	بطريقة جذابة	► The hotel is attractively located near the beach.

• archaeology, archaeologist & archaeological

archaeology	علم الآثار	► Archaeology helps us understand civilizations.
archaeologist	عالم آثار	► The archaeologist discovered an ancient tomb.
archaeological	أثري / متعلق بالآثار	► The museum has many archaeological artifacts.

interact, interaction, interactive & interactively

interact	يتفاعل	Students interact with each other during group activities.
interaction	تفاعل	The interaction between teachers and students is very important.
interactive	تفاعلي	The museum has an interactive exhibit for children.
interactively	بطريقة تفاعلية	Students learn interactively using digital tools.



Reading

Egypt Education vision 2030

Before you start:

1) Answer the following questions.

1. Why is it important to be educated?
2. How could education help you improve your life?



2) Read the following text

Education is a **cornerstone**⁽¹⁾ of Egypt Vision 2030, which **aims to** create a competitive, balanced, and different types of industries or **sectors**⁽²⁾. The vision emphasizes the development of a high-quality education system that is **accessible** to all Egyptians. Transforming education is a key to **empowering**⁽³⁾ citizens and driving sustainable development.



- (١) حجر الأساس
- (٢) قطاعات
- (٣) يزود بالقوة
- (٤) مناهج
- (٥) الحفاظ عن ظهر قلب
- (٦) يعزز / يحسن
- (٧) الأمية
- (٨) مقيد / مسجل
- (٩) واسع المعرفة
- (١٠) الإصلاح التعليمي
- (١١) مزدهر / ناجح

To **achieve** these **goals**, several efforts have been introduced. **Curricula**⁽⁴⁾ are being redesigned to **focus on** creativity, critical thinking, and problem-solving rather than **rote memorization**⁽⁵⁾. New technologies have been introduced in classrooms to **enhance**⁽⁶⁾ the learning experience. Teachers are receiving continuous training to **improve** their **teaching methods** and **keep up with** global educational Egypt Education Vision 2030 trends.

Egypt Vision 2030 also focuses on reducing **illiteracy**⁽⁷⁾, expanding **access to** early childhood education, and increasing the number of students **enrolled**⁽⁸⁾ in technical and vocational training. By 2030, the government hopes to build a generation that is not only **knowledgeable**⁽⁹⁾ but also **capable of** innovation and leadership.

Although challenges **such as** funding and infrastructure still exist, the responsibility to **educational reform**⁽¹⁰⁾ reflects Egypt's **determination to** invest in its human capital. The changes being made today are intended to create a brighter, more **prosperous**⁽¹¹⁾ **future** for the entire nation.

The Grand Egyptian Museum

The Grand Egyptian Museum is one of Egypt's most **ambitious** cultural projects. Located near the Pyramids of Giza, it is designed to be the largest **archaeological** museum in the world. The idea behind the museum is to protect Egypt's **priceless treasures** and present them in a modern way that attracts visitors **from across the globe**.

The museum will **display** more than 100,000 **artifacts**, including the complete collection of King Tutankhamun's tomb **for the first time**. Advanced technology **such as** digital screens, **interactive** guides, and 3D models will help visitors **learn about** ancient Egyptian history in a new and exciting way.

The GEM is not only a museum but also a research and education center. It includes spaces for **restoration**, training, and **cultural exchange**. The project has created jobs for many Egyptians and supports tourism, which is an important **part of** the national economy.

The Grand Egyptian Museum reflects Egypt's vision to **connect** its glorious past **with** the future, making history **accessible to** new generations while strengthening Egypt's role **as a leader** in world heritage.



Listening

Ambitious Projects

Egypt has recently launched several **ambitious**⁽¹⁾ projects that are shaping its future in **remarkable**⁽²⁾ ways. One of the most **impressive**⁽³⁾ examples is the **new administrative capital**⁽⁴⁾, which is being built carefully to reduce **congestion**⁽⁵⁾ in Cairo. The city is designed with modern buildings, wide green spaces, and advanced technology that will serve citizens **efficiently**⁽⁶⁾.

Another important project is the Benben Solar Park in Aswan. It is one of the world's largest **solar installations**⁽⁷⁾ and produces clean energy **sustainably**⁽⁸⁾. Engineers worked hard and **skillfully**⁽⁹⁾ to complete it, making Egypt a leading country in **renewable energy**⁽¹⁰⁾.

The Suez Canal **expansion**⁽¹¹⁾ is also a **notable**⁽¹²⁾ achievement. The project was finished quickly and has increased international **trade routes**⁽¹³⁾ significantly. Ships can now pass more smoothly, saving both time and money.

These projects are not only **large-scale**⁽¹⁴⁾ but also highly **beneficial**⁽¹⁵⁾. They improve daily life for Egyptians and position the country strongly on the global stage. With such **visionary initiatives**⁽¹⁶⁾, Egypt is moving forward **confidently**⁽¹⁷⁾ and setting a bright example for other nations.



- ١ حلموح
- ٢ رائع / استثنائي
- ٣ مدهش
- ٤ العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة
- ٥ ازدحام / احتقان
- ٦ بكفاءة
- ٧ منشآت شمسية
- ٨ بشكل مستدام
- ٩ بمهارة
- ١٠ طاقة متجددة
- ١١ توسع
- ١٢ ملحوظا
- ١٣ طرق التجارة
- ١٤ واسع النطاق
- ١٥ مفيد
- ١٦ مبادرة ذات رؤية
- ١٧ بثقة



Exercise 09

Key Vocabulary

1. The government is investing more money in the health
a. decoration b. sector c. celebration d. vacation
2. The new program focuses on women to take leadership roles.
a. limiting b. ignoring c. empowering d. discouraging
3. The teacher encouraged students to think critically instead of using memorization.
a. problem b. physical c. creative d. rote
4. Technology can the quality of education in schools.
a. block b. decrease c. enhance d. ignore
5. The government started a campaign to fight in rural areas.
a. poor b. illiteracy c. farming d. celebration
6. A country provides good education, jobs, and healthcare for its people.
a. prosperous b. poor c. empty d. dangerous
7. Education is the of a strong and successful society.
a. cornerstone b. furniture c. festival d. building
8. She made a improvement in her English skills within just three months.
a. ordinary b. remarkable c. usual d. common
9. The city suffers from heavy traffic during rush hours.
a. silence b. cleanliness c. congestion d. relaxation
10. Many countries are investing in installations to produce clean and renewable energy.
a. oil b. wind c. coal d. solar
11. The company's rapid into international markets increased its profits significantly.
a. closure b. reduction c. expansion d. limitation
12. Regular exercise is for both physical and mental health.
a. beneficial b. harmful c. useless d. dangerous
13. The government launched a initiative to tackle climate change and promote sustainable development.
a. ordinary b. visionary c. failed d. temporary
14. Teachers are updating school to include more technology-based lessons.
a. buildings b. curricula c. uniforms d. holidays
15. Students can in online courses to improve their skills.
a. join b. ignore c. enroll d. leave
16. He decided to attend a school to learn practical skills for a career.
a. musical b. theoretical c. recreational d. vocational
17. A good teacher is about their subject and can answer all questions.
a. ignorant b. careless c. knowledgeable d. lazy
18. With hard work and, anyone can achieve their goals.
a. hesitation b. determination c. weakness d. laziness
19. Investing in education and training is essential to develop a country's capital.
a. human b. physical c. natural d. cultural



Exercise 01

Main Vocabulary

20. The company decided to its website as it looked dull.
 a. redesign b. destroy c. ignore d. repeat
21. The teacher always the importance of reading.
 a. forgets b. ignores c. emphasizes d. avoids
22. The scientist used a new to test the experiment.
 a. ideal b. mistake c. method d. story
23. The new employees received special before starting work.
 a. train b. party c. punishment d. training
24. Do you think life can on other planets?
 a. exist b. disappear c. sleep d. cook
25. Taking care of a pet is a big
 a. funny b. responsibility c. game d. mistake
26. Fashion designers always follow the latest
 a. trends b. rules c. schools d. mountains
27. The company plans to its operations next year.
 a. reduce b. expand c. stop d. hide
28. She read the book in just one day.
 a. small b. broken c. entire d. short
29. The mirror will your image clearly.
 a. erase b. hide c. break d. reflect
30. The building is very with its modern design.
 a. boring b. impressive c. ordinary d. weak
31. We should use resources to protect the planet.
 a. carelessly b. wastefully c. quickly d. sustainably
32. The artist painted the portrait It was wonderful.
 a. skillfully b. clumsily c. badly d. roughly
33. She is a scientist known around the world.
 a. unknown b. notable c. invisible d. ordinary
34. They discovered an important site in Egypt.
 a. modern b. archaeological c. fictional d. imaginary
35. The museum owns a painting from the 18th century.
 a. ordinary b. cheap c. priceless d. worthless
36. The museum's exhibition will the rich history of the region.
 a. reflect b. ignore c. destroy d. hide
37. The team celebrated a victory after the final match.
 a. ordinary b. glorious c. disappointing d. weak
38. The old castle is an important part of the country's cultural
 a. invention b. building c. heritage d. problem
39. Germany is considered a /an country in the field of engineering and technology.
 a. small b. unknown c. leading d. minor
40. The museum will the ancient coins in a special case.
 a. bury b. hide c. display d. ignore



Exercise 04

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives, Notes & Definitions

41. The government aims to a generation with strong skills and values for the future.
a. destroy b. build c. ignore d. reduce
42. is the subjects and content taught in a school or course.
a. Curriculum b. Cornerstone c. Rote memorization d. Illiteracy
43. She intend start her own business next year.
a. to b. on c. at d. in
44. means to officially register as a member of a course, school, or program.
a. Empower b. Enroll c. Enhance d. Sector
45. The manager decided to changes in the company's workflow.
a. ignore b. keep c. stop d. make
46. can be defined as the skills, knowledge, and abilities of people that make them valuable for work and the economy.
a. Illiteracy b. Curricula c. Human capital d. Enhance
47. The team is forward confidently towards achieving its goals.
a. pausing b. standing c. sleeping d. moving
48. Companies must keep up the latest trends to stay competitive.
a. from b. with c. after d. over
49. Our goal is to a prosperous future for the next generation.
a. destroy b. create c. forget d. copy
50. Planning carefully can help us both time and money on projects.
a. ignore b. waste c. save d. spend
51. means a situation in which there is too much traffic or overcrowding.
a. Sector b. Empower c. Cornerstone d. Congestion
52. Leaders should always a bright example for others to follow.
a. set b. ignore c. make d. follow
53. The government decided to more money in renewable energy.
a. waste b. borrow c. invest d. ignore
54. The library is accessible all students.
a. to b. of c. with d. by
55. The word means successful and wealthy.
a. sector b. empower c. prosperous d. enroll
56. Events will more smoothly without any problems.
a. fail b. pass c. stop d. happen
57. means the quality of being firm in achieving a goal despite difficulties.
a. Illiteracy b. Enhance c. Human capital d. Determination
58. Egypt wants to be recognized the global stage for its achievements.
a. under b. in c. on d. at
59. The city built new roads to congestion in the downtown area.
a. reduce b. increase c. create d. build



Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

60. Lina is a bright student who gets high grades. The synonym of "bright" is
a. dim b. dull c. radiant d. gloomy e. promising
61. There was a notable increase in the number of tourists this year. The antonym of "notable" is
a. insignificant b. remarkable c. trivial d. significant e. important
62. He is a remarkable scientist who discovered a new medicine. "Remarkable" can be replaced by
a. ordinary b. extraordinary c. unremarkable d. impressive e. insignificant
63. The company launched an ambitious project to improve education. The antonym of "ambitious" is
a. unambitious b. determined c. indifferent d. aspiring e. driven
64. The manager led a large-scale team to complete the project. The synonym of "large-scale" is
a. small-scale b. extensive c. minor d. limited e. massive
65. The pyramids are a remarkable piece of ancient architecture. "Remarkable" is opposite in meaning to ".....".
a. extraordinary b. unremarkable c. impressive d. ordinary e. notable
66. Omar is confident about passing his exams. "Confident" can be replaced by
a. assured b. insecure c. doubtful d. certain e. uncertain
67. She is a notable writer known for her unique style. The synonym of "notable" is
a. minor b. remarkable c. significant d. trivial e. insignificant
68. Ahmed is an efficient worker who finishes his tasks quickly. The synonym of "efficient" is
a. productive b. unproductive c. competent d. ineffective e. inefficient
69. Dubai is a prosperous city. "Prosperous" is opposite in meaning to ".....".
a. wealthy b. flourishing c. thriving d. poor e. failing
70. It was a skillful painting full of details. "Skillful" is opposite in meaning to ".....".
a. proficient b. unskilled c. talented d. inexperienced e. expert
71. She has a modern way of thinking. "Modern" can be replaced by
a. outdated b. ancient c. old-fashioned d. contemporary e. advanced
72. The chef is very skillful at making Italian dishes. "Skillful" can be replaced by
a. incompetent b. talented c. inept d. proficient e. unskilled
73. Solar energy is an efficient way to produce electricity. The antonym of "efficient" is
a. inefficient b. competent c. ineffective d. productive e. capable
74. The room was full of bright colors. The antonym of "bright" is
a. radiant b. promising c. dim d. shining e. gloomy
75. The speaker gave an impressive presentation. The synonym of "impressive" is
a. unimpressive b. mediocre c. striking d. ordinary e. magnificent
76. Sarah is an ambitious student who dreams of becoming a doctor. The synonym of "ambitious" is
a. determined b. unambitious c. aspiring d. indifferent e. lazy
77. The company started a large-scale production of electric cars. The antonym of "large-scale" is
a. massive b. extensive c. limited d. broad e. minor

لاحظ الفرق ما بين الروابط التالية:

linking words

because = as = since

لأن (بعدهم جملة سبب)

▶ I didn't come **because** I was ill.

because of = due to

بسبب (بعدهم اسم أو ing)

▶ I didn't come **because of** being ill (my illness).

so = consequently

لذا (بعدهم جملة نتيجة)

▶ I was ill, **consequently** I didn't come.

although = though

بالرغم من (بعدهم جملة)

▶ **Although** I was ill, I went to school.

despite = in spite of

بالرغم من (بعدهم اسم أو ing)

▶ **Despite** being ill, I went to school.

but - whilst - however

لكن (بعدهم جملة)

▶ He likes football **but** I like tennis.



1. The match was cancelled heavy rain.

a. because

b. owing to

c. nevertheless

d. in spite

2. He isn't happy being rich.

a. because

b. because of

c. although

d. in spite of

3. he is 70, he is energetic.

a. Because

b. Despite

c. Although

d. In spite

4. The room was very smoky we could hardly breathe.

a. so

b. however

c. but

d. as well

5. She visited many different countries she enjoyed travelling.

a. but

b. because

c. although

d. so

6. Mohamed studies hard, he isn't getting good grades.

a. but

b. because

c. despite

d. when

7. He found it difficult to concentrate his worry about his grades.

a. because

b. as

c. due to

d. since

لاحظ ما يأتي بعد stop

stop to + inf.

→ يتوقف لكي يفعل شيئا ما

★ He **stopped to smoke**

توقف لكي يدخن.

stop + V + ing

→ يتوقف عن عمل شيء ما

★ He **stopped smoking**.

توقف عن التدخين

stop + مفعول + from + V + ing

→ يمنع من عمل شيء ما

★ The cold weather **stops us from going** outside.



1. My uncle stopped football after he hurt his leg.

a. play

b. playing

c. to play

d. to playing

2. You have to stop up your sister when you go back home.

a. to pick

b. picking

c. to picking

d. pick

3. What stops you as productive as you could be?

a. to being

b. to be

c. been

d. from being

المدونة

Blog Post



Definition of a blog post

- ★ A blog post is a piece of writing or content that is published on a blog (an online journal or website).

المدونة هي قطعة مكتوبة أو محتوى يتم نشره على مدونة (وهي عبارة عن دفتر يوميات أو موقع إلكتروني على الإنترنت).

- ★ It's like a short article you share on the internet to inform, entertain, or teach people about a specific topic.

تشبه المقال القصير الذي تشاركه عبر الإنترنت لإعلام الناس أو تسليتهم أو تعليمهم حول موضوع معين.



Blog Post Parts

"My Vision for My Future Life"

- ★ Plan your writing using the structure below:

خطط لكتابتك باستخدام الهيكل أدناه

1) A Catchy Title/Hook

عنوان جذاب / جملة تشد الانتباه

- ▶ Start with a sentence that grabs the reader's attention.

ابدأ بجملة تجذب انتباه القارئ.

2) Introduction

المقدمة

- ▶ Start by telling the story of how you discovered your career path.

ابدأ بسرد قصة عن كيفية اكتشافك لمسارك المهني.

3) Body Paragraphs

فقرات الموضوع

Topic 1

الموضوع الأول

- ▶ Focus on the practical steps you're taking to achieve your goal.

ركز على الخطوات العملية التي تقوم بها لتحقيق هدفك.

Topic 2:

الموضوع الثاني

- ▶ Be specific and share what you've found most challenging or rewarding about this process.

كن محددا وشارك ما وجدته الأكثر تحديا أو الأكثر مكافأة في هذه الرحلة.

3)

Conclusion

الخاتمة

- ▶ Summarize your main points and share a final, personal thought or prediction about the future of education in Egypt.

لخص النقاط الرئيسية وشارك فكرة شخصية أخيرة أو توقعات عن مستقبل التعليم في مصر.



Writing a good blog post

- ★ When writing your blog post, think of it like telling a story to a friend.

عند كتابة تدوينتك (Blog Post)، فكر فيها كما لو كنت تروي قصة لصديقك.

- ★ Start with a hook that grabs their attention and makes them want to read more.

ابدأ بجملة مشوقة وجذابة (Hook) تجذب القارئ وتجعله يرغب في متابعة القراءة.

- ★ Then, organize your ideas in a way that's easy to follow, using headings to break up your text.

بعد ذلك، نظم أفكارك بشكل واضح وسلس، واستخدم العناوين الفرعية (Headings) لتقسيم النص وجعله أسهل للفهم.

- ★ Finally, end with a strong conclusion that leaves your reader with something to think about or a call to action.

وأخيرا، اختتم بخاتمة قوية تترك القارئ مع فكرة مهمة أو دعوة لاتخاذ إجراء (Call to Action)، مثل:

- ★ Subscribe now / Share your opinion in the comments الآن شاركنا رأيك في التعليقات



Exercise 04

Writing

1. **A blog post is usually written in the style of**
 - a. A poem
 - b. A story to a friend
 - c. A formal speech
 - d. A dictionary
2. **The first sentence in a blog post is often called**
 - a. A hook
 - b. A summary
 - c. A conclusion
 - d. A review
3. **The introduction of a blog post should**
 - a. Tell a random joke
 - b. Introduce the main idea
 - c. List all references
 - d. Repeat the conclusion
4. **A blog post is normally divided into**
 - a. Headings and paragraphs
 - b. Pictures only
 - c. Questions only
 - d. Poems
5. **Which of the following is a common feature of a blog post?**
 - a. Legal terms
 - b. Complex equations
 - c. Informal language
 - d. Newspaper headlines
6. **The conclusion of a blog post should:**
 - a. Introduce new points
 - b. Summarize the main ideas
 - c. Be the longest part
 - d. Avoid giving opinions
7. **Blog posts are often written to**
 - a. Be secret
 - b. Memorize rules
 - c. Confuse the reader
 - d. Inform, entertain, or persuade
8. **A catchy title is important because it:**
 - a. Scares the reader
 - b. Grabs the reader's attention
 - c. Makes the post longer
 - d. Hides the meaning
9. **Blog posts often use to make ideas easy to follow.**
 - a. Headings
 - b. Complicated grammar
 - c. Silent paragraphs
 - d. Puzzles
10. **The body paragraphs of a blog post usually**
 - a. Repeat the conclusion
 - b. Copy the title
 - c. Give detailed ideas with examples
 - d. Use only questions
11. **The "voice" in a blog post is often**
 - a. Friendly and personal
 - b. Cold and formal
 - c. Silent and short
 - d. Academic and strict
12. **A good blog post often ends with:**
 - a. A dictionary definition
 - b. A call to action
 - c. A list of addresses
 - d. A song
13. **Keywords in a blog post are important because they:**
 - a. help readers and search engines find the topic
 - b. make the text longer
 - c. confuse the audience
 - d. replace the title
14. **In narrative-style blog posts, the writer often**
 - a. avoids giving details
 - b. writes in bullet points only
 - c. uses equations
 - d. tells a personal story
15. **Why are headings and subheadings used in blog posts?**
 - a. To make the text shorter
 - b. To confuse the reader
 - c. To organize ideas clearly
 - d. To hide main ideas
16. **A blog post is most successful when it**
 - a. Connects personally with the reader
 - b. Uses difficult academic words
 - c. Avoids clear structure
 - d. Has no conclusion
17. **The effectiveness of a blog post depends MOST on**
 - a. The length of each sentence
 - b. The clarity and engagement of ideas
 - c. The number of footnotes
 - d. The font style
18. **The phrase "call to action" in a blog post means**
 - a. Asking readers to do something like comment or share.
 - b. Telling a joke
 - c. Ending suddenly
 - d. Writing a poem



1. We must try to make our world better. If humans contributed to controlling global warming, this world would be cooler and the high temperature we currently suffer from would decrease.

سوهاج ٢٠٢٤

أ- يجب أن نحاول أن نجعل عالمنا أفضل. إذا ساهم البشر في السيطرة على الاحتباس الحراري سيكون هذا العالم أكثر لطفاً ودرجات الحرارة التي نعاني منها حالياً سوف تنخفض.

ب- يجب أن نحاول أن نجعل عالمنا أفضل. إذا سيطر البشر على التنوع البيئي سيكون هذا العالم أكثر لطفاً ودرجات الحرارة التي نعاني منها حالياً سوف تنخفض.

ج- يجب أن نحاول أن نجعل عالمنا أفضل. إذا ساهم البشر في التأقلم على الاحتباس الحراري سيكون هذا العالم أكثر لطفاً ودرجات الحرارة التي نعاني منها حالياً سوف تنخفض.

د- يجب أن نحاول أن نجعل عالمنا أفضل. إذا تجاهل البشر السيطرة على الاحتباس الحراري سيكون هذا العالم أكثر لطفاً ودرجات الحرارة التي نعاني منها حالياً ستتناقص.

2. Most people agree that there is no place like home. It is more than just a place to stay in, it is part of one's life and personality.

شرق طنطا ٢٠٢٤

أ- يتفق معظم الناس أنه لا يوجد مكان مثل الوطن. فهو أكثر من كونه مكان للإقامة فيه. فهو جزء من حياة الفرد وشخصيته.

ب- لا يتفق معظم الناس أنه لا يوجد مكان مثل الوطن. فهو أكثر من كونه مكان للإقامة فيه. فهو جزء من حياة الفرد وشخصيته.

ج- ينفق بعض الناس أنه لا يوجد مكان مثل المواطن. فهو أكثر من كونه مكان للإقامة فيه. فهو جزء من حياة الفرد وشخصيته.

د- يتفق معظم الناس أنه لا يوجد مكان مثل الوطن. فهو أكثر من كونه مكان للإقامة فيه. فهو جزء من حياة الفرد وشخصيته.

3. It is clear that volunteering brings several important benefits for the volunteers. However, the most important benefit is the positive effects that volunteering has on the volunteers' mental health.

البلدشين

أ- إنه لمن الواضح أن التبرع يجلب فوائد هامة للمتطوعين. ومع ذلك فإن أهم فائدة هي الآثار الجانبية التي يحدثها التطوع في الصحة الذهنية للمتبرعين.

ب- إنه لمن الواضح أن التطوع يجلب فوائد هامة للمتطوعين. ومع ذلك فإن أهم فائدة هي الآثار الإيجابية التي يحدثها التطوع في الصحة الذهنية للمتطوعين.

ج- إنه لمن الواضح أن التطوع يجلب فوائد هامة للمتطوعين. ومع ذلك فإن أقل فائدة هي الآثار السلبية التي يحدثها التطوع في الصحة الذهنية للمتطوعين.

د- إنه لمن الواضح أن التبرع يجلب فوائد هامة للمتطوعين. ومع ذلك فإن أهم فائدة هي الآثار الإيجابية التي يحدثها التصارع في الصحة الذهنية للمتبرعين.

٤. ثقة الفرد في نفسه وقدراته ومواهبه وإمكاناته وإيمانه الداخلي بقواه الذهنية والنفسية والبدنية يجلبان له السعادة. جرجا ٢٠٢٤

a. The individual's trust in himself, his abilities, talents, potentials, and his inner belief in his mental, psychological and physical strengths bring him happiness.

b. The individual's trust in himself, his abilities, talented properties, and his inner belief in his mental, psychological and physical strengths bring him happiness.

c. The individual's confidence in himself, his abilities, talents, potentials, and his inner belief in his mental, psychological and physical strengths bring him happiness.

d. The individual's confidence in himself, his abilities, talents, potentials, and his inner belief in his mental, psychological and physical strengths bring him happiness.

٥. لا تتوقع نجاحاً دون صعوبات أو سعادة دون ألم أو مكسباً دون خسارة إنها الحياة اقبلها أو ارفضها لكن تعيشها يجب أن تفهمها. ابوتشت ٢٠٢٤

a. Don't expect success without hardship, happiness with pain or winning without loss: it was life, take it or leave it, but to live, you should understand it.

b. Don't expect success without hardship, happiness without pain or winning without loss; it is life, take it or leave it, but to live it, you should understand it.

c. Don't expect success without hardship, happiness without painful or winning without losses, its life. Take it or leave it, but to live it, you should have understood it.

d. Don't expect success without hardship or happiness with pain and winning without loss! it is life, take it or live it, but to live it, you should understand it.

٦. إن التعاون والتسامح بين الأفراد والشعوب من الأمور الضرورية للغاية، فكل منا يحتاج الآخر، وكل منا أيضا مختلف عن الآخر.

شرق مقدونيا ٢٠٢٤

- Corporation and tolerance between individuals and peoples are absolutely necessary. Each of us need the other and each of us is also different from the other.
- Cooperation and tolerance between individuals and peoples are absolutely necessary. Each of us needs the other and each of us is also different from the other.
- Cooperation and tolerance between individuals and peoples is absolutely necessary. Each of us needs the other and each of us is also different from the other.
- Cooperation and tolerance between singles and peoples are absolutely necessary. Each of us need the other and each of us is also different from the other.



Exercise ٥٨

Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

شرق المنصورة ٢٠٢٤

How would you feel if you spent many months without seeing your friends and family? Would you be happy to live in a very small space, with the same people for many weeks? These are the **conditions** that astronauts have to face, so scientists are looking into the best ways to help them with their mental health problems.

1982 was the first time that scientists realized that mental health could be a problem for astronauts, who need to carry out important and often dangerous tasks. Many astronauts face problems because time is different in space. For example, on the International Space Station (ISS), astronauts see the sun rise and set 16 times in one day.

This makes it very hard for them to sleep. Spacecraft also use blue light, which is the same light we use for computers and TV screens. Blue light also stops us from wanting to sleep, which is why you should not look at screens before you go to bed! Until scientists have done research on astronauts, we won't understand the effects of space travel on their mental health. However, scientists claim that mental health problems will be more likely when astronauts start to make journeys to planets such as Mars, which might take 18 months or more. As a result, people who want to become astronauts need special training on how to deal with stress. The astronauts of the future will certainly have a lot more support than they did in the past. Already on the ISS, astronauts spend a lot of time taking exercise, relaxing, eating healthy food and talking to their families: all ways to stay mentally healthy.

- The main idea in the first paragraph is
 - different mental health problems.
 - the situation astronaut have to face in the space.
 - the depression the Russian astronaut had.
 - Mars exploration
- Due to different time in space
 - many astronauts have heart disease
 - a lot of astronauts face problems
 - all astronauts refuse to go to space
 - astronauts find it easy to sleep there
- Those who want to work as astronauts have to
 - accompany their families to avoid loneliness
 - learn how to cope with stress
 - forget all about mental health
 - make the time of the journey to planets such as Mars less
- The underlined word "conditions" in the first paragraph is a synonym of
 - terms
 - results
 - causes
 - circumstances
- The astronauts of the future will surely have a lot more than they had in the past.
 - difficult
 - facilities
 - time difference
 - problems
- The underlined word "this" in the third paragraph refers to
 - international space station
 - blue light
 - the different time
 - the light of the moon
- As the information mentioned in third paragraph the blue light
 - stimulates parts of the brain that make us feel alert
 - helps us to sleep deeply
 - stops us from thinking in the future
 - stops us from looking at screens
- Scientific research has an impact on
 - mental health
 - self-care
 - well-being
 - stress



General Exercises

on

Unit

3



A

Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the (2) correct answers out of the (5) options given:

- He worked hard to build a prosperous career. "Prosperous" can be replaced by
a. shining b. poor c. impoverished d. wealthy e. failing
- The museum has impressive artifacts. The antonym of "impressive" is
a. outstanding b. magnificent c. unimpressive d. striking e. ordinary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Companies need to be to survive in the modern market.
a. competitive b. lazy c. unprepared d. slow
- This job requires a lot of to come up with new ideas.
a. laziness b. creativity c. copying d. silence
- The team worked to finish the project on time.
a. carelessly b. slowly c. efficiently d. loudly
- The team carefully examined the ancient found in the ruins.
a. buildings b. machines c. computers d. artifacts
- Egypt is building a new administrative to reduce congestion in Cairo.
a. capital b. village c. market d. site
- She's a very warm and friendly person. Friendly in this sentence is a / an
a. adverb b. adjective c. noun d. a & b
- Mona is taking singing lessons this year but she still sings
a. bad b. good c. well d. badly
- Several days , I saw the girl again on the street.
a. late b. later c. latter d. last
- You must when crossing the road.
a. be careful b. have careful c. be carefully d. be care
- Hardly ever to get to work on time.
a. she manages b. does she manage c. manages she d. she doesn't manage
- In persuasive blog posts, the writer mainly tries to
a. Use only facts without feelings b. Hide their opinion
c. Confuse the reader d. Convince the reader to agree
- The keyword strategy in a blog post is closest to
a. using repeated, important words to highlight ideas b. adding words randomly
c. hiding main ideas in long sentences d. avoiding repetition completely

B

Reading Comprehension

As the world population continues to grow and climate change makes it more difficult to produce food in the traditional way, scientists are developing new ways of growing plants efficiently. One of these ways is growing plants without soil. Although this may sound like a modern process, it is not new technology. Ancient Egyptians writings describe how plants were grown in water and early examples include the famous gardens of Babylon and floating gardens built by the Aztec in Mexico. In traditional farming, soil protects the roots of plants, but scientists have shown that plants don't need soil to grow as long as they can get nutrients from somewhere, they will grow successfully. To grow plants without soil, a special fertilizer is added to water, the plants take this in through their roots.

Recently, this technology has developed very quickly. It is common in northern Europe where it is used to grow food crops. Vegetables have been grown in submarines and astronauts have produced food in space using this technology. Many people think that growing plants in water could help to solve the world's food problems. As cities become larger, there is less land for agriculture. Countries with little land for growing crops could produce more of their food without soil. This way can also be used in poor soils such as deserts and in areas near the sea where salty water is damaging the soil. Perhaps soon there will be no areas in the world where food can be produced.

- The best title for this passage is
a. floating gardens b. food shortage
c. traditional farming d. planting without soil
- There must be a to grow plants in water.
a. vitamin b. medicine c. food d. fertilizer
- Growing plants in water can be used in areas with soil.
a. rich b. poor c. strong d. excellent
- Scientists are to solve the world's food problems.
a. imagining b. helping c. urging d. questioning
- As cities become larger, there is land for agriculture.
a. few b. many c. much d. less
- In traditional farming, soil the roots of plants.
a. protects b. covers c. damages d. feeds
- Ancient Egyptian writings describe plants were grown in water.
a. when b. who c. how d. where
- The underlined pronoun "they" refers to
a. plants b. scientists c. roots d. cities



Writing

A: Translate the following into Arabic.

علينا ترشيد استهلاكنا من البترول والاعتماد على مصادر الطاقة المتجددة في مختلف المجالات، وهذا سوف يقلل من الاحتباس الحراري الذي يؤدي إلى تغير المناخ المؤثر على حياتنا.

- We must delete our consumption of oil and rely on renewable energy sources in a few fields, and this will reduce global warming, which leads to climate change affecting our lives.
- We must rationalize our production of oil and rely on renewable energy sources in various fields, and this will prevent global warming, which leads to climate change that affects our lives.
- We must rationalize our consumption of oil and rely on renewable energy sources in various fields, and this will reduce global warming, which leads to climate change that affects our lives.
- We must rationalize our consumption of oil and rely on renewable resources in various fields, and this will reduce global warming, which adds to climate change affecting our lives.

B: Translate the following into English.

Presidential initiatives, such as the Solidarity and Dignity and Decent life initiatives, are expected to significantly contribute to improving the quality of life of Egyptians everywhere, especially in rural areas.

إدارة فاقوس ٢٠٢٢

- من المتوقع أن تساهم المبادرات الرئاسية، مثل مبادرة تكافل وكرامة وحياة كريمة، بشكل عظيم في تحسين نوعية حياة المصريين في كل مكان. وخاصة في المناطق الريفية.
- من المتوقع أن تساهم المبادرات الوزارية، مثل مبادرة تكافل اجتماعي وحياة كريمة، بشكل كبير في تحسين نوعية حياة المصريين في كل مكان. وخاصة في المناطق الريفية.
- من المتوقع أن تساهم المبادرات الرئاسية، مثل مبادرة تكافل وكرامة وحياة جديدة، بشكل عظيم في تحسين نوعية حياة المصريين في كل مكان. وخاصة في المناطق النائية.
- من المتوقع أن تساهم المبادرات الرئاسية، مثل مبادرة تكافل وكرامة وحياة كريمة، بشكل كبير في تحسين أحوال المصريين في كل مكان. وخاصة في المناطق الشعبية.

Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- Ali is a fluent speaker. (fluently)
- He speaks loudly. (loud)

Answer the following questions:

- Do you think Detective Fix was right to be suspicious of Fogg? Why or why not?
- What lessons about travel can we learn from Passepartout's excitement?
- What does the description of the Mediterranean port symbolize for Passepartout?

Writing a Blog Post about 180 words:

My Vision for My Future Life

1) Complete the following dialogue:

أزهر دمياط ٢٠٢٣

- Huda Have you heard from Ola ?
 Lamia ① , what's wrong with her?
 Huda ②
 Lamia ③ ?
 Huda She is in hospital with a broken leg.
 Lamia ④ ?
 Huda We can visit her tomorrow.

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

أزهر الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

Hydroponics is a way to grow plants without using any soil. Instead, farmers grow the plants in special water which contains all the food that plants need to grow. This is a big help for farmers living in areas with poor soil. Hydroponics uses a lot less space than traditional farming and it also uses less water. There are also fewer problems with insects. Many scientists think that in the future, we will be using hydroponics to grow food.

A Answer the following questions:

1. How can farmers use less soil?

.....

2. Why is hydroponics important?

.....

3. Give a suitable title to the passage.

.....

B Choose the correct answer:

4. Hydroponics uses space for farming.

a. a lot b. no c. many d. less

5. A to this problem is using hydroponics.

a. solve b. solution c. solves d. soil

3. A Translate into Arabic:

أزهر القليوبية ٢٠٢٣

Young people are able to share in doing voluntary work in different fields.

.....

.....

B Translate into English:

علمنى والدى درساً عظيماً أن النجاح يحتاج إلى العمل الجاد.

.....

.....



Vocabulary

1) Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

- He works for a company that manufactures car parts. The synonym of the underlined word "manufactures" is
 a. produces b. makes c. cracks d. joins e. cleans
- She is the founder and managing director of the company. The synonym of the underlined word "founder" is
 a. client b. agent c. employee d. originator e. establisher
- There was a partnership based on mutual respect, trust and understanding. The antonym of the underlined word "mutual" is
 a. common b. shared c. one-sided d. joint e. unilateral
- This small apartment is not only cozy but also affordable, making it a great choice for me. The antonym of the underlined word "affordable" is
 a. inexpensive b. expensive c. reasonable d. costly e. cheap
- The successful branding and marketing of the new product has already boosted sales and increased profits. The synonym of the underlined word "boosted" is
 a. increased b. worsen c. improved d. decreased e. reduced

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Egypt serves as a strategic between Africa, the Middle East, and Europe.
 a. barrier b. gateway c. border d. economy
- Egyptian companies are offering to African students.
 a. funding b. scholarships c. procedures d. integration
- Trade between Egypt and the Sudan is rapidly.
 a. limiting b. declining c. expanding d. reducing
- The solar project is a in Egypt's renewable energy cooperation.
 a. limitation b. yield c. procedure d. milestone
- Egyptian universities scholarships every year.
 a. enhance b. offer c. highlight d. target
- Farmers in dry regions benefit from crops developed by scientists.
 a. stable b. hybrid c. rural d. annual
- Talaat Harb founded Bank Misr with completely Egyptian
 a. independence b. institutions c. capital d. setbacks
- Language games are usually intended to encourage student
 a. interactive b. interaction c. interact d. interactively
- A successful entrepreneur must be able to solve real problems.
 a. social b. foreign c. minor d. trivial
- The government supports small businesses through financial
 a. evolution b. investment c. setbacks d. independence
- "Think outside the box" means to in a creative way.
 a. follow rules b. avoid problems c. think differently d. work slowly
- Flax is a plant used to make
 a. fuel b. paper c. fabric d. medicine

18. Organic farming avoids the use of harmful
 a. profits b. pesticides c. capital d. risks
19. Many villages are being turned from consumers into
 a. exporters b. producers c. tourists d. investors
20. Egypt Vision 2030 is a long-term plan for development.
 a. sustainable b. temporary c. limited d. random
21. The strategy aims to improve people's lives in a and balanced way.
 a. unfair b. fair c. sudden d. secret
22. The education system is being redesigned to reduce
 a. creativity b. fun c. technology d. illiteracy
23. The government is introducing new technologies to learning.
 a. reduce b. enhance c. ignore d. stop
24. Egypt's position helps it lead in regional development.
 a. weak b. unique c. hidden d. small
25. Balanced development means using resources
 a. carelessly b. wisely c. rarely d. slowly



Language

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

26. Every year, Egypt the African Development Forum.
 a. hosts b. is hosting c. has hosted d. hosted
27. Right now, engineers a new highway to Sudan.
 a. build b. are building c. have built d. built
28. The conference next Monday at 10 a.m.
 a. starts b. is starting c. has started d. started
29. The delegation Paris next month.
 a. visits b. is visiting c. has visited d. visited
30. Egyptian companies goods to Africa for decades.
 a. export b. are exporting c. exported d. have been exporting
31. The construction project longer than expected.
 a. takes b. is taking c. has taken d. took
32. She felt sad because she her wallet.
 a. loses b. lost c. had lost d. was losing
33. By the time we arrived at the theater, the movie
 a. starts b. started c. had started d. has started
34. When I got home, I realized I my keys at the office.
 a. leave b. left c. had left d. am leaving
35. They missed the train because they the bus.
 a. miss b. missed c. had missed d. have missed
36. After he dinner, he watched TV.
 a. eats b. ate c. had eaten d. was eating
37. I couldn't enter the house because I my phone at home.
 a. forget b. forgot c. had forgotten d. forgets
38. When she called me, I already to bed.
 a. had/been b. have/been c. had/gone d. have/gone

39. She speaks English
 a. clear b. clearly c. clarity d. clears
40. He is a student. He always gets high grades.
 a. successful b. successfully c. succeed d. success
41. The teacher explained the lesson
 a. careful b. carefully c. care d. cares
42. The team worked to finish the project on time.
 a. hard b. hardly c. hardness d. harder
43. The new curriculum is designed to improve thinking skills.
 a. careful b. carefully c. care d. cares
44. It is cold outside.
 a. few b. many c. too d. a lot
45. She answered the question in a way.
 a. logical b. logically c. logic d. logics
46. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct:
 a. He realized he had forgotten his wallet after he paid for the meal.
 b. He realized he had forgotten his wallet after he has paid for the meal.
 c. He realized he forgot his wallet after he had paid for the meal.
 d. He realized he had forgotten his wallet after he had paid for the meal.
47. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct:
 a. The tickets were sold out before we had reached the box office.
 b. The tickets had been sold out before we reached the box office.
 c. The tickets have been sold out before we reached the box office.
 d. The tickets was sold out before we had reached the box office.
48. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct:
 a. She go to the gym every morning. b. She goes to the gym every morning.
 c. She is going to the gym every morning. d. She going to the gym every morning.
49. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct:
 a. The children are playing outside right now.
 b. The children is playing outside right now.
 c. The children plays outside right now.
 d. The children were playing outside every day.
50. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct:
 a. She sings beautiful at the school concert.
 b. She sings beautifully at the school concert.
 c. She sings beauty at the school concert.
 d. She sings more beautiful at the school concert.

2) Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

51. I was shocked when I saw the results. I didn't expect them to be so bad. (because)
 52. The concert started after the audience took their seats. (before)
 53. The documents were missing. Someone took them earlier. (had been taken)
 54. He had left the office before it rained. (been)
 55. After she had checked the engine, she wrote a report. (was)
 56. She cleans her room every weekend. (usually)
 57. Right now, the students are working on a science project. (at the moment)
 58. He speaks very quietly. (in a quiet way)

59. The movie was boring, so I fell asleep. (**bored**)
 60. We go to the beach every summer. (**always**)
 61. It rains a lot in this city. (**frequently**)
 62. He is very slow when he does his homework. (**slowly**)
 63. My sister speaks French very well. (**fluent**)
 64. She always arrives on time for work. (**punctual**)
 65. They don't often go to the movie theater. (**rarely**)



Translation

1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

66. Egypt maintains strong political and economic ties with African nations through its active participation in the African Union and regional development initiatives.

- أ. تحافظ مصر على علاقات سياسية واجتماعية قوية مع الدول الأفريقية من خلال مشاركتها الفعالة في الاتحاد الأفريقي ومبادرات التنمية العالمية.
 ب. تحافظ مصر على علاقات سياسية واقتصادية قوية مع الدول الأفريقية من خلال مشاركتها الفعالة في الاتحاد الأفريقي ومبادرات التنمية الوطنية.
 ج. تحافظ مصر على علاقات سياسية واقتصادية قوية مع الدول الأفريقية من خلال مشاركتها الفعالة في الاتحاد الأفريقي ومبادرات التنمية الإقليمية.
 د. تحافظ مصر على علاقات سياسية واجتماعية قوية مع الدول الأفريقية من خلال مشاركتها الفعالة في الاتحاد الأوروبي ومبادرات التنمية الإقليمية.

67. Successful entrepreneurs take calculated risks, adapt to challenges, and turn their ideas into sustainable businesses.

- أ. رواد الأعمال الناجحون لا يخاطرون بحذر. ويتكيفون مع التحديات. ويحولون أفكارهم إلى مشاريع مؤقتة.
 ب. رواد الأعمال الناجحون يخاطرون بحذر. ويتبنون مع التحديات. ويحولون أموالهم إلى مشاريع مستدامة.
 ج. رواد الأعمال الناجحون يخاطرون بحذر. ويتكيفون مع التحديات. ويحولون أفكارهم إلى مشاريع مستدامة.
 د. رواد الأعمال الناجحون يخاطرون بحذر. ويتبنون مع التحديات. ويحولون أموالهم إلى مشاريع مستدامة.

2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

٦٨. بصفتها جسراً استراتيجياً بين أفريقيا والشرق الأوسط، تعزز مصر التبادل الثقافي والتعاون مع الدول الأفريقية في مجالات مثل التجارة والتعليم والبنية التحتية.

- a. As a strategic bridge between Africa and the Middle East, Egypt fosters cultural change and cooperation with African countries in areas like trade, education, and infrastructure.
 b. As a strategic bridge between Africa and the Middle East, Egypt fosters cultural exchange and cooperation with African countries in areas like trade, education, and infrastructure.
 c. As a strategic bridge among Africa and the Middle East, Egypt fosters cultural exchange and cooperation with African countries in areas like trade, education, and infrastructure.
 d. As a strategic bridge between Africa and the Far East, Egypt fosters cultural change and cooperation with African countries in areas like carpentry, education, and infrastructure.



Reading Comprehension

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions below:

Entrepreneurship is the dynamic process of identifying opportunities, taking risks, and creating new ventures. It's not just about starting a business; it's a mindset characterized by innovation, adaptability, and a continuous drive to solve problems. At its core,

entrepreneurship involves transforming a simple idea into a tangible product or service that adds value to society. This journey is often full of challenges, from securing funding and navigating market uncertainties to managing a growing team.

Entrepreneurs are catalysts for economic growth. They introduce new technologies, create jobs, and stimulate competition, which ultimately benefits consumers through better products and services. While some entrepreneurs are driven by the desire for financial gain, many are motivated by a passion to make a difference or a vision to revolutionize an industry. This intrinsic motivation fuels their perseverance and resilience, enabling them to overcome setbacks and learn from failures.

The success of a new venture often depends on a few key factors: a strong business plan, a deep understanding of the target market, and the ability to adapt to changing circumstances.

Furthermore, building a supportive network of mentors, advisors, and collaborators is crucial.

In today's interconnected world, entrepreneurship is more accessible than ever, thanks to advancements in technology and a global marketplace. It represents a powerful force for change, fostering creativity and empowering individuals to shape their own destiny and, in turn, contribute to a more prosperous future.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. **The main idea of the passage is that entrepreneurship is' '.**
 - a. A simple way to get rich quickly
 - b. Only for people with technical skills
 - c. A complex process of risk- taking and innovation
 - d. Not important for economic development
2. **Entrepreneurship is described as a process of**
 - a. starting a large corporation
 - b. identifying opportunities and creating new ventures
 - c. securing bank loans for a business
 - d. working for a tech company
3. **A key characteristic of an entrepreneurial mindset is**
 - a. avoiding all risks
 - b. following established rules
 - c. innovation and adaptability
 - d. waiting for opportunities to arise
4. **The passage suggests that the journey of an entrepreneur is often**
 - a. guaranteed to be profitable
 - b. free of any challenges
 - c. strictly guided by a business plan
 - d. filled with uncertainties and setbacks
5. **According to the passage, entrepreneurs contribute to economic growth by**
 - a. reducing consumer choices
 - b. limiting competition
 - c. introducing creating jobs
 - d. increasing government regulations
6. **The passage indicates that the success of a new venture depends on**
 - a. a supportive network and a strong business plan
 - b. a large initial investment
 - c. having no competitors
 - d. avoiding all market uncertainties
7. **The passage implies that in today's world, entrepreneurship is**
 - a. more difficult than in the past
 - b. limited to a few specific countries
 - c. more accessible due to technology
 - d. primarily for large corporations
8. **The ability to "adapt" means**
 - a. sticking to the original plan at all costs
 - b. hiring new employees frequently
 - c. being flexible and changing direction when needed
 - d. focusing on a single, unchanging product

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Which of the following is the most effective way to improve the readability of a long blog post?
 - a. Using complex technical terms
 - b. Breaking up content with subheadings, short paragraphs, and bullet points
 - c. Using one large block of text
 - d. Ignoring formatting and focusing solely on the text
2. Why is it important to include relevant key words in your blog post?
 - a. They are a way to hide spam from search engines.
 - b. They help search engines understand the topic of your content, which can improve your ranking.
 - c. They are a mandatory part of every blog post template.
 - d. They make the post longer and more detailed.
3. Which phrase is appropriate for stating the purpose of an email?
 - a. "I don't know why I'm writing"
 - b. "I am writing to request a meeting."
 - c. "Maybe you'll read this"
 - d. "Just wanted to say hi"
4. To politely ask for information, you should say
 - a. "Tell me now"
 - b. "Give me the report"
 - c. "I need it yesterday"
 - d. "Could you please send the report?"
5. Which closing is most appropriate for a formal business email?
 - a. "Love, Sarah"
 - b. "Bye!"
 - c. "Best regards, Ali Hassan"
 - d. "See you!"
6. Which phrase is commonly used to express belief or opinion in a blog?
 - a. I don't care
 - b. I think / I believe
 - c. Maybe someone will
 - d. It's not important
7. "Students will learn to solve problems using technology, not just memorize facts" shows a focus on improving skills.
 - a. computing
 - b. critical thinking
 - c. sleeping
 - d. copying
8. A strong blog post about education reform should include.....such as communication and teamwork.
 - a. soft skills
 - b. video games
 - c. holidays
 - d. punishments
9. The word "....." - "refers to building students' abilities and knowledge for the future.
 - a. tradition
 - b. human capital
 - c. silence
 - d. entertainment

2) Write:

A blog post about of about (150 - 180)

"Enhancing brand reputation"



Unit 4 Natural Disasters

Learning Outcomes

Reading

Explore how to predict/prepare for natural disaster.

Identify the main idea and supporting details from texts on weather prediction.

Listening

Identify specific information in audio on emergency preparedness, evaluate true/false statements and complete sentences with vocabulary, from the audio.

Speaking

Participate in a role-play as a city planning team to discuss past mistakes after a natural disaster and create a five point emergency plan.

Writing

Identify the features of a formal report and compose one with clear findings and recommendations, use formal language, and avoid contractions.

Language

Use comparative adjectives to compare between two persons or things.

Use superlative adjectives to compare between more than two persons or things.

Key Vocabulary

accuracy (n)	دقة / إتقان	drills (n)	تدريبات / مناورات	evacuations (n)	إخلاء / إخلاء
intensity (n)	شدة / قوة	preparedness (n)	تأهب / استعداد	warning (n)	تحذير / إنذار
humidity (n)	رطوبة	preparation (n)	تحضير	documents (n)	وثائق / مستندات
track (n/v)	يتتبع / يلاحق / مسار / طريق	prediction (n)	تنبؤ / توقع	monitor (n/v)	يراقب / يتابع / مراقب
meteorologists (n)	خبراء الأرصاد الجوية	perishable (adj)	سريع التلف / هش	unpredictable (adj)	غير متوقع
pose (v)	يشكل / يطرح / يتخذ وضعا	non-perishable (adj)	غير قابل للتلف	remarkable (adj)	ملحوظ / بارز
tectonic plates	الصفيحة التكتونية	waterproof (adj)	مقاوم للماء	impressive (adj)	مثير للإعجاب
supplies (n)	مؤن / مستلزمات	understanding (n)	فهم / إدراك	kit (n)	حقيبة / عدة

Main Vocabulary

artificial (adj)	صناعي / مصطنع / مفتعل	hinder (v)	يعيق	suddenly (adv)	فجأة / بشكل غير متوقع
readiness (n)	الاستعداد	hindrance (n)	عقبة / عائق	temperature (n)	درجة الحرارة
planning (n)	التخطيط	risk (n/adj)	خطر / مجازفة	per day	في اليوم
progress (n)	تقدم / تطور	practice (n)	ممارسة / تدريب	path (n)	مسار
hurricane (n)	إعصار	defenses (n)	دفاعات / وسائل حماية	serious (adj)	جاد / خطير
rainfall (n)	هطول الأمطار	store (n/v)	يخزن / مخزن	create (v)	يخلق / يبتدئ
flood (n)	فيضان	seismic (adj)	زلزالي / متعلق بالزلازل	prevent (v)	يمنع
earthquake (n) (quake)	زلزال	identify (v)	يحدد / يتعرف على	shift (n/v)	تغيير / تحول / وردية
storm (n)	عاصفة	region (n)	منطقة / إقليم	direction (n)	اتجاه
prepare (v)	يجهز / يحضر	reduce (v)	يقلل / يخفض	remain (v)	يظل / يبقى
forecast (n)	توقع / تنبؤ	impact (n/v)	تأثير / أثر	clear (adj)	واضح / صافي / يوضح
pressure (n)	ضغط	decade (n)	عقد (١٠ سنوات)	surface (n)	سطح
first aid (n)	إسعافات أولية	pattern (n)	نمط / شكل متكرر	uncertainty (n)	عدم يقين
challenge (n/v)	تحدي / يتحدى	strikes (n/v)	ضربات / إضرابات / يضرب	beneath	تحت
issue (n/v)	قضية / مشكلة / يصدر	eventually (adv)	في النهاية / أخيراً	comfort (n)	راحة
observe (v)	يلاحظ / يراقب	advanced (adj)	متقدم / متطور	flashlight (n)	مصباح يدوي
occur (v)	يحدث	unlike (adv)	على عكس / بخلاف	long-distance (adj)	بعيد المدى
foretell (v)	يتنبأ / يتوقع	rule (n/v)	قاعدة / قانون / يحكم	major (adj)	رئيسي / هام / كبير

Collocations

predict weather patterns	يتنبأ بالأحوال الجوية	pose challenges	يشكل تحديات
issue early warnings	يصدر إنذارات مبكرة	make emergency plans	يضع خططاً للطوارئ
organise evacuations	ينظم عمليات إخلاء	keep copies	يحتفظ بنسخ
practise drills	يقوم بتدريبات عملية	make improvement	يجري تحسينات
stay safe	يبقي آمناً	store water	يخزن المياه

Expressions & Prepositions

prepare for emergencies	يستعد للطوارئ	rely on	يعتمد على
emergency preparedness	الاستعداد للطوارئ	write down	يدون / يسجل
emergency kit	حقيبة الطوارئ	be prepared for	يستعد لـ
first aid supplies	مستلزمات الإسعافات الأولية	be at risk	يكون في خطر
non-perishable food	طعام غير سريع التلف	in advance	مقدماً / مسبقاً
remain unpredictable	يظل غير متوقع	in particular	على وجه الخصوص
atmospheric science	علوم الغلاف الجوي	at least	على الأقل
reduce the impact	يقلل التأثير	contact person	المسؤول للتواصل
natural disasters	كوارث طبيعية	use hi-tech tools	يستخدم أدوات تقنية متطورة
long-distance calls	مكالمات بعيدة المدى / مكالمات دولية	get warnings about	يحصل على تحذيرات بشأن
pose major challenges	يشكل تحديات كبيرة	create emergency plans	يعد خطط الطوارئ

Definitions

accuracy	دقة / إتقان	► how correct or exact something is
meteorologists	خبراء الأرصاد الجوية	► scientists who study and predict the weather
humidity	رطوبة	► the amount of water in the air
track	يتتبع / يلاحق	► to follow or watch the movement of something
intensity	شدة / قوة	► how strong or powerful something is
pose	يشكل / يطرح / يتخذ وضعاً	► to cause something to start or happen
tectonic plates	الصفائح التكتونية	► huge pieces of Earth's surface that move and cause earthquakes
drills	تدريبات / مناورات	► practice activities to prepare for real emergencies
preparedness	استعداد / جاهزية	► the state of being ready for something, especially an emergency or difficult situation
kit	حقيبة / عدة	► a set of articles or equipment needed for a specific purpose
supplies	مؤن / مستلزمات	► things that are needed for a particular purpose and are provided or stored
perishable	سريع التلف / هش	► likely to decay or go bad quickly; refers to food items
documents	وثائق / مستندات	► official papers or records that provide information or proof
waterproof	مقاوم للماء	► not allowing water to pass through it

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
predict	يتنبأ	prediction	تنبؤ	predictable	قابل للتنبؤ
evacuate	يخلى / يجلي	evacuation	إجلاء	evacuated	مخلى / مجلى
intensify	يكثف / يزيد	intensity	شدة	intense	شديد
pose	يطرح / يشكل	posing	طرح / تمثيل	posed	مطروح / مفروض
prepare	يحضر	preparedness	استعداد	prepared	مستعد
monitor	يراقب / يتابع	monitoring	مراقبة / متابعة	monitored	مراقب
warn	يحذر	warning	تحذير / إنذار	warned	محذر
develop	يطور	development	تطوير / تنمية	developed	متطور
drill	يدرّب / يحفر	drilling	التدريب / الحفر	drilled	محفور

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
accuracy	دقة	precision/correctness / exactness	inaccuracy / error / mistake
intensity	قوة	strength / severity / power	weakness / mildness / softness
pose	يقدم	present / create / constitute	eliminate / remove / solve
perishable	قابل للتلف	spoilable / fragile / destructible	durable / lasting / nonperishable
improve	يحسن / يعزز	enhance / develop / promote	worsen, decline, deteriorate
obstacle	عائق / عقبة	hindrance / barrier / difficulty	aid / help / support / assistance
suddenly	فجأة / بشكل غير متوقع	unexpectedly / instantly	gradually / slowly / steadily
predict	يتنبأ / يتوقع	foretell / forecast / foresee	doubt / ignore / misunderstand
understanding	فهم / إدراك	comprehension / grasp / awareness / knowledge	misunderstanding / confusion / ignorance
recent	جديد / حديث	modern / new / novel	old / ancient / outdated / elderly
natural	طبيعي	real / genuine / normal	artificial / fake / man-made
defenses	دفاعات	protection / guard / security	attacks / offense / invasion
unlike	على عكس / مختلف عن	different from / distinct from	like / similar to / alike / resembling



Language Notes

Notice the Difference

as a result + جملة	نتيجة لذلك	as a result of + n / V+ing	نتيجة لـ
adaptation	تكيف / تعديل	adoption	اعتماد / تبني (فكرة/سياسة/طفل)
kit	حقيبة صغيرة/طقم معد لأغراض خاصة	equipment	معدات عامة وأدوات
evacuation	إجلاء مؤقت لحماية الناس	migration	هجرة دائمة للعيش في مكان آخر
call up	يتصل بـ	call on	يزور / يستدعي
preparedness	تأهب	preparation	تحضير
artificial	صناعي / مصطنع / مفتعل / غير طبيعي	industrial	صناعي (متعلق بالصناعة)
drill	تدريب عملي	exercise	تدريب رياضي أو تعليمي
safety	أمان (حماية من أخطار جسدية مثل حوادث أو حرائق)	security	أمن (حماية من تهديدات بشرية مثل سرقة أو هجمات)
intensity ⁽ⁿ⁾	شدة	intense ^(adj)	شديد
thanks to	بفضل / نتيجة لـ (تستخدم للدلالة على العامل الذي أدى شيء ما)	thanks for	شكراً على (تستخدم للتعبير عن الامتنان لفعل أو شيء محدد)
rule	قاعدة / قانون / يحكم	role	دور / وظيفة / مهمة
practice	ممارسة / تدريب (يمكن استخدامها كفعل في الأمريكية)	practise	يمارس / يتدرب

accuracy, inaccuracy, accurate, inaccurate & accurately

accuracy	دقة	▶ The accuracy of the results is very high.
inaccuracy	عدم الدقة	▶ The report contains some inaccuracy .
accurate	دقيق	▶ This is an accurate answer.
inaccurate	غير دقيق	▶ Your information is inaccurate .
accurately	بدقة	▶ She measured the distance accurately .

predict, expect, foretell & forecast

predict	يتنبأ / يتوقع (اعتماداً على معرفة أو أدلة)	▶ Scientists can predict earthquakes using technology.
expect	يتوقع (ينتظر حدوث شيء)	▶ I expect my friend to call me tonight.
foretell	يتنبأ / يتكهن (نبوءة بدون منطق)	▶ The fortune-teller foretold his future.
forecast	يتنبأ / يتوقع (خاصة الطقس أو الاقتصاد)	▶ Experts forecast heavy rain.

A Call for Adaptation

Before you read

Reading

1. Have you ever experienced a storm, flood, or earthquake? What happened?
2. How do people usually get warnings about bad weather?



1) Read the following text from a science magazine

Scientists have made **remarkable progress** in weather **prediction** over the past century. Thanks to **advanced technology** and improved **understanding** of atmospheric science, modern **forecasting** systems can now predict many weather **patterns** with **impressive accuracy** ⁽¹⁾—sometimes days or even weeks in **advance**. **Meteorologists** ⁽²⁾ use hi-tech tools like **satellites**, **radar** systems, and computer models to **monitor temperature**, wind, **pressure**, and **humidity** ⁽³⁾.



This data helps them **track** ⁽⁴⁾ storms, predict **rainfall**, and **issue** early **warnings**. For example, the ability to **forecast** a **hurricane's** path has improved greatly in recent **decades**. As a result, governments can organize **evacuations** ⁽⁵⁾, hospitals can **prepare** for **emergencies**, and lives can be saved.

However, while weather events are becoming easier to predict, the exact **intensity** ⁽⁶⁾ and timing of **natural disasters** still **pose** ⁽⁷⁾ major **challenges**. A storm might change **direction** suddenly, or a **flood** could be worse than expected. Even with advanced models, uncertainty **remains**.

Earthquakes, in particular, remain largely **unpredictable**. Unlike storms, which develop over time and can be **observed**, **seismic** ⁽⁸⁾ activity **occurs** deep beneath the Earth's surface. **Tectonic plates** ⁽⁹⁾ shift **silently**, and there are usually no **clear** warning signs before a quake **strikes**. Scientists can **identify regions**—like parts of the **Middle East** and North Africa—that are at **higher risk**, but they cannot say exactly when an earthquake will happen.

We cannot stop **natural disasters**, but we can **reduce** their **impact**. We should have had strong building **rules**, health and **safety** lessons, and **practice drills** ⁽¹⁰⁾ many years ago. Lives could have been saved if cities were better prepared.

Eventually, while science **continues to advance**, **readiness** and **planning** remain our strongest **defenses**.

- (١) دقة / إتقان
- (٢) خبراء الأرصاد الجوية
- (٣) رطوبة
- (٤) يتتبع / يلاحق
- (٥) إجلاء / إخلاء
- (٦) شدة / قوة
- (٧) يشكل / يطرح
- (٨) زلزالي / متعلق بالزلازل
- (٩) الصفائح التكتونية
- (١٠) تدريبات / مناورات

Discuss these questions in small groups

1. What improvements have been made in weather forecasting?
2. Why is it still difficult to predict the exact timing and strength of disasters?
3. How has hurricane prediction improved? Why is this important?
4. Why can't scientists predict earthquakes like they predict storms?
5. What can governments do to reduce the damage from natural disasters?

Before you start

1) Answer the following questions.

1. Have you ever made an emergency plan with your family?
2. What would you take if you had to leave your home quickly?
3. What items do you think are most important in an emergency?
4. Why might it be hard to call family during a disaster?

Emergency Awareness

Janet

Welcome to **Stay Safe**, your emergency **preparedness**⁽¹⁾ guide. I'm Janet Farog and today we're talking about creating family **emergency plans**. With me is fire chief Sammy Nagib. Sammy, what's the most important thing should do?

Sammy

Well, Janet, people should have prepared better for disasters

before they happen. You could have avoided many problems with simple preparation. Every family might have prevented serious issues by having an emergency **kit**⁽²⁾ ready.

Janet

What should be in this kit?

Sammy

You should have stored water 4L per person per day for at least 3 days. You could have included flashlights, batteries,

first aid **supplies**⁽³⁾, and **non-perishable**⁽⁴⁾ food. People might have forgotten about important **documents**,⁽⁵⁾ so keep copies in a **waterproof**⁽⁶⁾ container.

Janet

What about communication plans?

Sammy

Families should have chosen a non-local contact person. During disasters, long-distance calls often work when local calls don't. You could have written down important phone numbers. Don't rely only on your cell phone contact list.

(1) استعداد

(2) حقيبة / غدة

(3) مؤن / مستلزمات

(4) سريع التلف / هش

(5) وثائق / مستندات

(6) مقاوم للماء



2) Answer the following questions.

1. How much water should families store per person?
2. What type of container should important documents be kept in?
3. Why should families choose an out-of-state contact person?
4. What shouldn't people rely on for contact information?



Exercise 01

Key Vocabulary

1. Scientists use satellites and radar to storms. SB - R2
a. track b. ignore c. stop d. delay
2. The of a storm refers to how strong it is. SB - R2
a. accuracy b. intensity c. humidity d. pattern
3. means being ready for an emergency. SB - R2
a. Prediction b. Damage c. Evacuation d. Preparedness
4. A waterproof container keeps water from important documents. SB - R2
a. drying b. damaging c. heating d. cleaning
5. plates are large pieces of Earth's crust that move and cause earthquakes. SB - R2
a. Atmospheric b. Oceanic c. Tectonic d. Volcanic
6. Meteorologists study and predict conditions. SB - R2
a. geological b. social c. economic d. weather
7. A/An kit includes flashlights, water, and first aid supplies. SB - R2
a. emergency b. school c. travel d. cooking
8. are practice activities for real emergencies. SB - R2
a. Predictions b. Reports c. Drills d. Meetings
9. The success of a scientific experiment depends largely on the of the collected data.
a. intensity b. preparedness c. humidity d. accuracy
10. The manager conducted safety at the factory after the recent accident.
a. intensity b. documents c. drills d. humidity
11. During hurricanes, people are advised to follow the official immediately.
a. evacuations b. poses c. supplies d. drills
12. The of the storm increased suddenly, causing widespread damage.
a. accuracy b. role c. warning d. intensity
13. Countries with better disaster can save more lives during crises.
a. warning b. track c. preparedness d. humidity
14. The teacher's helped the students avoid repeating the same mistake.
a. preparedness b. warning c. role d. humidity
15. High in summer makes the weather feel hotter than the actual temperature.
a. humidity b. accuracy c. drills d. preparedness
16. Without proper, the event could turn into a complete failure.
a. evacuation b. role c. preparation d. kit
17. Important should be kept in a safe place to avoid loss or theft.
a. intensity b. accuracy c. supplies d. documents
18. means to follow or watch the movement of something.
a. Track b. Kit c. Pose d. Supplies
19. means how strong or powerful something is.
a. Meteorologists b. Waterproof c. Intensity d. Drills
20. Meteorologists the movement of hurricanes carefully.
a. evacuate b. track c. pose d. supply
21. The government must air pollution levels to protect people's health.
a. monitor b. prepare c. drill d. forecast

22. study weather conditions to provide accurate forecasts.
 a. Artists b. Engineers c. Lawyers d. Meteorologists
23. Milk and fruits are items that must be stored in a fridge.
 a. waterproof b. remarkable c. perishable d. impressive
24. are things that are needed for a particular purpose and are provided or stored.
 a. Intensity b. Drills c. Documents d. Supplies
25. Earthquakes are dangerous because they are sudden and
 a. impressive b. remarkable c. unpredictable d. accurate
26. are official papers or records that provide information or proof.
 a. Documents b. Supplies c. Drills d. Track
27. The new law will many challenges for companies.
 a. forecast b. pose c. supply d. drill
28. During emergencies, people are advised to store food such as rice, pasta, and canned beans because they last for months.
 a. non-perishable b. perishable c. unpredictable d. impressive
29. The student showed progress in English after only a few months of practice and hard work.
 a. perishable b. remarkable c. unpredictable d. waterproof
30. Earthquakes often occur because move suddenly under the Earth's surface.
 a. water supplies b. warning signs c. tectonic plates d. drills
31. means how correct or exact something is.
 a. Intensity b. Accuracy c. Preparedness d. Warning
32. are practice activities to prepare for real emergencies.
 a. Drills b. Kit c. Waterproof d. Pose
33. The new phone is, so it can survive being dropped in water for several minutes.
 a. waterproof b. impressive c. intense d. perishable
34. is the state of being ready for something, especially an emergency or difficult situation.
 a. Perishable b. Preparedness c. Intensity d. Meteorologists
35. means to cause something to start or happen.
 a. Track b. Pose c. Perishable d. Accuracy
36. A good leader must have a/an of his team's needs and problems.
 a. understanding b. preparation c. accuracy d. kit
37. Soldiers are trained to use their medical to save lives on the battlefield.
 a. drill b. kit c. role d. humidity
38. is the amount of water in the air.
 a. Track b. Perishable c. Humidity d. Intensity
39. The museum has a/an collection of ancient Egyptian artifacts.
 a. accurate b. intense c. non-perishable d. impressive
40. is a set of articles or equipment needed for a specific purpose.
 a. Supplies b. Track c. Kit d. Waterproof
41. are huge pieces of Earth's surface that move and cause earthquakes.
 a. Supplies b. Documents c. Drills d. Tectonic Plates
42. is likely to decay or go bad quickly; refers to food items.
 a. Preparedness b. Perishable c. Waterproof d. Kit



Exercise 04 Main Vocabulary

43. Some students gave an smile, trying to hide their nervousness before the exam.
a. non-perishable b. artificial c. waterproof d. remarkable
44. The government is working hard to achieve economic despite the challenges.
a. track b. evacuation c. progress d. warning
45. The rescue team had to emergency kits before leaving for the disaster area.
a. evacuate b. pose c. forecast d. prepare
46. Meteorologists can the weather more accurately using modern technology.
a. predict b. forecast c. monitor d. prepare
47. During the experiment, we had to the changes carefully.
a. observe b. wash c. build d. shout
48. Natural disasters usually in areas with extreme weather.
a. protect b. observe c. occur d. provide
49. Poor planning may the success of the evacuation process.
a. warn b. construct c. organize d. hinder
50. In the past, some people claimed they could the future by reading the stars.
a. monitor b. prepare c. foretell d. supply
51. Lack of money can be a serious to scientific research.
a. hindrance b. document c. meteorologist d. kit
52. The city built strong flood to protect the population.
a. warnings b. defenses c. documents d. drills
53. People should enough food and water before a hurricane.
a. predict b. monitor c. store d. evacuate
54. many countries, Egypt has a unique history that goes back thousands of years.
a. unlike b. across c. through d. upon
55. Athletes who run in races need strong stamina and careful preparation.
a. easy b. short c. heavy d. long-distance
56. The teacher gave a explanation, so all the students understood the lesson easily.
a. clear b. vague c. noisy d. distant



Exercise 05 Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives, Notes & Definitions

57. Scientists use satellites to weather patterns before storms happen.
a. keep b. pose c. make d. predict
58. Climate change will continue to challenges for future generations.
a. pose b. store c. stay d. practise
59. Governments must early warnings to protect citizens from hurricanes.
a. organise b. issue c. avoid d. prepare
60. Every school should emergency plans to deal with unexpected disasters.
a. keep b. predict c. avoid d. make
61. In case of emergencies, people should water in clean containers.
a. practise b. pose c. store d. avoid
62. Families should always for emergencies to stay safe during disasters.
a. contact b. rely c. reduce d. prepare

63. It's important to down emergency numbers in case your phone battery dies.

- a. rely b. write c. remain d. be

64. Passengers must book their tickets to get lower prices.

- a. thanks to b. in particular c. at least d. in advance

65. This project focuses on helping elderly people, those living alone.

- a. in advance b. in particular c. thanks to d. at least

66. Every family should store three days' worth of food and water.

- a. thanks to b. in particular c. at least d. in advance

67. The map used by the hikers was so that they got lost in the forest.

- a. Inaccurate b. Accurate c. Accuracy d. Accurately

68. She recorded the data to make sure the results were reliable.

- a. Accuracy b. Accurate c. Accurately d. Inaccuracy

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

69. The computer will calculate your position with accuracy with pinpoint accuracy. The synonym of the word "accuracy" is SB - R2

- a. exactness b. fragment c. politeness d. intensity e. precision

70. The intensity of the storm surprised the meteorologists. The synonym of "intensity" is

- a. Strength b. Power c. Weakness d. Mildness e. Softness

71. The committee will pose new questions to improve the research. The synonym of "pose" is

- a. Create b. Eliminate c. Present d. Remove e. Solve

72. Fresh fruits and vegetables are highly perishable and need refrigeration. The synonym of "perishable" is

- a. Lasting b. Nonperishable c. Durable d. Spoilable e. Fragile

73. Regular practice helps improve your English skills. The synonym of "improve" is

- a. Enhance b. Decline c. Worsen d. Develop e. Deteriorate

74. Lack of funding can be a major obstacle to completing the project. The synonym of "obstacle" is

- a. Aid b. Assistance c. Hindrance d. Help e. Barrier

75. The lights went out suddenly during the storm. The synonym of "suddenly" is

- a. Gradually b. Slowly c. Unexpectedly d. Instantly e. Steadily

76. The mild intensity of the rain caused no damage at all. The antonym of "intensity" is

- a. Strength b. Mildness c. Power d. Severity e. Weakness

77. The government decided to pose no further threats but instead solve the issues. The antonym of "pose" is

- a. Present b. Remove c. Create d. Eliminate e. Constitute

78. Canned food is nonperishable and can be stored for months. The antonym of "perishable" is

- a. Spoilable b. Destructible c. Durable d. Fragile e. Lasting

79. Meteorologists can predict the weather using advanced models. The synonym of "predict" is

- a. Doubt b. Misunderstand c. Foretell d. Ignore e. Forecast

80. A deep understanding of the problem is essential before taking action. The synonym of "understanding" is

- a. Confusion b. Awareness c. Misunderstanding d. Comprehension e. Ignorance

الصفات

Adjectives

١ الصفة هي كلمة تصف الاسم أو الضمير وتأتي:

١ قبل الاسم الموصوف

❖ He bought a **new** flat.

❖ She was a **clever** student.

(am - is - are - was - were - be - been - being) V. to be بعد

❖ He is **lazy**.

❖ They are **active**.

٢ بعد الحال

❖ We are **very** tired.

❖ Our exams were **really** hard.

٣ بعد الكلمات التالية:

look - seem - sound - appear / feel - taste - smell - touch
go - get - come - become / stay - how - fall - grow

❖ Toka seems **ill**.

❖ He gets **tired** quickly.

٤ بعد الضمائر الغير محددة (someone - anyone - nothing - anywhere....)

❖ I met **someone** strange.

❖ Ali wants to go **somewhere** isolated.

٥ لا تتغير الصفة سواء كان الموصوف مفرداً أو جمعاً، مذكراً أو مؤنثاً.

★ He is **clever**.

★ She is **clever**.

★ They are **clever**.

٦ لاحظ أن الصفة بمفردها لا يأتي قبلها (a-an) أما إذا جاءت قبل اسم مفرد يعد يأتي قبلها (a-an).

★ This house is **new**.

★ It is **a new house**.

٧ لاحظ عند وضع **the** قبل الصفة تتحول إلى اسم جمع ويأتي بعدها فعل جمع:

★ **The poor** should be helped by **the rich**.

٨ لاحظ الفرق بين الصفة التي تنتهي بـ **ed** والتي تنتهي بـ **ing**:

▶ **bored - excited - amazed - interested**

نستخدم الصفة التي تنتهي بـ **ed** كصفة لمستقبل الحدث

▶ **boring - exciting - amazing - interesting**

نستخدم الصفة التي تنتهي بـ **ing** كصفة للمسبب للحدث

٩ من حيث النوع تنقسم الصفة إلى نوعين:

١ صفة قصيرة تتكون من مقطع واحد عند النطق مثل:

big

small

short

tall

fast

slow

٢ صفة طويلة تتكون من أكثر من مقطع عند النطق مثل:

expensive

comfortable

dangerous

valuable

wonderful

important

١٠ تنقسم الصفات من حيث الدرجة إلى ثلاث درجات:

١ الصفة العادية (Positive degree) الغرض منها الوصف وليس المقارنة.

٢ صفة المقارنة (Comparative degree) وتستخدم في المقارنة بين اثنين.

٣ صفة التفضيل (Superlative degree) صفة التفضيل للمقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين.

خلي بالك

Positive degree

1

الصفة العادية

وهي الدرجة العادية أو البسيطة التي تبين الصفة مثل:

lucky

محظوظ

nice

لطيف

happy

سعيد

rich

غنى

تستخدم الدرجة البسيطة لكي نعبر عن المساواة في الصفة.

تستخدم الدرجة البسيطة لكي نعبر عن عدم المساواة في الصفة.

as + صفة + as

not as / so + صفة + as

► Toka is **as tall as** Jana.

► Ali is **not as (so) clever as** Ahmed.

► Ahmed is **as old as** Ali.

► He is **not as (so) rich as** his brother.

يمكن استخدام التركيبات التالية للتعبير عن المساواة.

الطرف الثاني + as + اسم + have the same + الطرف الأول

★ Toka is **the same** height **as** Jana.

★ Ahmed is **the same** age **as** Ali.

اسم + have the same + الطرف الثاني + الطرف الأول

★ Toka and Jana **have the same** height.

★ Ahmed and Ali **have the same** age.

الطرف الثاني be the same as + الطرف الأول

★ This shirt is **the same as** the one I saw yesterday

★ Her answer is **the same as** mine.



لاحظ الفرق بين الصفة والاسم:

heavy	expensive - cheap	tall - high	big - small	young - old	الصفة
weight	price	height	size	age	الاسم

Comparative degree

2

صفة المقارنة

تستخدم المقارنة بين اثنين عندما نريد إظهار تفوق شخص أو شيء على شخص أو شيء وتكون كالتالي:

er + than + صفة قصيرة

More

less

than + صفة طويلة

أكثر من

أقل من

► Ali is **taller than** Ahmed.

► Mona is **more beautiful than** Nada.

► Ahmed is **shorter than** Ali.

► Nada is **less beautiful than** Mona.

Superlative degree

3

صفة التفضيل

وهي تستخدم عندما نريد إظهار تفوق شخص أو شيء على مجموعة من الأشخاص أو الأشياء وتكون كالاتي:

The + صفة قصيرة + est

the most
the least

+ صفة طويلة

الأكثر
الأقل

★ Ali is **the tallest** student in the class.

★ She is **the shortest** one.

★ Mona is **the most beautiful** girl I have ever seen.

short adjectives

4

الصفات القصيرة

Positive الصفات

happy
heavy
pretty
short

سعيد
ثقيل
جميل
قصير

Comparative المقارنة

happier
heavier
prettier
shorter

than

Superlative التفضيل

happiest
heaviest
prettiest
shortest

the

long adjectives

5

الصفات الطويلة

Positive الصفة

dangerous
important
valuable
wonderful

خطير
مهم
قيم
مدهش

Comparative المقارنة

More dangerous
less important
valuable
wonderful

than

Superlative التفضيل

the most dangerous
the least important
valuable
wonderful

بعض الصفات الشاذة

Positive degree

good (right)
bad (wrong)
many
much
little
far

Comparative

better
worse
more
less
farther أبعد
further أكثر / إضافي

than

Superlative

best الأحسن
worst الأسوأ
most الأكثر
least الأقل
farthest الأبعد
furthest

the

★ Ali is **better than** Ahmed.

★ Ahmed is **worse than** Ali.

انتظروا!!!!

كتاب مراجعة المماثلة
للصف الثاني الثانوي

المماثلة





Exercise 04 Language Level 1

1. Ahmed is the athlete in Egypt. SB
 a. strong b. stronger c. strongest d. strong as
2. Ahmed is than his competitor. SB
 a. strong b. stronger c. strongest d. strong as
3. She is the student in the class. SB - R2
 a. intelligent b. more intelligent c. most intelligent d. less intelligent
4. This box is than the other one. SB - R2
 a. heavy b. heavier c. more heavy d. heaviest
5. This is movie I've ever seen! SB - R2
 a. good b. better c. the better d. the best
6. This is one of cities I've visited. SB - R2
 a. beautiful b. the most beautiful c. more beautiful d. the less beautiful
7. This exercise is than the last one. SB - R2
 a. easy b. more easy c. the easier d. easier
8. Mount Everest is mountain in the world. SB - R2
 a. high b. higher c. the highest d. most high
9. Japan has some of the warning systems. SB
 a. most advanced b. advanced c. more advanced d. less advanced
10. This earthquake was than the last one. SB
 a. as deadly b. most deadly c. more deadly d. deadly
11. Hurricanes are usually than earthquakes. SB
 a. predictable b. more predictable c. as predictable d. most predictable
12. The 2011 earthquake was one of the disasters in history. SB
 a. powerfully b. powerful c. more powerful d. most powerful
13. The Nile is the river in the world. SB
 a. long b. longer c. longest d. most long
14. This is phone I've ever had. SB
 a. the best b. good c. better d. as good
15. Cairo is than many other African cities. SB
 a. busy b. busier c. busiest d. the busier
16. This hotel is very The rooms are clean and the staff are friendly. SB
 a. comfortable b. the most comfortable
 c. more comfortable d. as comfortable
17. Yesterday was the day of the summer; it reached 45°C. SB
 a. hot b. hotter c. hottest d. most hot
18. I find this question very difficult. This means that the question is for me. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤
 a. confused b. confusing c. confuse d. confuses
19. He gets when I give him several instructions at a time. طوخ ٢٠٢٤ / بلبيس ٢٠٢٢
 a. confused b. confusing c. confuse d. confusion
20. My friend Hany is tall, but his brother Magdy is than him. دار السلام ٢٠٢٥
 a. tallest b. as tall c. taller d. a lot tall
21. Tanta is a city in Egypt. القوصية ٢٠٢٢
 a. biggest b. the biggest c. bigger than d. big
22. For me, the beaches on the Red Sea are in Egypt. وسط المحلة ٢٠٢٤
 a. good b. bad c. the best d. better than
23. Let's leave. This is film I have ever watched. حلوان ٢٠٢٤ طوخ ٢٠٢٤ مطروح ٢٠٢٤ دمياط ٢٠٢٢
 a. a bad b. worse c. the worst d. worst

24. All the other movies in the library are than the movie I'm watching. سما لوط ٢٠٢٤
a. more exciting b. much exciting c. exciting d. most exciting
25. She is a really nice person; one of people I know. الفيوم ٢٠٢٢
a. the nicer b. the nice c. the most nice d. the nicest
26. There are people at the meeting than at the last one. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢
a. fewer b. fewest c. few d. the fewest
27. You must download the update for your apps. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
a. late b. later c. latest d. latter
28. Living in a big city isn't living in a small village. قنا ٢٠٢٢ LM
a. so cheap b. as cheap c. so cheap as d. cheaper
29. This book was than the last one she wrote. I didn't like it. المنيا ٢٠٢٢ أسوان ٢٠٢٤
a. good b. best c. worst d. worse
30. Mai and Omar are of the same البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
a. age b. old c. young d. older
31. He is the most respectful person I have met. بني مزار ٢٠٢٤
a. hardly b. yet c. never d. ever



Exercise 04 Language Level 2

32. Nobody in our company is Ali. المنيرة أول ٢٠٢٤ / القصية ٢٠٢٤ / الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٥
a. as efficient b. as efficient as c. most efficient than d. efficient than
33. Yesterday was cold and today is البينا ٢٠٢٥ وسط طنطا ٢٠٢٢
a. coldest b. colder than c. colder d. a colder
34. Your grades are not so good, but I know you can do the next exam. البحيرة ٢٠٢٥
a. best b. good c. the best d. better
35. Anas deserved to come first because he worked all of his schoolmates. جرجا ٢٠٢٤
a. the hardest b. harder than c. as hard as d. hard
36. Your homework is than last week; you seem lazy. نقاده ٢٠٢٥ الواسطي ٢٠٢٥
a. better b. good c. worse d. bad
37. He is careful driver. He had many accidents recently. القاهرة ٢٠٢٥ أهناسيا ٢٠٢٥
a. the most b. the least c. the best d. the more
38. Can you name building in the world? بني سويف ٢٠٢٥
a. high b. so high c. higher d. the highest
39. In France, oysters are most of the other types of seafood. قليوب ٢٠٢٤
a. rare b. rarer than c. the rarest d. rarest
40. It's too noisy here. Can we go somewhere ? المنيا ٢٠٢٢
a. more quieter b. more quiet c. quietest d. quieter
41. This is the book I have ever read; I learned so much about athletes' hearts. أبنوب ٢٠٢٤
a. least valuable b. most valuable c. much valuable d. more valuable
42. Our football team is yours. إسنا ٢٠٢٢ سوهاج ٢٠٢٤
a. better than b. the better c. best than d. the best
43. I regret selling my car. It was decision I've ever made. إسنا ٢٠٢٢ سوهاج ٢٠٢٤
a. the best b. the worst c. as bad d. worse
44. This exam seems than the previous one; you don't have to worry. LM
a. more difficult b. the easiest c. easier d. much difficult
45. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct S3 - R2
a. I'm the most tallest in my family. b. I'm taller than anyone in my family.
c. I'm more taller than my brother. d. I'm the most high in my family.

46. Adam is as tall as Rami. They have the same
 a. weight b. height c. length d. strength **بني سوليف ٢٠٢٢**
47. Your homework is than last week. You need to work harder.
 a. better b. worse c. good d. bad **٢٠٢٢ أسيوط LM**
48. I think physics is the of all subjects; a lot of students don't like it.
 a. easier b. more difficult c. easiest d. most difficult **LM**
49. Their house is from the main road.
 a. the farther b. farther than c. the farthest d. farthest
50. My bicycle is very nice, but that one is
 a. the nicest b. more nice c. nicer d. more nicer
51. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct
 a. One of the most beautiful places is Hawaii. b. One of the beautiful places is Hawaii.
 c. One of the more beautiful places is Hawaii. d. One of the beautiful places Hawaii. **SB - R2**



Exercise Ph Language Level 3

52. Adel isn't as old as Abdallah. Adel is really
 a. younger b. older c. youngest d. old **LM**
53. Ali doesn't have as much money as Mahmoud. Who has less money?
 a. None b. Both c. Ali d. Mahmoud **٢٠٢٤ الاسكندرية**
54. He speaks English as as he speaks Arabic.
 a. best b. bad c. good d. well **٢٠٢٢ الفيوم**
55. She can run as fast as
 a. he b. his c. him d. my **٢٠٢٤ الاسكندرية**
56. Football is an outdoor game, but chess is played
 a. indoor b. outdoor c. outdoors d. indoors **٢٠٢٤ بنها**
57. There is not mountain in the world than Everest.
 a. height b. higher c. a higher d. high **٢٠٢٤ بنها**
58. This is situation I have ever faced; I'm in a tight spot.
 a. the most difficult b. most difficult c. the least difficult d. more difficult **LM**
59. Why don't we have an breakfast for a change? The weather is very nice.
 a. indoor b. indoors c. outdoor d. outdoors **٢٠٢٢ بلييس**
60. Today is warmer than yesterday. Yesterday today?
 a. wasn't as warm as b. wasn't warm as c. wasn't warmer as d. is not warm as **٢٠٢٢ الاسكندرية**
61. This question is too hard to grasp. Can't you make it
 a. simply b. simpler c. more simpler d. as simple **٢٠٢٢ دمياط**
62. I hope you'll stay next time.
 a. longer b. longest c. the longest d. along

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

- Mount Fuji is the highest mountain in Japan. (higher than) **SB - R2**
- This phone is more expensive than the one I had before. (not as) **SB - R2**
- That was the worst movie I've ever seen, wasn't it? (much worse) **SB - R2**
- The book is heavier than the magazine. (not as ... as)
- This city is noisier than the village. (much quieter)
- Today's test is easier than yesterday's. (not as)
- The lecture today was more interesting than yesterday's. (not as)
- Mount Everest is the highest mountain in the world. (higher than)
- Today's weather is hotter than yesterday. (not as)



Unit 4 Natural Disasters

Lessons 3 Taking Pride in Our Beloved 4 Learning from the Past



Key Vocabulary

evacuate ^(v)	يجلي / يخلي	preparedness ⁽ⁿ⁾	جاهزية / استعداد	response ⁽ⁿ⁾	استجابة
evacuation ⁽ⁿ⁾	إجلاء / عملية إخلاء	disaster ⁽ⁿ⁾	كارثة	valuable ^(adj)	ذو قيمة / قيم
in advance ^(adv)	مسبقاً	powerful ^(adj)	قوي	disaster ⁽ⁿ⁾	كارثة
block ^(n/v)	انسداد / يحجب	strike ⁽ⁿ⁾	ضربة / هجوم	destruction ⁽ⁿ⁾	دمار
belongings ⁽ⁿ⁾	ممتلكات شخصية	issue ⁽ⁿ⁾	مسألة / قضية	destructive ^(adj)	مدمر
emergency ⁽ⁿ⁾	حالة طارئة	awareness ⁽ⁿ⁾	وعي	infrastructure ⁽ⁿ⁾	البنية التحتية
trap ^(n/v)	فخ / يحبس	neutral ^(adj)	محايد	emergency kits ⁽ⁿ⁾	معدات الطوارئ

Main Vocabulary

floods ⁽ⁿ⁾	فيضانات	earthquake ⁽ⁿ⁾	زلزال	lack ⁽ⁿ⁾	نقص
storms ⁽ⁿ⁾	عواصف	planning ⁽ⁿ⁾	تخطيط	coastal ^(adj)	ساحلي
wildfire ⁽ⁿ⁾	حرائق الغابات	destroyed ^(adj)	مدمر	drills ⁽ⁿ⁾	تدريبات
well-being ⁽ⁿ⁾	رفاهية / صحة جيدة	flashlights ⁽ⁿ⁾	مصابيح يدوية	season ⁽ⁿ⁾	موسم
community ⁽ⁿ⁾	مجتمع	suffer ^(v)	يعاني	role ⁽ⁿ⁾	دور
action ⁽ⁿ⁾	فعل / اجراء	practice ⁽ⁿ⁾	ممارسة	predict ^(v)	يتنبأ
pack ^(v)	يحزم	powerful ^(adj)	قوي	damage ^(n/v)	ضرر / يضر
unpredictable ^(adj)	غير متوقع	challenge ^(n/v)	تحدي / يتحدى	saying ⁽ⁿ⁾	قول مأثور
planet ⁽ⁿ⁾	كوكب	serious ^(adj)	جاد / خطير	weather forecasts ⁽ⁿ⁾	توقعات الطقس
accurate ^(adj)	دقيق	remain ^(v)	يبقى	landslide ⁽ⁿ⁾	انهيار أرضي
effects ⁽ⁿ⁾	تأثيرات	trigger ⁽ⁿ⁾	محفز / سبب	power ⁽ⁿ⁾	قوة
warning ⁽ⁿ⁾	تحذير	ignore ^(n/v)	يتجاهل / يتجاهل	volunteer ⁽ⁿ⁾	متطوع
purpose ⁽ⁿ⁾	غرض / هدف	evidence ^(adj)	دليل / إثبات	report ⁽ⁿ⁾	تقرير
impact ⁽ⁿ⁾	تأثير	formal ⁽ⁿ⁾	رسمي	economic ^(adj)	اقتصادي
safety ⁽ⁿ⁾	سلامة	headings ⁽ⁿ⁾	عناوين	recommendations ^(m)	توصيات
observation ⁽ⁿ⁾	ملاحظة	thoughts ⁽ⁿ⁾	أفكار	organized ⁽ⁿ⁾	منظم
research ⁽ⁿ⁾	بحث	briefly	باختصار	shake ^(v)	يهتز / يهز
unfortunately	لسوء الحظ	productivity ⁽ⁿ⁾	إنتاجية	frightening ^(adj)	مخيف / مرعب
common ^(adj)	شائع / مألوف	destroy ^(v)	يدمر	hurricane ⁽ⁿ⁾	إعصار
warn ^(v)	يحذر	destruction ⁽ⁿ⁾	دمار / هدم		

Collocations

evacuate an area	يجلي منطقة	save belongings	يحفظ الممتلكات الشخصية
examine the impact	يدرس التأثير / يحلل التأثير	state the purpose	يوضح الهدف
face disasters	يواجه الكوارث	suffer damage	يتعرض للأضرار
hit a town	يضرِب المدينة	trap people	يحبس الأشخاص / يحتجزهم
recommend steps	يوصي بالخطوات	take action	يتخذ إجراء
pack emergency kits	يجهز حقائب الطوارئ	predict every detail	يتنبأ بكل التفاصيل
make a plan	يضع خطة	staying informed	يبقى على اطلاع مستمر

Expressions & Prepositions

in advance	مسبقاً / قبل الوقت	ready for	جاهز لـ
the storm passed	مرت العاصفة	as the saying goes,	كما يقول المثل
better safe than sorry	الوقاية خير من العلاج	play a role	يلعب دوراً / يقوم بدور
suffer from	يعاني من	prepare for	يستعد لـ
implied in preparation	مضمن في التحضير	contribute to	يساهم في
listen to warnings	يستمع للتحذيرات	compared to	بالمقارنة مع
poor planning	التخطيط السيء	cause destruction	يسبب دماراً
In conclusion, (To summarize)	في الختام	combined effects	التأثيرات المجمعة أو المشتركة
work on	يعمل على / ينجز شيئاً / يقنع	earthquake-prone regions	مناطق معرضة للزلازل
lack of awareness	نقص الوعي	far deadlier than	أشد فتكاً من

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
strike	يضرب / يحدث فجأة	hit / attack / affect	miss / protect / defend
prepare	يُدمر	plan / arrange / get ready	neglect / ignore / abandon
strong	قوى	powerful / sturdy / tough	weak / fragile / feeble
safe	أمن	secure / protected / unharmed	dangerous / risky / unsafe
block	يسد / يَحْجِز	close / stop / obstruct	open / clear / release
digital	رقمي	online / electronic / virtual	paper / manual / physical
disaster	كوارث	catastrophe / tragedy / calamity	success / blessing / fortune
evacuate	يترك / يخلي	escape / withdraw / remove	stay / remain / occupy
awareness	وعي	knowledge / understanding / recognition	ignorance / unawareness / neglect
trapped	محبوس / محتجز	caught / stuck / confined	free / released / escaped

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
destroy	يُدمر	destruction	تدمير	destructive	مدمر
prepare	يُجهز / يستعد	preparation	تحضير	prepared	مستعد
evacuate	يخلي / يخلي	evacuation	إجلاء	evacuated	مخلي
block	يسد / يغلُق	blockage	صون / الحفاظ	blocked	مغلق
inform	يُخبر / يُعلم	information	معلومة	informative	مفيد بالمعلومات



Language Notes

Notice the Difference

storm	عاصفة / يهاجم	brainstorm	يعصف بالأفكار
inform	يخبر / يعلم	reform	يصلح / اصلاح
hospital	مستشفى	hospitable	مضياف
coast	ساحل / شاطئ	cost	تكلفة / ثمن
planning	تخطيط / إعداد	planting	زراعة / يزرع
evacuate	يجلي / يخلي	advocate	يناصر / مؤيد
aware	واع / مدرك	awareness	وعي / ادراك
emergency	حالة طارئة	urgency	الحاح / استعجال
flood	فيضان / يفيض	blood	دم
between	بين (اثنين فقط غالباً)	among	بين (أكثر من اثنين)
valuable (adjective)	ثمين / له قيمة	valuables (noun plural)	أشياء ثمينة (مجوهرات، أموال)
save	ينقذ / يوفر / يحفظ	safe	أمن / في أمان
nature	الطبيعة / جوهر الشيء	natural	طبيعي (صفة)
damage (uncountable)	ضرر (بشكل عام / لا يعد)	damages(plural noun)	تعويضات مالية عن الضرر

block, blocked & blockage

block	يحتجب / يسد	▶ The road was blocked by fallen trees.
blocked	محتجوب / مسدود	▶ They couldn't run fast due to the blocked road.
blockage	انسداد / مانع	▶ The blockage made travel impossible

destroy, destruction, & destructive

destroy	يهدم / يدمر	▶ The storm will destroy many houses.
destruction	الدمار / التدمير	▶ The earthquake caused a lot of destruction .
destructive	مدمر / متقرب	▶ The hurricane was very destructive .

evacuate, evacuation & evacuated

evacuate	يجلي / يخلي	▶ People must evacuate the building during the fire.
evacuation	إخلاء / إجلاء	▶ The evacuation of the town took several hours.
evacuated	تم إخلاءه / تم إفراغه	▶ Soldiers entered the evacuated village.

"Learning from the Past"

Before you start: Think and discuss in pairs:

1) Answer the following questions.

1. What types of natural disasters are common in your country?
2. How do you and your family prepare for emergencies?



2) Read the following article

Natural disasters—earthquakes, floods, wildfires⁽¹⁾, or storms—can strike⁽²⁾ at any time. While we can't always stop them, we can prepare for them. Unfortunately, many communities around the world still suffer because of poor planning or lack⁽³⁾ of awareness⁽⁴⁾. In 2023, a powerful storm hit a small coastal town. Many homes were destroyed, and roads were blocked for days. After the storm passed, people realized that



they should have listened to the early warnings. Some could have evacuated⁽⁵⁾ in time, but they were trapped⁽⁶⁾ for too long. Others might have saved their belongings if they had packed emergency⁽⁷⁾ kits in advance.

This disaster taught a valuable⁽⁸⁾ lesson: being prepared saves lives. People food and water. Schools and hospitals could have practiced evacuation drills⁽⁹⁾ before the storm season started.

Disaster preparedness⁽¹⁰⁾ includes making a plan, staying informed, and taking action before it's too late. Governments, schools, and families all play a role. By learning from past mistakes, we can be more ready for the future.

Although we can't predict⁽¹¹⁾ every detail, we might have avoided some of the damage with better preparation⁽¹²⁾. As the saying goes, "Better safe than sorry."

- ١ حرائق الغابات
- ٢ يضرب / يحدث
- ٣ نقص
- ٤ وعي
- ٥ أخلي / تم إجلاؤه
- ٦ محاصر / محتجز
- ٧ طارئ / حالة طارئة
- ٨ قيم / ثمين
- ٩ تدريبات
- ١٠ استعداد / جاهزية
- ١١ يتنبأ
- ١٢ تحضير / استعداد

A) Answer the following questions.

1. Why was the coastal town not fully prepared for the storm?
2. What could schools and hospitals have done differently before the disaster?
3. How can we apply the lessons from this story to our life?
4. What are three things you can do today to prepare for a natural disaster?



Listening

Before you start ➞ Think and discuss in pairs

1) Listen to the text and decide if the following sentences are True or False

1. Earthquakes are less dangerous than floods.
2. The 2011 Japan earthquake was one of the strongest recorded.
3. Earthquakes are easier to predict than hurricanes.



The power of earthquakes

The power of **earthquakes**⁽¹⁾. Among natural **disasters**⁽²⁾, earthquakes are some of the most dangerous and **unpredictable**⁽³⁾. They can shake the ground more suddenly than storms and cause greater **destruction**⁽⁴⁾ than floods. In fact, the 2011 earthquake in Japan was one of the strongest ever recorded, and it was far deadlier than many earlier ones.



Compared to **hurricanes**⁽⁵⁾, earthquakes are often harder to predict, which makes them even more frightening. Scientists are working on building better systems to **warn**⁽⁶⁾ people, but these are still less accurate than **weather forecasts**⁽⁷⁾. Cities with weaker buildings **suffer**⁽⁸⁾ much worse damage, while areas with stronger **infrastructure**⁽⁹⁾ are usually safer. The effects of an earthquake are sometimes more serious than any other **disaster**⁽¹⁰⁾ because they can trigger **tsunamis**⁽¹¹⁾, landslides, and fires. These combined effects make earthquakes one of the most **destructive**⁽¹²⁾ forces of nature. Even though modern technology is more **advanced**⁽¹³⁾ than before, the challenge remains. People in earthquake **prone**⁽¹⁴⁾ regions must always be prepared for the worst.

- (١) الزلازل
- (٢) الكوارث
- (٣) غير متوقع
- (٤) الدمار
- (٥) الأعاصير
- (٦) يحذر / ينذر
- (٧) التوقعات
- (٨) يعاني
- (٩) البنية التحتية
- (١٠) كارثة
- (١١) التسونامي
- (١٢) مدمر
- (١٣) متقدم
- (١٤) معرض للزلازل

انتظروا!!!!

كتاب مراجعة العمالة
للمصف الثاني الثانوي





Exercise 04

Key Vocabulary

1. A/an kit includes flashlights, water, and first aid supplies. SB R2
 a. emergency b. school c. travel d. journey
2. are practice activities for real emergencies. SB R2
 a. Predictions b. Drills c. Meetings d. coassl
3. "Better safe than sorry" emphasizes the importance of
 a. risk- taking b. preparedness c. urgency d. delay
4. The city organized a full of residents before the hurricane hit.
 a. pollution b. protection c. evacuation d. manipulation
5. The earthquake was a major that affected thousands of people in the town.
 a. operation b. test c. diagram d. disaster
6. The volunteers provided support and resources during the emergency.
 a. concrete b. valuable c. value d. spirit
7. We packed all our emergency supplies in to be ready for the storm.
 a. begining b. start c. conclusion d. advance
8. Many people were in their homes when the floodwaters rose too quickly.
 a. tracked b. trapped c. attached d. parked
9. A hurricane caused severe damage to houses and roads along the coast.
 a. powerful b. weak c. trending d. posting
10. Space helps us discover new planets and understand the universe.
 a. exploration b. mention c. cooperation d. invention
11. Fallen trees the main road, making travel impossible.
 a. added b. ordered c. flocked d. blocked
12. Raising about disaster safety can prevent injuries and loss of life.
 a. sound b. voice c. awareness d. post
13. Every family should keep well-stocked emergency ready for any situation.
 a. kits b. nets c. effects d. pets
14. Lightning during the storm destroyed several buildings in the area.
 a. stars b. strikes c. smokes d. candles
15. People must know what to do in a/an to stay safe and protected.
 a. ignorance b. recycle c. connection d. emergency
16. The wildfire had a impact on both wildlife and nearby communities.
 a. distract b. destructive c. pressure d. picture
17. Climate change is a global that requires urgent action and awareness.
 a. sport b. reason c. tissue d. issue
18. She managed to save her most important before leaving her house.,
 a. reflections b. inventions c. belongings d. problems
19. Good for natural disasters can save lives and reduce property damage.
 a. preparedness b. preferences c. references d. readers
20. The journalist remained while reporting the events of the disaster.
 a. neutral b. physical c. soft d. smoky
21. The emergency team arrived quickly to help victims of the flood.
 a. position b. belonging c. response d. effect
22. She felt a strong sense of in the new team.
 a. belong b. belonging c. singing d. acting



Exercise 04 Main Vocabulary

23. This disaster taught a lesson: being prepared saves lives. SB
 a. careless b. valueless c. value d. valuable
24. By learning from past..... , we can be more ready for the future. SB
 a. marks b. hearts c. mistakes d. minds
25. Heavy in the region caused many families to evacuate their homes and seek safety.
 a. thoughts b. floods c. minds d. missions
26. The shook the city violently, leaving buildings damaged and people in fear.
 a. drought b. earthquake c. space d. ground
27. Strong battered the coastline, uprooting trees and damaging property.
 a. record b. report c. review d. storms
28. The effort helped reach the victims quickly.
 a. organized b. personalized c. messy d. weak
29. Weather in this area is..... , making it hard to prepare for sudden storms.
 a. positive b. perfect c. predictable d. unpredictable
30. Heavy rains caused a that blocked the main road into the village.
 a. landslide b. landfill c. landscape d. landmill
31. The newspaper used bold to highlight the..... disaster news.
 a. dates b. resources c. headings d. apps
32. Accurate weather..... help people prepare for storms and hurricanes.
 a. risks b. forecasts c. tasks d. masks
33. data is essential for making informed decisions during emergencies.
 a. Spoiled b. Weak c. Inaccurate d. Accurate
34. Careful of the storm helped predict its path and impact.
 a. observation b. interview c. conference d. meeting
35. Early systems help residents evacuate before disasters strike.
 a. resume b. Teaching c. warning d. warming
36. The of drills is to ensure everyone knows how to respond safely.
 a. purpose b. coral c. minor d. sample
37. Everyone has a in keeping the community safe during emergencies.
 a. rule b. road c. thought d. role
38. dropped after the flood destroyed offices and factories.
 a. regulations b. perfume c. product d. Productivity
39. The of the hurricane were felt across multiple towns and communities.
 a. lies b. effects c. affects d. fictions
40. A meeting was held to discuss emergency procedures and responsibilities.
 a. logically b. facial c. formal d. mental
41. Responding to natural disasters is a ... that requires teamwork and careful planning.
 a. chamber b. challenge c. chart d. task
42. Families should essential items like food, water, and medicine before an evacuation.
 a. pack b. back c. sack d. mention
43. Scientists try to earthquakes, but they remain difficult to foresee accurately.
 a. affect b. improve c. predict d. protect

44. Careful can help communities respond more effectively to natural disasters.
 a. planning b. planting c. plotting d. plane
45. The of the storm was enough to destroy homes and uproot trees.
 a. tower b. power c. lower d. fighter
46. Flooding is a threat that can endanger lives and property.
 a. fantastic b. repairing c. comfortable d. serious
47. Quick from rescue teams saved many lives during the earthquake.
 a. reconnect b. repair c. respect d. response
48. informed through weather forecasts can save lives during severe storms.
 a. Staying b. Making c. Doing d. Giving



Exercise 04

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

49. In 2023, a powerful storm a small coastal town. SB
 a. hit b. set c. broke d. fed
50. Authorities had to an area quickly when the floodwaters began to rise.
 a. do b. evacuate c. take d. give
51. Communities in coastal regions often disasters like hurricanes and storms every year.
 a. demand b. reflect c. collect d. face
52. Flooded streets can people in their homes for hours without any help.
 a. store b. make c. trap d. cause
53. In the meeting, everyone was asked to opinion about the plan
 a. get b. feed c. give d. tell
54. Everyone can mistakes, but it is important to learn from them.
 a. increase b. make c. settle d. find
55. Experts steps for families to prepare for natural disasters safely.
 a. run b. recommend c. face d. behave
56. Families packed emergency kits water, food, and first-aid supplies before evacuating.
 a. with b. on c. by d. into
57. The storm and it was safe to move outside.
 a. missed b. passed c. succeeded d. failed
58. planning can make even minor disasters and cause serious harm.
 a. Poor b. indoor c. rich d. hard
59. Scientists the impact of the earthquake to understand how to prevent future damage.
 a. reject b. elect c. examine d. make
60. Schools teach students how to prepare emergencies like fires and floods.
 a. for b. on c. by d. with
61. The lack preparedness increased the number of people affected by the earthquake.
 a. in b. on c. of d. with
62. conclusion, being prepared and aware can save many lives.
 a. In b. On c. By d. At

63. It is impossible to every detail of a sudden natural disaster.
 a. suspect b. select c. predict d. connect
64. Many families suffer loss and trauma after natural disasters.
 a. from b. of c. in d. by

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

65. The road is open now, but it is often blocked by much traffic. The synonym of the word "blocked" is **Sb**
 a. cracked b. congested c. jammed d. tracked e. flapped
66. The city plans to prepare for floods by building new dams. The synonym of the word "prepare" is
 a. get ready b. confine c. make arrangements d. escaped e. release
67. During the storm, many homes were left unsafe. The antonym of the word "safe" is
 a. risky b. dangerous c. secure d. protected e. unharmed
68. The earthquake struck suddenly in the night. The synonym of the word "strike" is
 a. attack b. miss c. defend d. hit e. feel
69. The bridge is very strong, so it can hold heavy trucks. The synonym of "strong" is
 a. feeble b. powerful c. fragile d. weak e. sturdy
70. Many students now use digital textbooks instead of printed ones. The synonym of "digital" is
 a. paper b. technological c. electronic d. manual e. physical
71. Residents had to evacuate their homes during the hurricane. The synonym of "evacuate" is
 a. stay b. escape c. occupy d. remain e. withdraw
72. The new school building is safe for children. The synonym of "safe" is
 a. secure b. dangerous c. risky d. protected e. unsafe
73. People need awareness about the risks of wildfires. The synonym of "awareness" is
 a. ignorance b. knowledge c. understanding d. neglect e. unawareness
74. The earthquake caused a major disaster in the city. The synonym of "disaster" is
 a. catastrophe b. blessing c. success d. tragedy e. fortune



١ صفات لا يأتي بعدها اسم:

afraid - asleep - awake - alive - alone - alike - ill - glad - pleasedetc.

- ★ He had always been **afraid** of death.
- ★ He was so exhausted that he fell **asleep** at his desk.

٢ صفات لا تأتي إلا قبل اسم:

indoor - outdoor - social - local - upper - chief - main - elder - only ...etc.

- ★ Too much central heating can harm **indoor** plants.
- ★ They sell camping equipment, hiking gear and **outdoor** clothing.

٣ لاحظ أن بعض الصفات يمكن أن نستخدم معها **more** أو **most** ويمكن أيضا إضافة **er** أو **est**:

clever - polite - simple - stupid - lively - common - quiet - pleasant...etc.

- ★ French is **simpler** / **more simple** than Arabic.
- ★ The photographer wanted something **more lively** / **livelier**.

٤ تحديد مقدار صفة المقارنة:

إذا كان الفارق في درجة الصفة كبير نستخدم **much - far - a lot - even**

- ★ Toka is **much more** intelligent **than** Jana.

إذا كان الفارق في درجة الصفة صغير نستخدم **a bit - a little - slightly**

- ★ Jana is **a bit** taller **than** Toka.

٥ لاحظ استخدام **the** مع صفات المقارنة (**er / more**) في الحالات التالية:

كلما كلما

the + صفة مقارنة + فاعل + فعل

the + صفة مقارنة + فاعل + فعل

- ★ **The more** I study, **the higher** marks I get.
- ★ **The harder** you study, **the more** marks you get.
- ★ **The less** you eat, **the thinner** you become.
- ★ **The faster** you run, **the earlier** you arrive.



عند مقارنة شيئين من نفس النوع كما في التركيب التالي

اسم + **of the two** + **er** + **the** + الصفة

- ★ Toka **is the taller of the two** girls.
- ★ Of the two cities, Cairo **is the more crowded**.

٦ لاحظ عدم استخدام **the** مع صفات التفضيل (**est / most**) في الحالات التالية:بعد صفات الملكية (**my - his - her - our - your - their - its**)

- ★ **His most** popular book is Giants.
- ★ **Her best** novel is "Great Expectations".



بعد 's الملكية

- ★ He was our school's **best** teacher.
- ★ The Pyramids are one of Egypt's **most** famous landmarks.



بعد الاعداد الترتيبية (first - second - third - last etc.)

- ★ Alexandria is **the second largest** city in Egypt.
- ★ This is his **second most** successful film.



لاحظ استخدام **most** بدون **the** قبل الصفة او الحال وتكون بمعنى **very**

- ★ She is **most** grateful for your support.
- ★ The weather today is **most** pleasant.

⚠ لاحظ عدم استخدام **than** مع صفات المقارنة (**er / more**) في الحالات التالية:



عدم وجود الطرف الثاني بعد صفة المقارنة

- ★ Ali is tall but Ahmed is **taller**.
- ★ Jana is beautiful but Toka is **more beautiful**.



في المقارنة الضمنية التي يكون فيها الطرف الثاني معلوم لدى المستمع

- ★ I want a **faster** car.
- ★ He needs a **more expensive** flat.



مع **get** بمعنى يزداد لبيان تغير حالة الصفة عن الماضي

- ★ Ahmed is getting **smarter**.
- ★ Toka is getting **more intelligent**.



يمكن تكرار نفس صفة المقارنة لتقوية معنى الصفة

- ★ It's getting **colder and colder**.
- ★ He found walking **more and more difficult**.

⚠ لاحظ استخدام الضمائر بعد **as / than**



ضمير مفعول في حالة عدم وجود فعل



وضمير فاعل في حالة وجود فعل

- ★ I'm not as tall **as him**.
- ★ I'm not as tall **as he is**.
- ★ The other teams played better **than us**.
- ★ The other teams played better **than we did**.



مع كلمة **which- who** في حالة السؤال و التخيير

- ★ Which is **taller**, Ali or Ahmed?
- ★ Which is more **comfortable**, the plane or the train?

٩ لا يمكن استخدام **more** قبل الصفة القصيرة ولكن يمكن استخدام **less** قبل الصفة القصيرة علي ان تبقي الصفة كما هي بدون إضافات:

- ★ Ali is **happier than** Adel. = Adel is **less happy than** Ali. ✓
- Adel is **less happier than** Ali. X Ali is **more happier than** Adel. X
- Ali is **more happy than** Adel. X

لاحظ يمكن استخدام **more** مع صفة سواء كانت قصيرة أو طويلة عند مقارنة صفتين لنفس الشيء أو الشخص.

- ★ He is **more lazy than** stupid.
- ★ The mountain is **more big than** high.

١٠ استعمال الصفات مع **ever**:

I have ever + p.p. + اسم + صفة تفضيل + is the + اسم / ضمير

- ★ Toka is **the cleverest** girl I have **ever** seen.
- ★ Jana is **the most** beautiful girl I have **ever** met.

١١ استعمال الصفات مع **never**:

I have never + p.p. + اسم + حالة مقارنة + a/an + اسم + than اسم

- ★ I have never met a **more** beautiful girl **than** Jana.
- ★ I have never met a girl **as** beautiful **as** Jana.

١٢ استعمال الصفات مع **no**:

- ★ Mai is **the most** beautiful girl in our family. (No girl)
- ⇒ No girl in our family is **more beautiful than** Mai.
- ★ No man in our village is **as reliable as** Ahmed. (Ahmed ...)
- ⇒ Ahmed is **the most reliable** man in our village.

١٣ استعمال الصفات مع **so - such - too - enough**

so صفة **that** جملة

such a / an صفة + اسم مفرد **that** جملة

too صفة **to + inf.**

enough to + inf. صفة

- ★ He is **so strong that** he can lift this bag.
- ★ He is **strong enough** to lift this bag.
- ★ He is **such a strong man**.
- ★ He is **too weak** to lift this bag.

١٤ لاحظ استخدام (**older / oldest**) مع الأشخاص والأشياء ولكن نستخدم (**elder / eldest**) عند المقارنة داخل نطاق الأسرة:

elder
older

+

Noun
than

/

Than داخل الأسرة لا تتبع ب **the eldest + noun**

→ أكبر من
الأكبر

- ★ He is my **elder** brother.
- ★ Toka is **older than** Mai.

١٥ نستخدم (**farther**) عند مقارنة المسافات ولكن نستخدم (**further**) بمعنى أكثر من ذلك أو إضافي:

- ★ Aswan is **farther than** Beni Suef.
- ★ Have you anything **further** to add?

١٦ لاحظ حرف الجر المستخدم مع (**farthest from**) وحرف الجر مع (**nearest to**)

- ★ She lived the **farthest** away **from** school of all of us.
- ★ He was the **nearest** thing **to** a father she had ever had.



Exercise 04 Language Level I

SB - R2

1. My brother is taller than me.
a. many b. much c. such d. more
المنيا ٢٠٢٥
2. Huda is fatter than her sister.
a. little b. less c. a bit d. more
الجيزة ٢٠٢٢
3. Dina's dress is more beautiful than Aya's.
a. far b. farther c. lot d. very
شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٤
4. English is easier to learn than Chinese.
a. more b. most c. much more d. much
شرق طنطا ٢٠٢٥
5. My wife is younger than me.
a. a little b. less c. more d. few
فاقوس ٢٠٢٥
6. Your house is wide, but mine is
a. wider than b. much wider c. more wider d. much wide
القوصية ٢٠٢٥
7. These cakes are than these ones.
a. a few cheaper b. a cheaper c. little cheaper d. the least cheaper
ناصر ٢٠٢٥
8. Cairo is Egypt's city.
a. big b. bigger c. the biggest d. biggest
بيني مزار ٢٠٢٤
9. Computers today are than they were 10 years ago.
a. very smarter b. much smarter c. more smart d. so smarter
البحيرة ٢٠٢٢ الشهيد ٢٠٢٢ اسيوط منقلاوط ٢٠٢٥
10. The tree is than the building over there.
a. more taller b. very tall c. a bit taller d. the tallest
اهاناسيا ٢٠٢٤ الاقصر ٢٠٢٤
11. The hotel on the beach will be made much next year.
a. large b. largest c. as large d. larger
قويسنا ٢٠٢٥
12. Travelling by plane is expensive than travelling by train.
a. many more b. much more c. much d. a lot
best
13. Who is the of the two runners.
a. more faster b. much fast c. faster d. fastest
not better
14. He was our school's teacher.
a. better b. well c. the best d. best
whiter
15. This book is brilliant; it is than the last book he wrote!
a. slightly worse b. far better c. almost better d. not better
best
16. My detergent washes much than that.
a. white b. more whiter c. most white d. whiter
best
17. You have to do your in the next exam.
a. the best b. mostly c. the most d. best
LM
18. Gold is than copper.
a. as expensive b. a lot expensive c. much more expensive d. most expensive
LM
19. The boy of the twins is my best friend.
a. fast b. fastest c. faster d. fasting
LM
20. The Pyramids are one of Egypt's landmarks.
a. the most famous as b. less famous c. the most famous d. most famous
LM
21. This is his second successful film.
a. more b. most c. the most d. the least
LM
22. I like to travel light. The luggage I have, the better is.
a. little b. fewer c. less d. least
LM

23. Of my legs, the right is

- a. the strongest b. the stronger c. a strong d. as strong as

الواسطي ٢٠٢٤

24. you study, the higher marks you get.

- a. The harder b. The more hardly c. The hardest d. The most hardly

بني مزار ٢٠٢٥ الأقصر ٢٠٢٥

25. The more you practice your English, the you will speak.

- a. good b. better c. worst d. best

المحمودية ٢٠٢٣ بيا ٢٠٢٤



Exercise on Language Level 2

26. The less you pay attention to your teacher, you make mistakes.

- a. least b. the most c. the more d. the less

الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤

27. What is galaxy from the sun?

- a. the nearest b. the farthest c. farthest d. nearest

ديروط ٢٠٢٥ LM

28. mistakes you make, the better your score will be.

- a. The more b. The fewer c. The less d. The most

ناصر ٢٠٢٥

29. The more you study, mistakes you make.

- a. the more b. the most c. the fewer d. the least

السنبطة ٢٠٢٥

30. Laptops are getting popular.

- a. more and more b. more and less c. much and more d. less and more

القليوبية ٢٠٢٣ غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٤

31. The more healthy food you eat, the diseases you catch.

- a. less b. more c. fewer d. least

الساحل ٢٠٢٥

32. She is less than her sister.

- a. taller b. tallest c. tall d. shortest

غرب كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٣ القاهرة ٢٠٢٥

33. The healthier your eating habits are, the you will be.

- a. least fit b. fittest c. fatter d. fitter

جرجا ٢٠٢٤

34. Menna is 65 kg and Jana is 72, so Menna is than Jana.

- a. heavier b. more heavy c. less heavier d. less heavy

الفيوم ٢٠٢٥

35. He writes English better than

- a. me b. I c. me do d. mine

الشرقية أبو حماد ٢٠٢٥

36. For details, you can contact the principal.

- a. farther b. further c. furthest d. far

الشرقية / نقادة ٢٠٢٣

37. Mrs Azza is tall, but Mrs Fareeda is

- a. less tall b. more tall c. more taller d. less taller

شرق المحلة ٢٠٢٣

38. The faster you drive, the it is.

- a. dangerous b. more dangerous c. most dangerous d. least dangerous

LM

39. Which is in the summer: Cairo or Alexandria?

- a. hotter than b. as hot c. hottest d. hotter

LM

40. I think English is than the Chinese language.

- a. least easy b. less easier c. more easy d. less easy

غرب شبرا ٢٠٢٤ / كفر شكر ٢٠٢٤

41. He agreed without much argument.

- a. further b. farther c. farthest d. furthest

فاقوس ٢٠٢٥

42. I have books than our friends.

- a. much b. few c. fewer d. little

43. Of all my roommates I like Nada

- a. good b. well c. best d. better

44. I love all my family, but I love my father of all.

- a. more b. much c. the most d. most

45. That's the biggest building I've
 a. never seen b. ever saw c. ever seen d. never saw
46. He bought car.
 a. fastest b. fast c. a faster d. faster
47. She read as as she could.
 a. much b. many c. more d. less
48. I have time than he does.
 a. bigger b. least c. most d. less
49. This pullover is too big. I want a one.
 a. most small b. more small c. smaller d. smallest
50. My father treats us in way.
 a. friend b. a friendly c. friendly d. a friend
51. Toka is interested in cartoons.
 a. few b. many c. the most d. most
52. His flat is as expensive as
 a. me b. I am c. mine d. a & b
53. Mai is smarter than
 a. me b. I am c. mine d. a & b



Exercise 04 Language Level 3

54. My house is than yours. Yours is spacious. ٢٠٢٥ انناسيا الجيرة
 a. more big b. less big c. the biggest d. bigger
55. Of all the band, this singer sings ٢٠٢٥ المنشاء
 a. more beautiful b. the most beautifully c. more beautifully d. the most beautiful
56. Tomorrow, I will be We can meet then. ٢٠٢٤ كفر الشيخ
 a. busy b. busier c. less busier d. less busy
57. My brother ran faster than ٢٠٢٤ المنيا
 a. I did b. I am c. I was d. I do
58. Camels store water than any other animal. ٢٠٢٤ أسبوط أبو تيج
 a. much 3 times more b. more 3 times much c. 3 times much more d. 3 times more much
59. Of all the candidates, she handled the pressure
 a. most effectively b. more effectively c. as effective d. the more effective
60. The expensive mobile is suitable for me because I don't have a lot of money.
 a. more b. as c. most d. less
61. Which sentence uses the correct comparative form of "far"? ٢٠٢٥ أسبوط
 a. This place is further than the other one. b. This place is farther than the other one.
 c. This place is more far than the other one. d. Both A and C

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

- The city is noisier than the village. (less)
- This smartphone is the most advanced device on the market. (none ... as ... as)
- Our team is stronger than the rival team. (slightly weaker)
- The 2020 storm was one of the most destructive in history. (much less destructive)
- Solar energy is cleaner than fossil fuels. (much less clean)
- My house is bigger than my friend's house. (slightly smaller)
- The 2011 earthquake was one of the most powerful disasters in history. (much less powerful)

لاحظ ما يأتي بعد

each - every - either - neither + فعل مفرد + اسم جمع

each - either - neither + of + فعل مفرد + اسم جمع

★ Every student here is clever. Each of the students is clever.

★ Either book has useful information. Either of my students gets the full mark.

1. Each of my hands..... an injury.

a. has

b. were

c. is

d. are

2. Each of the a lot of time.

a. men is

b. man has

c. man have

d. men has

3. my two brothers likes running.

a. Every of

b. Neither of

c. Each

d. Either



recommnd , suggest & advise لاحظ ما يأتي بعد

recommnd +

فعل + ing

فاعل + Inf.

→

يوصي / يشرح

فاعل + should + Inf.

be + recommended + to + المصدر

→

في المجهول

★ I recommended that Ali (should) visit Alex.

★ Ali was recommended to visit Alex.

suggest +

فعل + ing

مصدر + فاعل

→

يوصي / يشرح

مصدر + should + فاعل

be + suggested + to + المصدر

→

في المجهول

★ I suggest visiting Alex.

★ I suggest that Ali (should) visit Alex.

advise +

فعل + ing

مصدر + to + فاعل

→

ينصح

be + advised + to + المصدر

→

في المجهول

4. Experts recommend food production to face the increasing population.

a. to double

b. double

c. doubling

d. doubled

5. Experts recommend us food production to face the increasing population.

a. to double

b. double

c. doubling

d. doubled

6. My friend recommended that I quickly for the next exam.

a. revise

b. revising

c. should revise

d. a & c

7. He suggested that she a study plan for this year.

a. do

b. making

c. doing

d. make

8. The doctor advised the medicine regularly.

a. take

b. taking

c. to take

d. took

كتابة التقرير الرسمي

Formal Report Writing



Definition of Formal Report

- ★ A formal report is a serious written document that gives information about a topic and usually includes advice or suggestions.

التقرير الرسمي هو وثيقة جادة مكتوبة تقدم معلومات عن موضوع معين، وعادة ما تتضمن نصائح أو مقترحات



Structure of a Formal Report

Title	► Clearly states the subject of the report العنوان: يوضح بوضوح موضوع التقرير
To/From	► Basic information about the sender/receiver الى / من: يوضح المرسل والمستقبل
Date	► Shows when the report was written التاريخ: يوضح وقت كتابة التقرير
Introduction	► Briefly explains the purpose of the report المقدمة: تشرح بإيجاز هدف التقرير
Findings	► Presents facts, problems, or observations النتائج: تعرض الحقائق أو المشكلات أو الملاحظات
Recommendations	► Offers advice or suggestions based on findings التوصيات: تقدم مقترحات أو حلول مبنية على النتائج
Conclusion	► Summarizes the key points and final thoughts الخاتمة: تلخص النقاط الأساسية والانطباعات النهائية
Signature / Submitted by	► Name and role of the writer التوقيع / المرسل: اسم ودور كاتب التقرير



Key Features of a Formal Report

Clear Title	► States the topic clearly عنوان واضح
Formal Language	► Avoids contractions (don't → do not) لغة رسمية بدون اختصارات
Neutral & Polite Tone	► Not casual or emotional أسلوب محايد ومهذب
Organized Structure	► Uses headings and bullet points هيكل منظم بالعناوين والنقاط
Evidence-based Findings	► Presents facts not opinions نتائج مبنية على حقائق
Recommendations	► Gives practical advice يقدم نصائح عملية
Conclusion	► Summarizes key ideas خاتمة تلخص الأفكار

Useful Phrases a Formal Report

Introduction	This report examines...	هذا التقرير يفحص...
	▶ The purpose of this report is to...	الغرض من هذا التقرير هو...
	▶ Furthermore,	علاوة على ذلك.
Main Body	▶ In addition,	بالإضافة إلى ذلك.
	▶ However,	ومع ذلك.
	▶ As a result,	ونتيجة لذلك.
Recommendations	▶ It is recommended that...	يوصى بأن...
	▶ The report suggests that...	يقترح التقرير أن...
Conclusion	▶ In conclusion,	في الختام.
	▶ To summarize,	للمتلخيص.

A model for a Formal Report

Title	▶ How Ready Are Families for Emergencies?
To (Recipient)	▶ The Local Government Office
From (Writer)	▶ Yara Hassan, Safety Volunteer Team
Date	▶ April 5, 2025
Subject	▶ Emergency Preparedness in your city
Introduction	▶ This report is about how ready families in our city are for emergencies like floods or storms. In recent years, bad weather has caused problems in the city. This report looks at what families know and what they can do better. ▶ Many families do not have emergency plans. ▶ Most homes do not have an 'emergency kit' (with water, food, flashlight, medicine). ▶ People should have stored four liters of water per person for at least three days.
Findings	▶ Many could have avoided problems if they had prepared earlier. ▶ Important papers (like IDs) are often not safe. They might have been damaged in floods. ▶ Families did not choose a contact person in another city. This is important because local phone lines often stop working. ▶ Not enough information for families. ▶ Schools do not teach emergency safety. ▶ People think disasters will not happen to them.
Problems Identified	1. Start a city campaign to teach families how to prepare. 2. Give free emergency bags with water, flashlight, and first aid. 3. Schools should talk about safety and practice what to do. 4. Families should have written down phone numbers-not only saved on phones.
Recommendations	▶ Families need to be better prepared. With simple steps, many problems could have been avoided. The government and communities must work together to keep people safe.
Conclusion	
Submitted by	▶ Yara Hassan, Safety Volunteer Team



Exercise 04

Writing



1. A formal report should begin with a clear that tells the reader the topic.
a. story b. title c. joke d. email
2. In a formal report, you should write "do not" instead of "don't" because formal writing avoids
a. headings b. contractions c. paragraphs d. punctuation
3. The section that explains the purpose of the report is called the
a. conclusion b. greeting c. findings d. introduction
4. A formal report uses a tone, not casual or emotional language.
a. funny b. neutral and polite c. angry d. poetic
5. A strong introduction should include a hook, background, and
a. secret b. joke c. song d. thesis statement
6. Using bullet points and headings helps to make the report to read.
a. harder b. more organized c. longer d. more colorful
7. A formal report must avoid language, which is too personal or emotional.
a. neutral b. formal c. casual d. polite
8. Which phrase is most appropriate for making a recommendation in a formal report?
a. I think we should... b. Maybe we can...
c. It is recommended that... d. Let's try...
9. The part of the report that presents facts and observations is called the
a. title b. findings c. story d. opinion
10. In the conclusion, you should restate your opinion and give a
a. future prediction b. random guess c. movie title d. phone number
11. The section that explains the purpose of the report is called the
a. findings b. greeting c. conclusion d. introduction
12. The section that gives advice or suggestions based on findings is called
a. introduction b. recommendations c. conclusion d. greeting
13. The purpose of the "Conclusion" in a report is to
a. tell jokes b. give final thoughts
c. introduce the writer d. explain problems only
14. In formal reports, dates, names, and sender/receiver information are usually written in the section.
a. findings b. title c. to/from d. recommendations
15. Why should headings and bullet points be used in a report?
a. To decorate the text b. To make reading easier
c. To shorten the report d. To confuse the reader
16. The word "Furthermore," is used to information.
a. contrast b. add c. summarize d. conclude
17. Which of the following is NOT a feature of a formal report?
a. formal language b. clear structure c. contractions d. recommendations
18. The section that briefly explains the purpose of the report is called the
a. introduction b. findings c. story d. heading
19. Which feature makes a formal report different from a story or essay?
a. use of humor b. formal structure and language
c. creative plot d. first-person narration
20. A formal report usually starts with a that states the subject clearly.
a. joke b. title c. paragraph d. conclusion

21. Which of these would NOT be suitable in a formal report?

- a. polite tone b. contractions c. neutral language d. organized structure

22. A report about safety in schools should avoid using language.

- a. casual b. formal c. polite d. neutral

23. Recommendations in a report are based on

- a. the writer's imagination b. findings and evidence
c. random guesses d. personal jokes

24. In the "Findings" section, the writer should mainly present

- a. facts and observations b. final advice c. greetings d. jokes



Exercise on

Translation

1. No doubt that tourism in Egypt is a chief source of national income and hard currency. So, the government exerts strenuous efforts to develop the tourist industry. المضيء ٢٠٢٤

أ- لا شك أن السياحة في مصر هي مصدر رئيسي للدخل القومي والعملية الصعبة، لذا تبذل الحكومة جهوداً متواصلة لتطوير صناعة السياحة.

ب- لا شك أن السياحة في مصر هي مصدر رئيسي للدخل القومي والعملية الصعبة، لذا تبذل الحكومة جهوداً مضيئة لتطوير النشاط السياحة.

ج- مما لا شك فيه أن السياحة هي مصدر رئيسي للدخل القومي والعملية الصعبة لمصر، لذا تقوم الحكومة بأنشطة متواصلة لتطوير الصناعة السياحية.

د- مما لا شك فيه أن السياحة في مصر مصدر هام للدخل القومي والعملية الأجنبية، لذا الحكومة تقوم جهود ذاتية من أجل النشاط السياحة.

2. Although inventions and discoveries have made life easier for us, they have done damage to the environment as well as living beings. ديروضة ٢٠٢٤

أ- على الرغم من أن الاختراعات والاكتشافات جعلت الحياة أسهل لنا فإنها أحدثت ضرراً للبيئة وأيضاً الكائنات الحية.

ب- على الرغم من أن الاختراعات والاكتشافات تجعل الحياة سهلة لنا فإنها تحدث أذى للبيئة وأيضاً الكائنات الحية.

ج- على الرغم من أن المخترعون والمكتشفون جعلوا الحياة أسهل لنا فإنها أحدثوا ضرراً للبيئة وأيضاً الكائنات الحية.

د- على الرغم من أن الاختراعات والاكتشافات قد تجعل الحياة سهلة لنا فإنها قد تحدث ضرراً للبيئة وأيضاً الكائنات الحية.

3. We have to rationalize consumption and stand up to greedy merchants who monopolize goods. Thus, we can reduce the burdens of living and support the government in its development projects. بلقاس ٢٠٢٤

أ- علينا أن نرشد الاستهلاك وأن نقف مع التجار الجشعين الذين يحتكرون البضائع وهذا يمكننا من تقليل أعباء الحياة ودعم الحكومة في مشروعات التطوير.

ب- علينا أن نضعف الاستهلاك وأن نتصدى للتجار الجشعين الذين يحتكرون البضائع وهذا يمكننا من تقليل أعباء المعيشة ودعم الحكومة في مشروعات التنمية.

ج- علينا أن نرشد الاستهلاك وأن نتصدى للتجار الجشعين الذين يحتكرون البضائع وهذا يمكننا من تقليل أعباء المعيشة ودعم الحكومة في مشروعات التنمية.

د- علينا أن نزيد الإنتاج وأن نتصدى للتجار الجشعين الذين يحتكرون البضائع وهذا يمكننا من تقليل أعباء المعيشة ودعم الحكومة في مشروعات التنمية.

٤. إن الذكاء الاصطناعي قدرة نظام أو برنامج على التفكير والتعلم من التجربة ولقد وجدت تطبيقاته في كل مجالات حياتنا تقريباً. بلقاس ٢٠٢٤

a. Artificial intelligence is the ability of a system or a program to think and learn from the experience. Its applications has been found in almost all fields of life.

b. Artificial intelligence is the ability of a system or a program to think and teach from the experience. Its applications have been found in almost all fields of life.

c. Artificial intelligence is the ability of a system or a program to think and learn from the experience. Its applications have been found in almost all fields of life.

d. Artificial intelligence is the ability of a system or a program to think and learn from the experience. Its applications have been found in several fields of life.

ديروط: ٢٠٢٤

٥. إن علاقات مصر القوية مع جميع دول العالم تعزز دورها في حل المشاكل ونشر السلم.

- Egypt's strong tie with all countries of the world enhances its role in solving problems and promoting peace.
- Egypt's strong ties with all countries of the world enhance its role in solving problems and promoting peace.
- Egypt's strong ties with all countries of the world enhance its role in solving problems and promoting peace.
- Egypt's strong ties with all countries of the world enhance its role in solving problems and disporting peace.



Exercise 04

Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

One of the main causes of the earth's troubles is that the world is overpopulated and this overpopulation is growing at an ever-increasing rate. At the same time, the earth is unable to provide enough food since the fertility of some of our richest soils has been lost and vast areas that were once fertile lands have turned into barren deserts. And the trouble with deserts is that they tend to creep outwards on to the fertile soils.

The environment is everything that surrounds us: plants, animals, buildings, country, air and water. Ecology is the science of how living creatures and plants exist together and depend on each other and on the local environment. Where an environment is undisturbed, the ecology of an area is in balance, but if a creature is exterminated or an alien species introduced, then the ecology of the district will be upset. In other words, the balance of nature will be disturbed.

Man is a part of the environment and he has done more to upset the ecology during his short span on earth than any other living creature. He has done this by his ignorance, his greed, his thoughtless, his foolishness and his wastefulness. Since man has done so much damage, it is up to him to try to put matters right. If it is not already too late. If there is to be any remedy for our ills, that remedy ultimately lies in the hands of the young generations, and the sooner they start doing something about it, the better.

- The word "fertile" is antonymous to the word
 - fruitful
 - rich
 - barren
 - productive
- World population is threatened with starvation because
 - the deserts creep inwards on to the fertile areas
 - overpopulation is increasing and the rich soil is rising
 - vast areas of our fertile lands have turned into barren deserts
 - all our natural resources have run out with no hope of replacing them
- Ecology is a science which studies
 - plants and farming
 - man's social activities
 - the habitats of animals
 - living creatures and the environment
- What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?
 - The young
 - The deserts
 - The soils
 - Different creatures
- The writer of the passage said that man disturbed the environmental balance through
 - his moral values
 - his bad qualities
 - his culture
 - his good behaviour
- The more fertile the soil is, the
 - less food we have
 - more food we have
 - fewer people live on earth
 - more barren deserts there are
- The most suitable title for the passage is
 - Ecology in balance or upset
 - Overpopulation and the earth's troubles
 - It's too late to balance the ecology
 - Man's greed is the cause of upsetting the ecology
- What made man upset the ecology?
 - His greed.
 - His thoughtless, foolishness and wastefulness.
 - His ignorance.
 - All of the above.



General Exercises

on

Unit

4



Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the (2) correct answers out of the (5) options given:

- The engineer measured the components with extreme accuracy to ensure a perfect fit. The synonym of "accuracy" is
a. Fragment b. Correctness c. Error d. Mistake e. Precision
- Artificial intelligence is man-made, not natural. The antonym of "natural" is
a. Genuine b. Fake c. Real d. Artificial e. Normal

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Modern medical devices can perform surgeries with a level of that humans alone cannot achieve.
a. prediction b. preparedness c. accuracy d. evacuation
- The government planned mass after the floods that destroyed many houses.
a. predictions b. drills c. roles d. evacuations
- Athletes train with high to improve their performance in competitions.
a. humidity b. intensity c. kit d. evacuation
- Lack of made the community suffer greatly during the flood.
a. evacuation b. warning c. intensity d. preparedness
- Aid organizations usually send supplies to disaster areas because they can be transported safely without spoiling.
a. predictable b. perishable c. non-perishable d. accurate
- The soldiers carried enough with them to survive in the desert for several weeks.
a. roles b. drills c. supplies d. kits
- You should avoid dealing with these boys. Better alone in bad company. LM
a. less b. as c. than d. then
- Mr. Ali is teacher I've ever seen. He teaches us in an easy way. الغريبة ٢٠٢٣
a. more skillful b. the most skillful c. the least skillful d. the more skillful
- I will try to improve my fluency in English. LM
a. my hard b. my hardest c. hardest d. hardly
- you practise something, the weaker you are at it. بسيون ٢٠٢٤
a. The more b. The most c. The less d. The least
- The word "However," is used to show
a. contrast b. addition c. similarity d. summary
- The phrase "To summarize," is used in the section of a report.
a. introduction b. conclusion c. findings d. recommendations



Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The application of spreading theories of economics has so far failed to lift developing countries out of the cycle of poverty that has effects on the majority of their inhabitants. Worldwide, there are still an estimated 1.3 billion people earning a dollar or less a day and living in extreme poverty. Decades of huge loans by banks from affluent nations-at interest rates that cripple developing economies do not appear to be providing a solution to poverty. Professor Muhammad Yunus' Grameen Bank, however, is taking a different approach to the problem.

In 1976, the Bangladeshi economics professor started a microcredit programme with a loan of just 62 cents (U.S) each to a group of 42 workers. Instead of loaning large amounts of money to well-off debtors, the bank he started made extremely small loans to poor Bangladeshis who were considered a bad risk by the traditional banking system.

He astounded his critics by proving that the poor were more likely to repay their debts than the wealthy. Virtually none of the thousands of women who have been financially assisted by the bank for over 20 years have defaulted on their payments. Yet all are expected

to pay interest and stick to the rules of contract. These borrowings have enabled Bangladeshi women to set up numerous small-scale projects which directly benefit their families and the communities where they live. The success of the experiment has brought about a revolution in the antipoverty programmes.

- The best title for the passage is
 a. A common problem with a new solution b. A new problem with common solution
 c. A new way of begging money d. the developing countries' loans
- We can infer from the passage that the word "**astounded**" means
 a. astonished b. provided c. admitted d. improved
- The last lines of the passage represents
 a. the success of the experience b. the failure of the experience
 c. the increase of poverty d. the decrease of interests
- At the beginning of his experiment, professor Muhammad Yunus was
 a. supported b. criticised c. suspected d. appreciated
- Professor Muhammad Yunus' Grameen bank way to treat poverty was
 a. unique b. common c. unreliable d. dishonest
- Do theories of economic manage to overc ome the poverty in the world? Why?
 a. Yes, as many people live happily and comfortably.
 b. Yes, as there are few developing countries.
 c. No, as there are loans need to be paid by many developed countries.
 d. No, because most developing countries' people suffer from poverty.
- What did Muhammad Yunus do to face poverty in Bangladesh?
 a. He borrowed from the rich b. He lent the young people
 c. He lent the poor people d. He borrowed from Bangladeshi Banks
- What do you think of Mohammed Yunus?
 a. Genius b. Greedy c. Selfish d. Helpless



Writing

A: Translate the following into Arabic.

المتطوعون لا يعملون من أجل المال ولكن من أجل رؤية الابتسامة على وجه شخص مريض أو فقير.

- Voluntary do not work for money, but to see the smile on the face of a sick or poor person.
- Volunteers do not work with money, but to see the smile on the face of a sick or poor person.
- Volunteers do not work for money, but to seeing the smile on the face of a sick or poor person.
- Volunteers do not work for money, but to see the smile on the face of a sick or poor person.

B: Translate the following into English.

The rapid population growth is a major problem that hinders the development projects implemented by the government.

- يعتبر التلوث السريع مشكلة كبيرة تعيق المشاريع التنموية التي تنفذها الحكومة.
- يعتبر النمو السكاني السريع مشكلة كبيرة تعيق المشاريع الصناعية التي تنفذها الحكومة.
- يعتبر النمو السكاني السريع مشكلة كبيرة تعيق المشاريع التنموية التي تنفذها الحكومة.
- يعتبر النمو السكاني السريع مشكلة كبيرة تعيق المشاريع التنموية التي تشرف عليها الحكومة.

Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

- The new library is quieter than the old one. (**much louder**)
- My new car is faster than my old one. (**slightly slower**)

Answer the following questions :

- What challenge did Fogg face when traveling through Egypt?
- Why did Fix try to be friendly with Passepartout?
- Do you think Fix will succeed in stopping Fogg? Why or why not?

Write a formal report of about 180 words on the following topic:

How climate change affects natural disaster frequency



1) Complete the following dialogue:

أزهر الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢

- Father** You look sad ①
- Son** My friend Adel fell down and injured his arm.
- Father** ②
- Son** I did nothing.
- Father** You should learn how to perform First Aid.
- Son** ③
- Father** To help anyone ill or injured.
- Son** ④
- Father** You should join First Aid courses at school.

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

أزهر الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

One day, I was waiting for a friend in town when I saw too many people. One was waiting on the pavement wearing old clothes and had a hat in front of him. As people passed he said "Can you give me money, please?" Some people threw coins into his hat but most walked past. The other man, who was wearing a suit stopped people and asked them politely to lend him money to buy petrol for his car. Most people happily gave him coins or notes. During the ten minutes I was watching him, he collected a lot of money, and he put it all in his pocket but didn't go to buy petrol, I soon realized that both men just wanted money. The one in the old clothes needed money than the one in the suit but the one in the suit got more money. Isn't that strange?

Answer the following questions:

- What was the writer doing in the town?
- How did the two men look different?
- What does the underlined word "him" refer to?

Choose the correct answer:

- Why was the man's hat in front of him?
 - It had fallen off his head.
 - It was there on the pavement before he sat.
 - He put it for people to throw money in it.
 - He had taken it off because it was a hot day.
- Why didn't the man in the suit go to buy petrol?
 - There was already petrol in his Car.
 - He was going to buy petrol later.
 - He didn't have a car.
 - He had lied about why he needed money.

أزهر دمياط ٢٠٢٢

3. Translate into Arabic:

Travelling abroad helps us to see many countries of the world and get in touch with the peoples of other nations and know about their customs and traditions.

Translate into English: (1 Mark)

تهدف السياحة البيئية إلى توفير رحلات لأماكن معزولة ومعرضة للخطر.



Unit 5 Media Manipulation

Learning Outcomes

Reading

identify the main idea and supporting details of a text about the "Anatomy of Fake News".
distinguish between reliable and unreliable sources by checking for author credentials, publication dates, and tone.

Listening

distinguish between sensational and honest headlines, identify main points and opposing viewpoints on content moderation.

Speaking

evaluate the readability of different news sources, engage in a simulated radio debate; participate in a role-play activity, presenting ideas and arguing points persuasively.

Writing

structure an opinion essay with an introduction, body paragraphs, and a conclusion. Support opinion using evidence and persuasive language.

Language

Correctly use Tag questions in different settings.



Unit 5

Media Manipulation



Lessons

1 The Anatomy of Fake News

2 Radio Debate

Key Vocabulary

sensational ^(adj)	مثير / صادم	distinguish ^(v)	يميز / يفرق	misinformation ⁽ⁿ⁾	معلومات خاطئة / مضللة
algorithms ⁽ⁿ⁾	خوارزميات	anatomy ⁽ⁿ⁾	تشريح / تحليل مكونات	reliability ⁽ⁿ⁾	موثوقية
trigger ^(n/v)	يطلق / يسبب / يحفز	regulation ⁽ⁿ⁾	تنظيم / قاعدة / قانون	misprint ⁽ⁿ⁾	خطأ مطبعي
debate ⁽ⁿ⁾	نقاش / جدال	removal ⁽ⁿ⁾	إزالة	restriction ⁽ⁿ⁾	قيود / تقييد
verify ^(v)	يتحقق / يثبت	deception ⁽ⁿ⁾	خداع / غش	transparency ⁽ⁿ⁾	شفافية
censorship ⁽ⁿ⁾	رقابة	regulate ^(v)	ينظم / يتحكم	literacy ⁽ⁿ⁾	معرفة القراءة والكتابة
free speech ⁽ⁿ⁾	حرية التعبير	verifiably ^(adv)	بشكل قابل للتحقق	mandatory	الزامي / واجب
self-regulation ⁽ⁿ⁾	تنظيم ذاتي	consensus ⁽ⁿ⁾	إجماع / توافق	fake ^(adj)	مزيف / كاذب
echo chambers ⁽ⁿ⁾	غرف صدى / بيئات مغلقة للأفكار	article ⁽ⁿ⁾	مقال / أداة	media manipulation	التلاعب الإعلامي
		journalism ⁽ⁿ⁾	صحافة		

Main Vocabulary

spread ^(v)	ينشر / ينتشر	claim ^(n/v)	يزعم / ادعاء	characteristics ⁽ⁿ⁾	خصائص / سمات
wildfire ⁽ⁿ⁾	حريق هائل / نار تنتشر بسرعة	practical ^(adj)	عملي	sign ⁽ⁿ⁾	أشارة / علامة
sources ⁽ⁿ⁾	مصادر	consumers ⁽ⁿ⁾	مستهلكون	rate ⁽ⁿ⁾	معدل / نسبة
reliable ^(adj)	موثوق	editor ⁽ⁿ⁾	محرر	sensor ⁽ⁿ⁾	حساس / مستشعر
ordinary ^(adj)	عادي / مألوف	set ⁽ⁿ⁾	مجموعة / يضع / يضبط	professional ^(adj)	مهني / احترافي
impression ⁽ⁿ⁾	انطباع	remove ^(v)	يزيل	emotional ^(adj)	عاطفي
flag ^(n/v)	علم / يحدد / يضع علامة	threaten ^(v)	يهدد	reasoning ⁽ⁿ⁾	استدلال / تفكير منطقي
headlines ⁽ⁿ⁾	عناوين رئيسية	oversee ^(v)	يشرف على	questionable ^(adj)	مشكوك فيه
emotions ⁽ⁿ⁾	مشاعر	excitement ⁽ⁿ⁾	إثارة / حماس	solution ⁽ⁿ⁾	حل
strict ^(adj)	صارم	interest ⁽ⁿ⁾	اهتمام	author ⁽ⁿ⁾	مؤلف
guidelines ⁽ⁿ⁾	إرشادات / توجيهات	error ⁽ⁿ⁾	خطأ	act ^(n/v)	فعل / يتصرف
cite ^(v)	يقتبس / يستشهد	official ^(adj)	رسمي	accurate ^(adj)	دقيق
multiple ^(adj)	متعدد	require ^(v)	يتطلب	limit ^(n/v)	حد / يحدد
publication ⁽ⁿ⁾	منشور / إصدار	separate ^(adj/v)	منفصل / يفصل	quality ⁽ⁿ⁾	جودة
evidence ⁽ⁿ⁾	دليل	unique ^(adj)	فريد / مميز	suspicious ^(adj)	مريب
microchips ⁽ⁿ⁾	رقائق الكترونية	argument ⁽ⁿ⁾	خجة / جدال	authority ⁽ⁿ⁾	سلطة / جهة مختصة
highlight ^(v)	يبرز / يسلط الضوء	convince ^(v)	يقنع	automatically ^(adv)	تلقائياً
advocate ^(v)	يدافع عن / يؤيد	sincere ^(adj)	صادق / مخلص	fact checker ⁽ⁿ⁾	مدقق حقائق
compulsory ^(adj)	إجباري	silenced ^(adj)	مُسكت / أخرس	ban ^(v)	يحظر / حظر
trustworthy ^(adj)	جدير بالثقة	appealing ^(adj)	جذاب / ملفت	quote ⁽ⁿ⁾	اقتباس
long-term ^(adj)	طويل الأمد	shock ⁽ⁿ⁾	صدمة	vaccine ⁽ⁿ⁾	لقاح
unsupported ^(adj)	غير مدعوم	content ^(n/adj)	محتوى / راضي	harm ^(n/v)	ضرر / يضر

Collocations

cite their information	يستشهدون بمعلوماتهم	offer advice	يقدم نصيحة
provide publication dates	يقدم تواريخ النشر	make worse	يزيد الأمر سوءاً
spread faster	ينتشر أسرع	make claims	يقدم ادعاءات
share articles	يشارك مقالات	make choices	يتخذ اختيارات
remove spam	يزيل الرسائل المزعجة	make mistakes	يرتكب أخطاء
spread faster than wildfire	ينتشر أسرع من النار في الهشيم	reflect programmer bias	يعكس تحيز المبرمج
flag suspicious content	يحدد محتوى مشبوه	follow guidelines	يتبع الإرشادات

Expressions & Prepositions

expert (on -in -at)	خبير في	media regulation expert	خبير في تنظيم الإعلام
social media platforms	منصات التواصل الاجتماعي	misleading phrases	عبارات مضللة
in contrast	على النقيض	honest news sources	مصادر أخبار صادقة
figure out	يكشف / يفهم	multiple views	آراء متعددة
believe in	يؤمن بـ	media literacy	الوعي الإعلامي
check out	يتحقق / يراجع	strict guidelines	إرشادات صارمة
be careful with	كن حذراً مع	publication dates	تواريخ النشر
top-down control	تحكم مركزي	red flag	علامة تحذيرية
news consumers	متابعي الأخبار	lawless zone	منطقة بلا قانون

Definitions

regulation	لائحة / قاعدة / تنظيم	▶ a rule or law made by a government or other authority to control how something is done
removal	إزالة / رفع	▶ the act of taking something away
restriction	تقييد / حظر	▶ a limit or control on something
verify (Verification)	يتحقق / التحقق	▶ to make sure something is true, accurate, or correct
transparency	شفافية / وضوح	▶ the quality of being open, honest, and easy to understand; no secrets
deception	خداع / تضليل	▶ the act of tricking someone or making them believe something that is not true
distinguish	يميز / يفرق	▶ to tell the difference between two or more things; to see what makes them separate or unique
sensational	مثير / مذهش	▶ causing great public excitement or interest
trigger	يسبب / يطلق / يثير	▶ to cause something to start or happen
misleading	مضلل / خادع	▶ giving the wrong idea or impression; deceptive
misprints	أخطاء مطبعية	▶ errors in printing; mistakes in written text
algorithms	خوارزميات	▶ a set of rules or instructions that a computer follows to solve a problem or complete a task
media manipulation	التلاعب الإعلامي	▶ the act of controlling or influencing people's opinions through misleading or selective information in the media

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
reliable	موثوق	trusted / safe / honest	false / fake / untrustworthy
expert	خبير	specialist / professional / master	beginner / learner / amateur
headline	عنوان / مانشيت	title / heading / caption	detail / footnote / note
emotion	مشاعر	feeling / mood / sentiment	logic / reason / thought
evidence	دليل	proof / sign / clue	doubt / lie / guess
source	مصدر	origin / reference / provider	outcome / result / end
claim	يزعم / ادعاء	statement / demand / request	denial / rejection / refusal
unique	فريد	special / rare / different	common / normal / usual
solution	حل	answer / fix / key	problem / issue / difficulty
regulation	لائحة / قاعدة	rule / law / control	chaos / freedom / disorder
deception	خداع	trick / lie / fraud	honesty / truth / openness
transparency	شفافية	clarity / openness / honesty	obscurity / dishonesty / ambiguity

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
distinguish	يميز / يفرق	distinction	تمييز / فرق	distinctive	مميز / مختلف
regulate	ينظم	regulation	تنظيم / لائحة	regulatory	تنظيمي
deceive	يخدع	deception	خداع / تضليل	deceptive	خادع / مضلل
verify	يتحقق / يتأكد	verification	تحقق / تأكيد	verifiable	قابل للتحقق
inform	يعلم / يخبر	information	معلومات	informative	مفيد / تثقيفي
publish	ينشر	publication	نشر / منشور	published	منشور



Language Notes

Notice the Difference

resource	مورد / وسيلة	source	مصدر
polish	يلمع / يصقل	publish	ينشر
export	يصدر	expert	خبير
reliable	قابل للفهم	reliable	موثوق
calm	هادئ	claim	يدعي
stick	عصا / يلصق	strict	صارم
reception	استقبال	deception	خداع
logarithm	لوغاريتم	algorithm	خوارزمية
site	موقع	cite	يقتبس / يستشهد
deadline	موعد نهائي	headline	عنوان رئيسي
motion	حركة	emotion	عاطفة
quality	سمة / صفة	equality	مساواة
author	مؤلف	authority	سلطة

inform, information & informative

inform ^(v)	يخبر / يُعلم	► Please inform me of the time.
information ⁽ⁿ⁾	معلومات	► This website gives good information .
informative ^(adj)	مفيد	► The lesson was very informative .

deceive, deception, deceptive & deceptively

deceive	يخدع	► He deceived his friend.
deception	خداع	► The story was full of deception .
deceptive	خادع	► The ad is deceptive .
deceptively	بشكل خادع	► The game is deceptively easy.

sense, sensational, sensation, sensitivity & sensationally

sense	يشعر به / يحس به / يدرك	► I can sense that she is not happy today.
sensational	رائع / مثير	► The movie was sensational .
sensation	حدث مثير / ضجة كبيرة	► The news caused a big sensation .
sensitivity	حساسية	► She showed great sensitivity .
sensationally	بشكل رائع جدا	► She sang sensationally well.

manipulate, manipulation & manipulative

manipulate	يتلاعب	► He manipulated the photo.
manipulation	التلاعب	► The manipulation of facts is dangerous.
manipulative	متلاعب	► She used a manipulative tone to make her friend feel guilty.

انتظروا!!!!

كتاب مراجعة العملاقة
للفصل الثاني الثانوي

العائلة



The Anatomy of Fake News

Before you start: ☺ Think and discuss in pairs:

Reading

1) Answer the following questions.

1. Which headlines seem most/least believable? Why?
2. What makes a news source trustworthy?
3. How do you usually check if news is true?

2) Read the following article

In today's digital age, **misinformation**⁽¹⁾ spreads faster than **Wildfire**⁽²⁾. A recent study found that false news stories spread six times faster on social media than true stories. But how can ordinary readers **distinguish**⁽³⁾ between reliable sources and **fake**⁽⁴⁾ news?



- ١ معلومات مضللة
- ٢ حريق غابات
- ٣ يميز / يفرق
- ٤ مزيف / كاذب
- ٥ مشير / ملفت
- ٦ يشير / يحرل
- ٧ مضلل
- ٨ موثوق
- ٩ الصحافة
- ١٠ نشر / إصدار
- ١١ أخطاء مطبعية
- ١٢ خوارزميات
- ١٣ مستهلكين
- ١٤ مشير للتربية

A media literacy expert at Cairo University, explains: "Don't believe everything you read online. The first red flag is **sensational**⁽⁵⁾ headlines designed to **trigger**⁽⁶⁾ strong emotions.

Honest news sources don't use **misleading**⁽⁷⁾ phrases like 'You "Won't believe what happened next!" or "This will shock you!" According to him, **reliable**⁽⁸⁾ **journalism**⁽⁹⁾ follows strict guidelines. Reliable sources always cite their information, include quotes from multiple views, and provide **publication**⁽¹⁰⁾ dates. In contrast, fake news articles often hide who wrote them. You'll also often find them full of **misprints**⁽¹¹⁾ and making unsupported claims without any evidence. Social media **algorithms**⁽¹²⁾ make the problem worse. They create "echo chambers," meaning you mostly see stuff that already agrees with what you think. He warns, "People often share articles that match their views without checking if they're true. This makes it super easy for wrong information to spread." He offers practical advice for news **consumers**⁽¹³⁾: Don't believe **suspicious**⁽¹⁴⁾ news right away. Check more than one source before you trust it. Look for information from official places. Be careful with stories that sound too good or too bad to be true.

Welcome to Media Matters. Today we're debating whether social media **platforms**⁽¹⁾ be legally required to remove fake news. Joining us are Dr. Lisa Park, digital rights **advocate**⁽²⁾, and Professor Mike Chin, media **regulation**⁽³⁾ expert. Dr. Park, let's begin with you.

Thank you, Sarah. I oppose compulsory removal. Who decides what's fake?



Governments, tech companies. This path threatens free speech and enables **restriction**⁽⁴⁾. People should access information and make informed choices. Instead of **top-down**⁽⁵⁾ control, we need stronger media **literacy**⁽⁶⁾ education. I disagree. Misinformation **spreads**⁽⁷⁾ faster than facts leading to real harm. People have died following false medical advice. Social media has a duty to protect users. We regulate TV and Radio digital platforms shouldn't be a **lawless**⁽⁸⁾ zone. Self-regulation has clearly failed.

But traditional media has editors and **fact checkers**⁽⁹⁾. Social media hosts millions of user posts daily. Impossible to verify all. And who oversees the sensors? Once we allow **removal**⁽¹⁰⁾ of false content, where does it end?

I'm not talking about opinions. I mean, obviously false **claims**⁽¹¹⁾ like vaccines containing microchips or climate change being a **deception**⁽¹²⁾. Platforms already remove spam and hate speech. Why not dangerous misinformation? AI can help flag suspicious content, but algorithms make mistakes and reflect programmer bias. Sincere voices are often silenced. Also, banning content can make it more appealing. The forbidden fruit effect.

Transparency⁽¹³⁾ and education are safer long-term solutions.

Thank you both. Clearly, this critical **debate**⁽¹⁴⁾ is far from over.

- (١) منصبات
- (٢) مدافع
- (٣) تنظيم / لائحة
- (٤) تقييد / حد
- (٥) سيطرة من جهة
- (٦) معرفة / إمام
- (٧) ينشر
- (٨) بلا قانون
- (٩) مدققو الحقائق
- (١٠) إزالة / حذف
- (١١) ادعاءات
- (١٢) خداع / تضليل
- (١٣) شفافية
- (١٤) مناقشة / مناظرة



Exercise 04

Key Vocabulary

1. In today's digital age, spreads faster than wildfire. SB
 a. misinformation b. misuse c. algorithms d. presence
2. Readers should between reliable sources and fake. SB
 a. realize b. publish c. distinguish d. regulate
3. Sensational headlines are designed to strong emotions. SB
 a. eager b. trigger c. cooperate d. restrict
4. All the facts in the article must be true. SB
 a. optionally b. clear c. falsely d. verifiably
5. The news headline was so that everyone talked about it. SB
 a. weak b. sensational c. perspective d. ordinary
6. means checking if information is true or accurate. SB R 2
 a. Verification b. Guessing c. Printing d. Sharing
7. "Don't believe everything you read" is advice to avoid SB R 2
 a. science b. truth c. education d. misinformation
8. Fake news often uses headlines to grab attention. SB R 2
 a. boring b. sensational c. scientific d. quiet
9. Social media often decide which posts appear first on your feed.
 a. ads b. people c. algorithms d. apps
10. Governments create strict to control how social media platforms operate.
 a. regulations b. stories c. suggestions d. warnings
11. The newspaper apologized for a that changed the meaning of the headline.
 a. addition b. sale c. correction d. misprint
12. The of fake news from social media can help prevent confusion among users.
 a. addition b. sharing c. removal d. posting
13. There is a on sharing sensitive information online to protect privacy.
 a. freedom b. restriction c. mistake d. allowance
14. Journalists must all facts before publishing any story
 a. ignore b. guess c. hide d. verify
15. Advertisements often use to make products seem better than they really are.
 a. honesty b. deception c. clarity d. truth
16. Companies should maintain in their reports so that customers can trust them.
 a. confusion b. hiding c. secrecy d. transparency
17. Many people are tricked by news online every day.
 a. true b. fake c. accurate d. real
18. Excessive can limit freedom of expression and access to information.
 a. censorship b. conflict c. openness d. sharing
19. Teaching media in schools helps students identify reliable information.
 a. ignorance b. trend c. literacy d. mistake
20. Governments try to online platforms to prevent the spread of fake news.
 a. discourage b. regulate c. communicate d. waste
21. The ad gave information about the product so we were deceived.
 a. misleading b. honest c. clear d. accurate
22. Wearing a mask in crowded areas is according to health rules.
 a. fast b. free c. optional d. mandatory



Exercise 04 Main Vocabulary

23. Fake news can quickly on social media and mislead people. **SB**
 a. approach b. spread c. remain d. spray
24. Media uses tactics to influence how people think. **SB R2**
 a. harmful b. subtle c. fast d. slow
25. He made a that the product can cure all diseases
 a. method b. document c. clear d. claim
26. Companies must satisfy their to succeed in the market.
 a. consumers b. personalities c. themes d. sessions
27. The of a good leader include honesty and responsibility.
 a. characters b. missions c. topics d. characteristics
28. Always check multiple before believing a news story.
 a. dates b. choose c. sources d. applicants
29. The unemployment in the country has decreased this year.
 a. race b. rate c. regulation d. rule
30. Students need sources for their research projects.
 a. pirated b. spoiled c. spicy d. reliable
31. The company has a clear to expand into new markets.
 a. strategy b. tragedy c. story d. mention
32. The music attracted hundreds of fans from all over the city.
 a. decision b. class c. event d. decade
33. Follow the carefully to complete the experiment correctly.
 a. instructions b. professions c. products d. samples
34. The red light is a that cars must stop.
 a. slip b. symbol c. signal d. sign
35. Wearing a uniform is in many schools. Students have to follow school rules.
 a. free b. unnecessary c. optional d. compulsory
36. The reviewed the article before it was published.
 a. client b. editor c. reader d. customer
37. She for equal rights for all citizens.
 a. depresses b. declines c. activates d. advocates
38. The teacher the important points in the lesson.
 a. employed b. secured c. highlighted d. united
39. The journal's latest includes important scientific discoveries.
 a. effect b. task c. publication d. headline



Exercise 05 Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

40. Good journalists always their information to make sure readers trust them.
 a. cite b. site c. sight d. keep
41. Teachers often advice to students about how to improve their study habits.
 a. take b. realize c. save d. offer
42. Some websites claims about health cures without scientific proof.
 a. make b. feed c. insist d. do



43. All journalists should guidelines to ensure accurate reporting.
a. volunteer b. recycle c. follow d. remind
44. Email systems can automatically spam to keep your inbox clean.
a. get b. move c. remove d. spend
45. Everyone can mistakes, but it is important to learn from them.
a. increase b. make c. settle d. find
46. Good programmers know how to a problem efficiently.
a. tell b. solve c. save d. rescue
47. Users can suspicious content to help moderators review it.
a. flag b. tag c. take d. improve
48. Some algorithms can programmer bias if not designed carefully.
a. respect b. direct c. reflect d. collect
49. She knows how to deal problems.
a. on b. of c. in d. with
50. A/An is a system that shows you similar content based on your past activity. **SB R 2**
a. printer b. algorithm c. camera d. battery
51. are mistakes in written text. **SB R 2**
a. Misprints b. Headlines c. Regulation d. Verification
52. The school provides clear for students to follow during exams.
a. spotlights b. deadlines c. guidelines d. headlines
53. It took me a long time to figure the solution to the puzzle.
a. down b. in c. out d. on
54. contrast to last year, the city had more sunny days this summer.
a. With b. In c. By d. on
- Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.**
55. Some people find that certain foods their headaches. **SB R.2**
a. trigger b. cite c. match d. cause e. distinguish
56. The information came from a very reliable source. The synonym of "reliable" is
a. fake b. trusted c. false d. untrustworthy e. safe
57. He is an expert in fixing cars. The synonym of "expert" is
a. specialist b. beginner c. amateur d. professional e. learner
58. The headline of the article was about climate change. The synonym of "headline" is
a. note b. title c. caption d. heading e. footnote
59. She couldn't control her emotions when she heard the good news. The synonym of "emotions" is
a. sentiment b. feeling c. logic d. mood e. reason
60. The police found strong evidence in the case. The synonym of "evidence" is
a. lie b. clue c. doubt d. sign e. guess
61. Her dress was very unique and beautiful. The synonym of "unique" is
a. normal b. special c. common d. rare e. usual
62. The school made a new regulation for uniforms. The antonym of "regulation" is
a. chaos b. freedom c. control d. law e. rule
63. The boy showed deception to trick his friends. The antonym of "deception" is
a. trick b. truth c. honesty d. lie e. fraud

السؤال المذيل

Question Tag

- السؤال المذيل عبارة عن سؤال قصير يضاف في نهاية الجملة الخيرية لزيادة التأكيد ومعناه "أليس كذلك"
- يتكون السؤال المذيل من فعل مساعد وضمير فاعل طبقاً لفاعل الجملة.
- إذا كانت الجملة مثبتة يكون السؤال المذيل منفيًا والعكس.
- يكون دائماً الجزء الثاني ضمير فاعل ولا يمكننا استخدام الأسماء.

فعل مثبت فعل منفي	+	ضمير فاعل + فعل مساعد منفي فعل مساعد مثبت
----------------------	---	---

- ★ She is a clever girl, **isn't she?**
- ★ They can swim, **can't they?**
- إذا جاء اسم مذكر عاقل يحول الي (he) إذا جاء اسم مؤنث عاقل يحول الي (she) واسم غير عاقل مفرد يحول الي (it) والجمع عاقل أو غير عاقل يحول الي (they).
- ★ Dalia has typed the letters, hasn't she?
- ★ Ali won't be late, will he?
- للحظ عدم تحويل الضمائر (you / I / we) في السؤال المذيل.
- ★ I shall visit you, shan't I?
- إذا كان الفاعل (this / that) يعود على عاقل نستخدم (he / she) أما إذا كان يعود على غير عاقل نستخدم (it):
- ★ This is my friend Ali, isn't he?
- ★ This woman is very pretty, isn't she?
- ★ That is my bag, isn't it?
- إذا كان الفاعل (these / those) نستخدم (they) أم إذا كان الفاعل (there) تبقي كما هي :
- ★ These are many student in this school, aren't they?
- ★ There's much coffe, isn't there?
- أسماء قد تكون مذكر أو مؤنث مثل الوظائف إذا استطاعنا تحديد إذا كان الكلام عن مذكر أو مؤنث. نستخدم (he / she) أما إذا لم يكن واضحاً نستخدم (they)
- ★ A teacher with a thick beard was killed, wasn't he?
- ★ Your teacher is friendly , aren't they?
- ★ A child gave you this present, didn't they?
- في حالة عدم وجود فعل مساعد نستخدم (do / does / did) حسب زمن فعل الجملة.
- ★ They came by car, didn't they?
- ★ Toka speaks English well, doesn't she?
- ★ People like making money, don't they?
- للحظ الاختصارات الآتية:
- ★ It's stopped raining, hasn't it?
- ★ We'd like to eat fish, wouldn't we?
- ★ He's lazy, isn't he?
- ★ He'd bought a flat, hadn't he?
- للحظ إذا وجد (d rather) نستخدم (would) إذا وجد (d better) نستخدم (had) مع مراعاة الإثبات والنفي
- ★ I'd rather have tea, wouldn't I?
- ★ You'd better stay in bed, hadn't you?
- الكلمات الآتية few / little / never / seldom / hardly / rarely / no longer / neither
- لذلك يكون السؤال المذيل مثبتاً.
- ★ I will never speak to her again, will I?
- ★ They rarely visit Japan, do they?

إذا كان الفاعل (anyone / someone / somebody / everyone / everybody / no one / anybody) نستخدم (they) مع مراعاة الإثبات والنفي:

- ★ Everybody has finished the test, **haven't they**?
- ★ No one is here, **are they**?

إذا كان الفاعل (something / nothing / anything / everything) نستخدم (it) مع مراعاة الإثبات والنفي:

- ★ Something stops me, **doesn't it**?
- ★ Nothing can change the fact, **can it**?

Important Notes



١- لاحظ استخدام (had / has / have) في السؤال المذيل

إذا كان (has / have / had) فعل مساعد فتستخدم هذه الأفعال في السؤال المذيل مع مراعاة الإثبات والنفي:

- ★ I **haven't** finished my homework yet, **have I**?
- ★ Mona **has** never studied her lessons, **has she**?
- ★ The children **had** been to their school, **hadn't they**?

إذا كان فعل الجملة (has / have / had) كفعل أساسي فتستخدم (do / does / did) مع مراعاة الإثبات والنفي:

- ★ I **have** a letter from my uncle, **don't I**?
- ★ Ahmed **has** a cup of tea, **doesn't he**?
- ★ Toka **had** lunch at home, **didn't she**?

في حالة وجود (has to / have to / had to) نستخدم فقط (do / does / did) في السؤال المذيل مع مراعاة الإثبات والنفي:

- ★ I **have to** leave now, **don't I**?
- ★ Aya **has to** work hard, **doesn't she**?
- ★ Lions **had to** be kept in cages, **didn't they**?



٢- لاحظ تكوين السؤال المذيل في حالة وجود جملتين

إذا احتوت الجملة الأساسية على فعل من أفعال الرأي مثل (I think / I believe / I hope / I expect) يوضع السؤال المذيل على الجملة الثانية إذا كان الفاعل الضمير (I / we) ولكن مع مراعاة أن الجملة الأولى تؤثر من ناحية الإثبات والنفي أما إذا كان الفاعل اسم أو أحد الضمائر (he / she / they / you) يكون السؤال المذيل على هذه الجملة:

- ★ I believe it's going to rain, **isn't it**?
- ★ I don't think Ali **will** win the match, **will he**?
- ★ Ali **thinks** Aya is lazy, **doesn't he**?

في حالة وجود أداة ربط (if - after - when...) فإن السؤال المذيل يتبع الجملة التي لا تحتوي على أداة الربط مع مراعاة أن الجملة الأولى لا تؤثر من ناحية الإثبات والنفي:

- ★ **When** he came home late, my dad **wasn't** happy, **was he**?
- ★ I'll help you if you ask, **won't I**?



٣- لاحظ حالات خاصة في السؤال المذيل

١. في حالة وجود (am) نستخدم (aren't) و (am not) نستخدم (am):

- ★ I **am** a dentist, **aren't I**?
- ▶ I **am not** a dentist, **am I**?

٢. إذا بدأت الجملة بـ (let's) يكون السؤال المذيل (shall we).

- ★ **Let's** go to the club, **shall we**?

٣. أما إذا كانت (let us) نستخدم (will you / won't you)

- ★ **Let us** stay here, **will (won't) you**?

٤. في حالة الأمر المثبت نستخدم (will you / won't you) أما إذا كان أمر منفي نستخدم فقط (will you).

★ Open the door, will (won't) you?

★ Don't stay up late, will you?

٥. في حالة وجود (need to / needs to / needed to) نستخدم فقط (do / does / did) في السؤال المذيل أما إذا كانت

(needn't) نستخدم (need) مع مراعاة الإثبات والنفي:

★ They need to leave now, don't they?

★ Aya needs to study hard, doesn't she?

★ Ali needed to go out, didn't he?

★ You needn't sleep late, need you?

٦. في حالة وجود (too.... to) تعطي معني النفي لكن لا يؤثر في السؤال المذيل فيكون منفي ايضا:

★ She is too young to get married, isn't she?

٧. إذا جاءت الصفة منفردة نستخدم (isn't it)

★ Wonderful, isn't it?

٨. لا نستخدم حرف الجر في (ought to)

★ You ought to sleep well, oughtn't you?



Exercise 04 Language Level 1

1. They should start now, they?

أخميم ٢٠٢٤

a. will

b. shouldn't

c. should

d. must

2. Lions aren't tame animals, ?

LM المراجعة ٢٠٢٤

a. aren't they

b. isn't it

c. don't they

d. are they

3. You've worked as a mechanic for many years now, ?

الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤

a. didn't you

b. weren't you

c. haven't you

d. have you

4. My daughter read a lot of short stories, ?

شرق طنطا ٢٠٢٤

a. did she

b. isn't she

c. doesn't she

d. didn't she

5. You like romantic stories, ?

سوهاج ٢٠٢٤

a. didn't you

b. do you

c. don't you

d. aren't you

6. This child is the cutest of all his friends, ?

جرجا ٢٠٢٤

a. aren't they

b. doesn't he

c. isn't he

d. isn't it

7. They never go on holiday, ?

البحر قاص ٢٠٢٤

a. don't they

b. never do they

c. are they

d. do they

8. I am not a lazy student, ?

الحسينية ٢٠٢٤

a. am I

b. are I

c. aren't I

d. are you

9. You like to study History, ?

الشروق ٢٠٢٤

a. don't you

b. do you

c. you do

d. should you

10. Egyptian teachers are qualified to be the best, ?

اسوان ٢٠٢٤

a. aren't they

b. isn't he

c. are they

d. does he

11. I'll be capable of doing it if I practise more, ?

LM بلبيس ٢٠٢٣

a. will I

b. won't you

c. aren't I

d. won't I

12. It's been a long time since you've seen him, ?

بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣

a. haven't you

b. isn't it

c. is it

d. hasn't it



Exercise 04 Language Level 2

13. There are hardly any mistakes in this exam, ?

- a. are there b. aren't there c. are they

كوم حمادة ٢٠٢٤

d. aren't they

14. Sara rarely comes late for school, ?

القوصية ٢٠٢٣

- a. is she b. doesn't she c. does she

d. isn't she

15. Nada seldom has dinner indoors, she?

الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

- a. hasn't b. doesn't c. does

d. has

16. She read my letter, she?

دمياط ٢٠٢٤ الخارجة ٢٠٢٤

- a. doesn't b. don't c. didn't

d. won't

17. You'd better come early, ?

طنطا ٢٠٢٣ المنيا ٢٠٢٤ أجا ٢٠٢٤

- a. wouldn't you b. hadn't you c. you wouldn't

d. had you

18. Somebody is knocking at the door, ?

طامية ٢٠٢٤ بلبيس ٢٠٢٤

- a. is he b. isn't he c. are they

d. aren't they

19. He'd rather leave now, he?

العياط ٢٠٢٤

- a. had b. would c. hadn't

d. wouldn't

20. My little brother can hardly swim, ?

شرق المحلة ٢٠٢٤

- a. can't he b. can he c. does he

d. is he

21. He's never late for school, he?

إسنا ٢٠٢٤

- a. is b. isn't c. has

d. hasn't

22. Everyone is ready for the exam, ?

ابو كبير ٢٠٢٣ سما لوط ٢٠٢٤

- a. isn't he b. is he c. are they

d. aren't they

23. Ahmed has a car, he?

اسيوط ٢٠٢٣

- a. isn't b. haven't c. has not

d. doesn't

24. Hassan can hardly speak English, ?

ميت غمر ٢٠٢٤

- a. can't he b. doesn't he c. can he

d. does he

25. You'd like to go, you?

البحيرة ٢٠٢٣

- a. didn't b. wouldn't c. would

d. won't

26. I have little water, ?

أبو حماد ٢٠٢٤

- a. have I b. do I c. don't I

d. haven't

27. The doctor in a green blouse is rarely angry, ?

القوصية ٢٠٢٤

- a. is she b. isn't she c. is he

d. isn't he

28. He's just arrived home, ?

ههيا ٢٠٢٤

- a. isn't he b. hasn't he c. doesn't he

d. wasn't he

29. Everyone has a book, ?

العياط ٢٠٢٤

- a. do they b. have they c. don't they

d. hasn't he

30. Unfortunately, she late for the exam, hasn't she?

الابراهيمية ٢٠٢٤

- a. 'd come b. 's coming c. 'll come

d. 's come

31. They'd rather stay at home tonight, they?

ببا ٢٠٢٤

- a. had b. hadn't c. wouldn't

d. would

32. Little money was lost , ?

- a. was money b. was it c. wasn't money d. wasn't it

قوص ٢٠٢٤

33. Someone stole my smart phone, ?

- a. does he b. didn't he c. did they d. didn't they

فاقوس ٢٠٢٤

34. She'd come to my birthday party if I invited her, ?

- a. hadn't she b. didn't I c. wouldn't she d. don't I

LM قها ٢٠٢٤

35. Miss Salma hardly visits us, ?

- a. doesn't she b. does Salma c. doesn't Salma d. does she

بركة السبع ٢٠٢٤

36. He's no time to carry out all the tasks, ?

- a. is he b. doesn't he c. hasn't he d. does he

أجا ٢٠٢٢

37. Babies can hardly feed themselves, ?

- a. can't they b. do they c. can they d. don't they

ههيا ٢٠٢٢

38. No one has played seriously in this match , ?

- a. hasn't he b. has he c. haven't they d. have they

قنا ٢٠٢٢

39. This mobile phone cost you a lot of money, ?

- a. doesn't it b. does it c. didn't it d. don't you

الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٢

40. Nothing can live without water, ?

- a. is it b. does it c. can't it d. can it

ساقلة ٢٠٢٤

41. Dalia had to see her doctor yesterday, ?

- a. hadn't she b. didn't she c. she didn't d. wasn't she

LM

42. Hatim late, is he?

- a. is never b. doesn't come c. isn't d. a & c

LM

43. There are a lot of mistakes. Nothing is correct, ?

- a. it is b. isn't it c. are they d. is it

LM

44. A few people arrived, ?

- a. didn't they b. did they c. don't they d. do they

45. He'd never met her before, ?

- a. wouldn't he b. had he c. didn't he d. would he



Exercise 04 Language Level 3

46. I am waiting for the bus, ?

- a. am I b. am not I c. aren't I d. aren't you

LM شرين ٢٠٢٢ قويسنا ٢٠٢٤ الزقازيق ٢٠٢٤ طامية ٢٠٢٤

47. Nobody has to come to work tomorrow, ?

- a. hasn't he b. have they c. has he d. do they

ملوي ٢٠٢٤

48. As far as I know Kareem, he hates football and never plays it, ?

- a. will he b. don't I c. is he d. does he

أسبوط ٢٠٢٤

49. You don't think that she stole my pen, ?

- a. did she b. didn't she c. do you d. don't you

LM بني سويف ٢٠٢٤

50. I don't think she is happy, ?

- a. is she b. isn't she c. do you d. do I

بلقاس ٢٠٢٤

51. Every one of our neighbours seldom gets angry with the other, ? **LM** ٢٠٢٤ بيسون
- a. do they b. doesn't he c. don't they d. does he
52. You don't think I will pass the exam, ? **LM** ٢٠٢٤ الابراهيمية
- a. won't I b. don't you c. will I d. do you
53. Let's travel by car, ? **LM** ٢٠٢٤ ديروط
- a. don't you b. don't we c. shall we d. will you
54. Pass me the salt, ? **LM** ٢٠٢٤ ابوتشت
- a. won't you b. aren't I c. do you d. don't you
55. I don't think he will pass the exam, ? **LM** ٢٠٢٣ كفر الدوار
- a. do I b. won't I c. will he d. won't he
56. I don't think that's a good idea, ? **LM** ٢٠٢٤ قويسنا
- a. is it b. will you c. do I d. isn't it
57. Don't drink much coffee, ? **LM** ٢٠٢٣ البحيرة
- a. will I b. won't you c. will you d. won't I
58. Let's visit the Egyptian Museum, ? **LM** ٢٠٢٣ سوهاج
- a. shall we b. shall you c. will you d. can you
59. No one of my students read the play, ? **LM** ٢٠٢٣ بني سويف
- a. did he b. do they c. did they d. don't they
60. We a break between lessons, have we? **LM** ٢٠٢٣ اسيوط
- a. have b. haven't had c. don't have d. a & c
61. If you study hard, you will succeed, ?
- a. will you b. don't you c. won't you d. do you
62. Hatim carry the heavy box, he? – Yes, I know he is really strong. **LM**
- a. is able to / isn't b. can hardly / can't
- c. is unable / isn't d. could hardly / could
63. He historical films, ? I know, action films are his favourites. **LM**
- a. never likes / do they b. hardly likes / does he
- c. really likes / doesn't he d. already liked / did he
64. After he had finished his work, she contacted him, ? **LM**
- a. hadn't he b. didn't he c. hadn't she d. didn't she
- Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:**
1. She's never late for work, is she? (**always**) **SB R2**
2. They rarely watch TV, do they? (**often**)
3. You can swim well, can't you? (**You can't...**)
4. We are ready for the test, aren't we? (**We aren't...**)
5. He wasn't quick, was he? (**slow**)
6. Sara will come early, won't she? (**late**)
7. She didn't clean the office, did she? (**The office....**)
8. She isn't here, is she? (**there**)
9. You don't know the answer, do you? (**You know ...**)
10. They aren't playing football now, are they? (**They are ...**)



Unit 5

Media Manipulation



Lessons 3 Media Contexts 4 The Puppet Masters

Key Vocabulary

subtle ^(adj)	دقيق / خفي	tactic ⁽ⁿ⁾	تكتيك / أسلوب	psychological ^(adj)	نفسى
manipulation ⁽ⁿ⁾	تلاعب / تحكم	exploration ⁽ⁿ⁾	استكشاف	independent ^(adj)	مستقل
reflection ⁽ⁿ⁾	انعكاس / تفكير	technique ⁽ⁿ⁾	تقنية / أسلوب	specific ^(adj)	محدد
spark ^(n/v)	ملهم / يثير الشرارة	unbelievable ^(adj)	لا يصدق	influence ^(n/v)	يؤثر / تأثير
verify ^(v)	يتحقق / يثبت	shocking ^(adj)	شيء صادم	curiosity ⁽ⁿ⁾	فضول
trending ^(adj)	رائج / منتشر	emotional ^(adj)	عاطفي	preferences ⁽ⁿ⁾	تفضيلات
loop ⁽ⁿ⁾	حلقة / دائرة	complex ^(adj)	معقد	exposure ⁽ⁿ⁾	تعرض / كشف
method ⁽ⁿ⁾	طريقة / أسلوب	urgency ⁽ⁿ⁾	الحاح / استعجال	eye-catching ^(adj)	لافت للنظر
highlight ^(v)	يبرز / يوضح	belonging ⁽ⁿ⁾	انتماء	consume ^(v)	يستهلك

Main Vocabulary

thoughts ⁽ⁿ⁾	أفكار	simplify ^(v)	يبسط / يسهل	view ⁽ⁿ⁾	راي / منظر
behavior ⁽ⁿ⁾	سلوك	topic ⁽ⁿ⁾	موضوع	protesters ⁽ⁿ⁾	متظاهرون
truth ⁽ⁿ⁾	حقيقة	consider ^(v)	يفكر في / يتأمل	news channel ⁽ⁿ⁾	قناة إخبارية
directions ⁽ⁿ⁾	اتجاهات / تعليمات	extreme ^(adj)	متطرف / شديد	citizen ⁽ⁿ⁾	مواطن
ordinary ^(adj)	عادي	options ⁽ⁿ⁾	خيارات	potentially ^(adv)	بشكل محتمل
response ⁽ⁿ⁾	رد / استجابة	reduce ^(v)	يقلل / يخفض	peacefully ^(adv)	بسلام / بشكل سلمي
override ^(v)	يتجاوز / يلغي	lifestyle ⁽ⁿ⁾	أسلوب حياة	overwrite ^(v)	يتجاوز / يلغي
critical ^(adj)	نقدي / خطير	details ⁽ⁿ⁾	تفاصيل	purpose ⁽ⁿ⁾	هدف / غرض
leading ^(adj)	رائد / بارز	feedback ⁽ⁿ⁾	تغذية راجعة / ملاحظات	similar ^(adj)	مشابه
reinforce ^(v)	يعزز / يقوي	exist ^(v)	يوجد / يعيش	physical ^(adj)	جسدي
liking ⁽ⁿ⁾	إعجاب / ميل	tone ⁽ⁿ⁾	نبرة	mental ^(adj)	عقلي
click ^(v)	يضغط / ينقر	profit ⁽ⁿ⁾	ربح	mindful ^(adj)	منتبه / واع
target ⁽ⁿ⁾	هدف	summarize ^(v)	يلخص	consumer ⁽ⁿ⁾	مستهلك
attention ⁽ⁿ⁾	انتباه	mind ⁽ⁿ⁾	عقل	viewpoint ⁽ⁿ⁾	وجهة نظر
hook ⁽ⁿ⁾	خطاف / عنصر جذب	argument ⁽ⁿ⁾	جدال / حجة	conclusion ⁽ⁿ⁾	استنتاج
evidence ⁽ⁿ⁾	دليل	background ⁽ⁿ⁾	خلفية	persuade ^(v)	يقتنع
narrow ^{(v) (adj)}	يضيّق / محدود	misleading ^(adj)	مضلّل	fear ⁽ⁿ⁾	خوف
discourage ^(v)	يثبط / يمنع	trick ^(n/v)	خدعة / يخدع	notice ^(v)	يلاحظ

Collocations

demand change	يطالب بالتغيير	cause chaos	يسبب الفوضى
stay aware	يظل واعيا	cause health problems	يسبب مشاكل صحية
check sources	يتحقق من المصادر	make decisions	يتخذ قرارات
make sense	يكون منطقيا	make choice	يتخذ قرارا / يختار
highlight content	يبرز المحتوى	override critical thinking	يتجاوز التفكير النقدي
reduce curiosity	يقلل الفضول	create sense of	يخلق شعورا بـ ...
gain control	يحصل على السيطرة	create fear	يخلق خوفا

Expressions & Prepositions

engaged with	متفاعل مع	good vs. bad	الخير مقابل الشر
miss out	يفوت / يخسر الفرصة	critical thinking	التفكير النقدي
over time	مع مرور الوقت	social proof	الدليل الاجتماعي / إثبات اجتماعي
for this reason	لهذا السبب	going viral	ينتشر بسرعة (مثل الفيروس)
eye-catching headlines	عناوين لافتة للنظر	media outlets	وسائل الإعلام
psychological techniques	تقنيات نفسية	mindful media	إعلام واع / متأن
responsible for	مسؤول عن	cropped photo	صورة مقصوفة / مقطوعة
counter-argument	حجة مضادة	media subtly shapes	تشكل وسائل الإعلام الآراء بشكل غير مباشر
look guilty	يبدو مذنباً	finer details	تفاصيل أدق

Definitions

loop	حلقة / دائرة	▶ a sequence that repeats over and over like a circle
manipulation	تلاعب	▶ the act of controlling or influencing someone in a clever or unfair way
puppet master	محرك الدمى (شخص يتحكم)	▶ a person who secretly controls or directs others
trending	رائج / منتشر	▶ something very popular at the moment, especially on social media
tactic	أسلوب / حيلة	▶ a planned method or action to achieve a goal
subtle	دقيق / خفي	▶ something not obvious but still effective or important
reflection	تفكير / تأمل	▶ deep thought about something, or the image seen in a mirror

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
consume	يستهلك	use / spend / take	save / keep / conserve
influence	يؤثر	affect / shape / guide	ignore / neglect / avoid
independent	مستقل	free / separate / self-reliant	dependent / controlled / weak
manipulation	تلاعب / تحكم	control / handling / influence	honesty / fairness / truth
emotional	عاطفي	feeling / sensitive / passionate	logical / rational / cold
source	مصدر	origin / reference / provider	outcome / result / end
critical thinking	التفكير النقدي	judgment / analysis / reasoning	ignorance / carelessness
curiosity	فضول	interest / eagerness / desire	indifference / neglect / boredom
urgency	إلحاح / استعجال	pressure / hurry / rush	delay / slowness / calm
highlight	يبرز / يسلط الضوء	stress / emphasize / point out	hide / ignore / neglect
preference	تفضيل	choice / option / priority	dislike / rejection / disfavor

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
decide	يقرر	decision	قرار	decisive	حاسم
create	يخلق / يبدع	creation	إبداع / خلق	creative	مبدع
explore	يستكشف	exploration	استكشاف	explorative	استكشافي
communicate	يتواصل	communication	تواصل	communicative	تواصلي
achieve	يحقق	achievement	إنجاز	achievable	قابل للتحقيق
improve	يحسن	improvement	تحسين	improved / improvable	محسن / قابل للتحسين



Language Notes

Notice the Difference

subtitle	دقيق / خفي	◆ subtitle	الترجمة النصية (الفرعية)
critic	ناقد	◆ critical	نقدي / خطير
explore	يستكشف	◆ invent	يخترع
urgent	عاجل	◆ urgency	إلحاح / استعجال
curious	فضولي	◆ furious	غاضب بشدة
expose	يكشف / يفضح	◆ exposure	تعريض / كشف
realize	يدرئ	◆ recognize	يتعرف / يميز
exist	يوجد	◆ exit	مخرج / يخرج
trend	اتجاه / موضحة	◆ trending	رائج / منتشر
customer	زبون	◆ consumer	مستهلك
conclude	يختتم / يستنتج	◆ include	يتضمن

analyze, analysis, analytical & analytically

analyze	يحلل	► The scientist analyzed the data.
analysis	تحليل	► The analysis was clear.
analytical	تحليلي	► She has an analytical mind.
analytically	بشكل تحليلي	► He approached the problem analytically .

specify, specification, specific & specifically

specify	يحدد / يوضح	► Please specify the time.
specification	مواصفة / تحديد	► The design follows strict specifications .
specific	محدد	► I want a specific answer.
specifically	على وجه التحديد	► She spoke specifically about the problem.

prefer, preference, preferable & preferably

prefer	يفضل ▶ I prefer tea to coffee.
preference	تفضيل ▶ He has a preference for quiet places.
preferable	مفضل ▶ This option is preferable .
preferably	من المفضل أن ▶ Come early, preferably before 8.

influence, influential & influentially

influence	يؤثر ▶ Teachers influence students
influence	تأثير ▶ Media has a strong influence .
influential	مؤثر ▶ He is an influential person
influentially	بشكل مؤثر ▶ She spoke influentially

spark & sparkly

spark ^(v)	يشير / يشعل ▶ His words sparked hope.
spark ⁽ⁿ⁾	شرارة / بريق ▶ A spark started the fire
sparkly ^(adj)	لامع / مشرق ▶ She wore sparkly shoes.
sparkly ^(adv)	بشكل لامع / بلمعان ▶ The stars shone sparkly in the sky.



Listening

Have you ever stopped to think about how the news affects your opinions? Media **outlets**⁽¹⁾ don't just report facts, do they? They often choose which stories to show, don't they? And sometimes they use emotional language to **influence**⁽²⁾ how we feel, don't they? For example, one news **channel**⁽³⁾ might say, "**Protesters**⁽⁴⁾ caused **chaos**⁽⁵⁾ in the city, right?"

But another might say, "**Citizens**⁽⁶⁾ peacefully demanded change. Isn't that true? The facts might be similar, but the tone is different, isn't it? Images and headlines can also be misleading, can't they? A **cropped**⁽⁷⁾ photo might make someone look guilty, even if they're not. Wouldn't you agree? The truth is, not all media is trying to trick us, is it? But we should still ask questions, shouldn't we? Who owns this channel? What's their **purpose**⁽⁸⁾ ?

If we think critically, we won't be easily **manipulated**⁽⁹⁾, will we? After all, a smart reader checks **sources**⁽¹⁰⁾, shares carefully, and stays **aware**⁽¹¹⁾. Doesn't that make sense?

- (١) وسائل اعلام
- (٢) يؤثر
- (٣) قناة
- (٤) متظاهرون
- (٥) فوضى
- (٦) مواطنون
- (٧) مقصودة / مقنطحة
- (٨) غرض / هدف
- (٩) متلاعب به
- (١٠) مصادر
- (١١) مدرك / واع



The Puppetm

Before you start: ☺ Think and discuss in pairs:

Reading

1) Answer the following questions.

1. Which Have you ever shared, liked, or believed something online just because it made you feel strong emotions (like surprise, anger, or joy)?
2. What was it, and how did you feel afterward?



2) Read the following article



Every day, millions **consume**⁽¹⁾ media without realizing how deeply their thoughts and choices are shaped. From **eye-catching**⁽²⁾ headlines to personalized social media content, modern media uses **subtle**⁽³⁾ psychological techniques to influence behavior. "Most people believe they make **independent**⁽⁴⁾ decisions, but the truth is,

media messages are designed to guide thoughts in specific directions—often without us noticing."

One powerful method is emotional manipulation. Words like "shocking," "unbelievable," or "you won't believe" are carefully chosen to **spark**⁽⁵⁾ strong feelings. This **emotional**⁽⁶⁾ response can override critical thinking, leading people to react quickly—liking, sharing, or believing content without reflection. Another common tactic is the "**either-or**"⁽⁷⁾ framing, which simplifies complex topics into two extreme options. This reduces **curiosity**⁽⁸⁾ and discourages deeper **exploration**⁽⁹⁾. For example, lifestyle or health topics may be presented as "good vs. bad," without considering the finer details.

Social proof is also widely used. Phrases like "**going viral**⁽¹⁰⁾" or "everyone is trying this" create a sense of **urgency**⁽¹¹⁾ and belonging. Platforms highlight trending content, making users feel they're missing out if they don't join in. **Algorithms**⁽¹²⁾ further shape experience by showing content similar to what users have engaged with before. This creates a **feedback**⁽¹³⁾ loop, reinforcing existing preferences. Algorithms and limiting exposure to new ideas. Over time, people may not **realize**⁽¹⁴⁾ their view of the world is narrow.

- (١) يستهلك
- (٢) ملفت للنظر
- (٣) خفي / دقيق
- (٤) مستقل
- (٥) يثير / يشعل
- (٦) عاطفي
- (٧) إما هذا أو ذلك
- (٨) فضول
- (٩) استكشاف
- (١٠) سريع الانتشار
- (١١) ضرورة عاجلة
- (١٢) خوارزميات
- (١٣) تغذية راجعة
- (١٤) يدرك



Exercise 04

Key Vocabulary

SB

1. Modern media uses psychological techniques to influence behavior.
a. subtle b. subway c. slow d. coastal
2. There was great to send food and water after the flood.
a. safety b. legacy c. urgency d. privacy
3. The politician used of words and images to change people's opinions.
a. pollution b. protection c. manipulation d. manipulate
4. After the exam, he spent time in deep about his mistakes and progress.
a. operation b. action c. water d. reflection
5. She wants to be and make her own decisions without help.
a. dependent b. independent c. perspective d. ordinary
6. The artist used a new painting to create bright and modern colors.
a. technique b. street c. effect d. influence
7. His joke was the that made everyone laugh loudly and happily.
a. science b. smart c. scarf d. spark
8. The video played again in a and didn't stop repeating.
a. pool b. loop c. loan d. loom
9. This song is on social media and everyone is listening.
a. trend b. remaining c. trending d. posting
10. He used a clever during the debate to make his argument stronger and more convincing.
a. tactic b. regulation c. sense d. critic
11. Space helps us discover new planets and understand the universe.
a. exploration b. mention c. cooperation d. invention
12. The movie's ending was and shocked the whole audience.
a. additional b. ordinary c. believable d. unbelievable
13. Parents can strongly their children's behavior and future choices.
a. contribute b. share c. influence d. post
14. The poster is very and full of bright colors.
a. dull b. eye-catching c. dark d. disgusting
15. People should not too much fast food every day.
a. ignore b. resume c. connect d. consume
16. Too much to the sun is dangerous for the skin.
a. expose b. exposure c. pressure d. picture
17. You must the facts carefully before sharing the news online.
a. classify b. satisfy c. defy d. verify
18. Reading is a good to improve your English and memory,
a. reflection b. invention c. method d. board
19. Everyone has different food , like pizza or burgers
a. markets b. preferences c. references d. readers
20. This math problem is very and needs more time.
a. complex b. conflict c. simple d. weak
21. The speech was so that many people started crying.
a. fictional b. emotion c. emotional d. usual

22. She felt a strong sense of in the new team.

- a. belong b. belonging c. singing d. acting

23. Her made her ask many questions during the previous lecture.

- a. reflective b. poverty c. curiosity d. discuss



Exercise 04

Main Vocabulary

24. He shared his about the book with his friends in class.

- a. thoughts b. thinks c. minds d. missions

25. Teachers try to the lessons so that every student can understand.

- a. defy b. simplify c. harden d. widen

26. From the top of the hill, the of the city was really beautiful.

- a. record b. report c. review d. view

27. I wrote down my in a notebook to clear my mind.

- a. characters b. mansions c. themes d. thoughts

28. This new medicine could save many lives. It is very effective.

- a. potentially b. uselessly c. patially d. weakly

29. We should be of our words to avoid hurting others.

- a. dates b. resources c. mindful d. applicants

30. Everyone has a different on this problem.

- a. brain b. viewpoint c. mind d. rule

31. The doctor arrived at a moment to save the patient.

- a. critic b. canned c. save d. critical

32. The shop offers many of clothes to choose from.

- a. options b. actions c. customers d. clients

33. He looks like an man, but he is very talented.

- a. empty b. optional c. ordinary d. intelligent

34. The carried signs and shouted for justice.

- a. tests b. protesters c. organs d. campers

35. My father always watches the news every evening.

- a. channel b. canals c. beaches d. samples

36. She gave a quick to the teacher's question.

- a. view b. option c. thought d. response

37. The teacher tried to the lesson so everyone could understand.

- a. regulate b. scan c. sacrifice d. simplify

38. It is always better to tell the , even if it is hard

- a. lies b. truth c. true d. fiction

39. The manager decided to the old rule and make a new one.

- a. depress b. mention c. overrate d. override

40. The teacher gave us to improve our writing.

- a. employment b. purpose c. feedback d. channel

41. The teacher asked for the students' during class.

- a. attention b. intension c. fiction d. mention

42. They had an about who should clean the room.

- a. effect b. improvement c. argument d. agreement



Exercise 04 Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

43. The teacher asked the students to the most important notes.
a. highlight b. site c. light d. fight
44. Fear can sometimes critical thinking in emergencies.
a. undertake b. recognize c. protect d. override
45. His explanation didn't sense to anyone in the class.
a. do b. make c. take d. give
46. The workers decided to protest and change in their salaries.
a. demand b. reflect c. collect d. do
47. Eating too much fast food can health problems.
a. make b. have c. cause d. reason
48. In the meeting, everyone was asked to opinion about the plan
a. get b. feed c. give d. tell
49. Everyone can mistakes, but it is important to learn from them.
a. increase b. make c. settle d. find
50. The speaker used framing, saying we must choose between success or total failure.
a. run on b. either-or c. face to face d. well - behaved
51. The funny picture started going , and millions of people shared it online.
a. viral b. vital c. vedeo d. visual
52. He didn't study well for the test, and this reason, he could not get a good grade.
a. by b. with c. for d. to
53. She felt upset because she was missing on the school trip that all her friends enjoyed.
a. out b. in c. from d. from
54. time, small efforts every day can lead to big changes in our lives.
a. From b. By c. Over d. With
55. A is a sequence that repeats over and over like a circle.
a. manipulation b. coat c. loaf d. loop
56. A is a person who secretly controls or directs others.
a. printer b. puppet master c. grabber d. cheater
57. means something very popular at the moment, especially on social media.
a. Trending b. Posting c. Regulation d. Sharing
58. means something not obvious but still effective or important
a. Serious b. Active c. Subtle d. Social
59. The act of controlling or influencing someone in a clever or unfair way means
a. Population b. Integration c. manipulation d. cooperation
60. A is a planned method to achieve a goal.
a. tragic b. tactic c. fact d. magic

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

61. Factories often consume a lot of energy every day. The synonym of "consume" is
a. comfort b. use c. waste d. spend e. store

62. His words had a strong influence on the young students. The synonym of “influence” is
- a. recycle b. effect c. infect d. affect e. impact
63. The leader used manipulation to control his team. The antonym of “manipulation” is
- a. honesty b. control c. fairness d. handling e. power
64. She is very emotional and cries when watching sad movies. The antonym of the word “emotional” is
- a. logical b. sensitive c. passionate d. rational e. feeling
65. Students are encouraged to use critical thinking in their studies. The antonym of “critical thinking” is
- a. analysis b. ignorance c. reasoning d. judgment e. carelessness
66. The doctor said the patient’s case was an urgency. The antonym of “urgency” is
- a. stress b. delay c. slowness d. pressure e. hurry
67. She likes to be independent and make her own decisions. The synonym of “independent” is
- a. dependent b. free c. weak d. controlled e. self-reliant
68. The teacher explained the main source of the information. The synonym of “source” is
- a. origin b. outcome c. result d. reference e. end
69. The child’s curiosity made him ask many questions about the world. The synonym of “curiosity” is
- a. neglect b. interest c. eagerness d. boredom e. rejection
70. The teacher asked students to highlight the important points. The antonym of “highlight” is
- a. hide b. stress c. clarity d. ignore e. point out
71. The teacher gave very specific instructions for the project. The antonym of “specific” is
- a. general b. public c. clear d. exact e. detailed
72. His speech helped to spark new ideas among the students. The synonym of “spark” is
- a. flash b. start c. ignore d. reject e. manipulate
73. The team used a smart tactic to win the match. The synonym of “tactic” is
- a. strategy b. plan c. game d. mistake e. problem

سبق شرح القاعدة في الجزء الاول

1. She lives in London,? SB
 a. does she b. doesn't she c. isn't she d. didn't she
2. They aren't coming to the party,? SB
 a. do they b. are they c. were they d. don't they
3. You like chocolate,? SB
 a. don't you b. aren't you c. didn't you d. won't you
4. He doesn't play football,? SB
 a. doesn't he b. will he c. is he d. does he
5. It's raining,? SB
 a. is it b. wasn't it c. isn't it d. does he
6. We don't have homework today,? SB
 a. are we b. don't we c. do we d. did we
7. You're coming to the party tonight,? SB
 a. are you b. aren't you c. do you d. do you
8. They didn't finish the project,? SB
 a. doesn't they b. do they c. didn't they d. did they
9. Your brother works in a hospital,? SB
 a. doesn't he b. isn't he c. didn't he d. won't he
10. We've never been to Paris,? SB
 a. have we b. haven't we c. have you d. did we
11. Media outlets often choose which stories to show,? SB
 a. don't they b. do they c. won't they d. isn't it
12. A cropped photo can make someone look guilty, it? SB
 a. doesn't b. can c. can't d. won't
13. Not all media is trying to trick us,? SB
 a. isn't it b. is it c. are they d. don't they
14. They went to the cinema,? SB
 a. didn't they b. did they c. weren't they d. don't they
15. You can swim,? SB
 a. can't you b. can you c. do you d. did you
16. She won't forget,? SB
 a. didn't she b. does she c. won't she d. will she
17. We've met before,? SB
 a. have we b. did we c. haven't we d. don't we
18. He's very kind,? SB
 a. is he b. does he c. isn't he d. wasn't he
19. I'm not late,? SB
 a. aren't I b. am I c. is it d. was I
20. You've never tried sushi,? SB
 a. have you b. haven't you c. did you d. don't you
21. You're not sure if your friend watched the football match. SB
 a. You watched the match, did you? b. You watched the match, didn't you?
 c. You didn't watch the match, didn't you? d. You didn't watch the match, did you?

22. It wasn't very cold yesterday,? SB
 a. was it b. wasn't it c. is it d. did it
23. You want to confirm that your classmate doesn't have a pen. SB
 a. You have a pen, don't you? b. You don't have a pen, do you?
 c. You don't have a pen, don't you? d. You have a pen, do you?
24. You're surprised that someone doesn't like chocolate. SB
 a. You don't like chocolate, do you? b. You like chocolate, don't you?
 c. You don't like chocolate, don't you? d. You like chocolate, do you?
25. She speaks French fluently, she? SB R2
 a. doesn't b. isn't c. does d. is
26. They didn't finish the project, they? SB R2
 a. did b. didn't c. do d. have
27. He's been to Paris before, he? SB R2
 a. hasn't b. has c. did you d. is
28. They are sad as they have lost the match, they? SB R2
 a. don't b. didn't c. haven't d. aren't
29. You won't tell anyone, you? SB R2
 a. will b. won't c. do d. don't
30. She's very kind, she? SB R2
 a. isn't b. doesn't c. hasn't d. has
31. I'm late, ? SB R2
 a. am I not b. aren't I c. don't I d. isn't it
32. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?
 a. She likes coffee, doesn't she? b. She likes coffee, doesn't he?
 c. She likes coffee, does she? d. She likes coffee, isn't she?
33. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?
 a. They aren't coming, are they? b. They aren't coming, aren't they?
 c. They aren't coming, do they? d. They aren't coming, isn't they?
34. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?
 a. He's never late, isn't he? b. He's never late, is he?
 c. He's never late, doesn't he? d. He's never late, has he?

Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. He doesn't play tennis, does he? (**never**)
2. You don't like pizza, do you? (**always**)
3. He plays football every Friday, doesn't he? (**He doesn't...**)
4. She has finished her homework, hasn't she? (**She hasn't...**)
5. They were at school yesterday, weren't they? (**They weren't...**)
6. She eats vegetables every day, doesn't she? (**She doesn't ...**)

Find and correct the mistake in each sentence

1. She's your sister, doesn't she? SB
2. They don't like pizza, do it? SB
3. He can drive, can he? SB
4. We are late, are not we? SB
5. You didn't call me, do you? SB
6. She is a teacher, is she? SB
7. They don't like pizza, don't they?
8. He can play the guitar, isn't he?
9. We weren't late yesterday, weren't we?
10. You are happy today, aren't it?

(1)

would rather +

مصدر
مصدر + than + مصدر
بسيط ماضى + فاعل
كلمة ماضى + ماضى تام + فاعل



1. I'd rather with my friends.
a. staying b. stayed c. stay d. to stay
2. I'd rather go to the cinema watch TV.
a. to b. than c. rather than d. too
3. I'd rather you early today.
a. slept b. sleep c. sleeping d. had slept
4. I'd rather you early yesterday.
a. slept b. sleep c. sleeping d. had slept
5. I'd watch TV.
a. love b. like c. prefer d. rather
6. I'd rather watch TV than novels.
a. reading b. read c. reads d. to reading

(2)

would prefer to + مصدر

فاعل +

prefer or

to + مصدر

ing or → اسم

فاعل + prefer + ing or → اسم + to + ing or → اسم

مصدر + 'd prefer to + مصدر + rather than + مصدر

7. I prefer TV.
a. watching b. watch c. to watch d. a & c
8. I'd prefer TV rather than sleep.
a. to watching b. watching c. watch d. to watch
9. He prefers watching football playing it.
a. to b. than c. rather than d. too
10. I'd prefer to have dinner at home go to restaurants.
a. rather than b. other than c. to d. neither than
11. I prefer reading TV.
a. to watching b. than watch c. to watch d. rather than watch
12. I'd prefer to the cinema rather than stay here.
a. gone b. go c. went d. to go
13. I'd prefer to read TV.
a. to watching b. than watch c. to watch d. rather than watch

(3)

فاعل +	would like Like feel like	to + مصدر to or ing or → اسم + ing
--------	--	--



14. I like on the beach today.
a. to lie b. lying c. to lying d. a & b
15. I'd like on the beach today.
a. to lie b. lying c. to lying d. a & b
16. I feel like on the beach today.
a. to lie b. lying c. to lying d. a & b
17. I'd like in my school by teachers.
a. to reward b. to be rewarded c. being rewarded d. to being rewarded
18. I don't like to pay in advance.
a. being asked b. be asked c. be ask d. being ask
19. Toka doesn't like by her enemies.
a. being deceived b. be deceived c. to be deceived d. a & c

الضمائر غير المحددة

Indefinite Pronouns

تستخدم للتعبير عن أشخاص أو أشياء أو أماكن غير محددة:

everybody everyone someone somebody anybody anyone no one nobody	كل فرد شخص ما أي فرد لا أحد	يأتي معهم فعل مفرد ضمير جمع they them their	everything everywhere something somewhere anywhere anything nothing nowhere	كل شيء في كل مكان شيء ما مكان ما في أي مكان أي شيء لا شيء لا مكان	يأتي معهم فعل مفرد ضمير مفرد it
---	--	---	--	--	---

20. Everything been prepared as it was planned.
a. has b. have c. is d. are
21. No one in the house in the party.
a. was / He was b. were / They were c. was / She was d. was / They were
22. I couldn't find the station, so I asked someone if could direct me.
a. them b. she c. he d. they
23. If I don't wear my glasses, everything just a blur.
a. was b. has c. is d. are
24. Each of the companies a local charity.
a. are supporting b. supporting c. supports d. support

مقال الرأي
Opinion Essay

A Opinion Essay

- ★ An opinion essay **presents the writer's viewpoint** on a specific topic, **supported by evidence** and **logical reasoning**. It aims to **persuade the reader** to understand and potentially agree with the presented opinion.

مقال الرأي يعرض وجهة نظر الكاتب حول موضوع محدد، مدعومة بالأدلة والتفكير المنطقي. يهدف إلى إقناع القارئ بفهم الرأي وربما الموافقة عليه.

B Structure of an Opinion Essay

Section القسم	Purpose الغرض	Example Phrases أمثلة على العبارات
Introduction المقدمة	Hook (الجملة الجاذبة): جملة تجذب انتباه القارئ Background (الخلفية): معلومات عامة عن الموضوع لتهيئة القارئ. Thesis statement (الأطروحة/الرأي): جملة واضحة تبين رأيك.	Stating your claim I believe that... In my opinion... I think it is clear that
Body Paragraph 1 الفقرة الأولى	Main argument (الحجة الرئيسية) Evidence (الدليل) Explanation (الشرح)	Supporting your claim Firstly,... For example,...
Body Paragraph 2 الفقرة الثانية	Present another strong reason with examples and details. (عرض سبب قوي آخر مع أمثلة وتفاصيل). تقديم سبب آخر مع أمثلة أو حقائق.	Another reason is... For instance,...
Counter-argument الرأي المضاد	It mentions the opposite side and ذكر وجهة النظر الأخرى.	Introducing the other side Some people say that It is argued that On the other hand...
Conclusion الخاتمة	Summary (الخلاصة): إعادة ذكر الأفكار الرئيسية باختصار. Final opinion (الرأي النهائي): تأكيد رأيك. Future prediction (توقع مستقبلي): ما قد يحدث إذا اتبع رأيك.	Concluding In conclusion,... To sum up,... That's why I believe...



Useful Phrases to Use

Starting the topic

بدء الموضوع

► Nowadays, many people talk about

في الوقت الحاضر. يتحدث الكثير من الناس عن

► In my opinion

في رأيي.

► I believe that

أعتقد أن

► Giving opinion

إبداء الرأي

► I think

أظن أن

► I agree/disagree because

أنا أوافق / لا أوافق لأن

Giving reasons

إعطاء الأسباب

► First of all

أولاً

► Secondly

ثانياً

► This is because

هذا لأن

Giving examples

إعطاء أمثلة

► For example

على سبيل المثال.

► In Egypt, many students

في مصر. كثير من الطلاب

► My friend once

صديقي مرة

Summarizing

التلخيص

► In conclusion

في الختام.

► To sum up

لخصاً

► Final opinion

الرأي النهائي

► That's why I strongly believe

لهذا السبب أؤمن بشدة أن

► For these reasons, I think

لهذه الأسباب. أعتقد أن



A model for an Opinion Essay

In my opinion, media is very important because it shapes the way we see the world and how we make decisions. Through television, newspapers, and especially social media, people can learn new ideas, follow the news, and share their own voices. Media also helps us connect with others, even if they live far away, and it provides us with an opportunity to learn about different cultures.

At the same time, media can influence our choices, such as what products we buy or what opinions we believe. For this reason, I think media has a strong power to change our lives, and we should use it wisely to get benefits and avoid harm.

Although media can be useful, I believe it also has many disadvantages. Spending too much time on social media or watching TV may waste valuable hours that could be used for studying or working.

Media can also spread false news or harmful content that confuses people and creates fear. Sometimes, it makes people compare themselves to others, which may lead to stress or low self-confidence. In addition, too much media use can cause addiction and reduce real communication between family members and friends. For these reasons, I think media can have a harmful effect on our lives if we do not control how we use it.



Exercise 04

Writing

SB - R 1

1. An opinion essay mainly presents
 a. the writer's personal view with reasons b. a list of facts
 c. only a story d. daily activities
2. The purpose of an opinion essay is to
 a. persuade the reader b. tell jokes c. write a biography d. list instruction
3. The first part of an opinion essay is the
 a. counter-argument b. introduction c. body paragraph d. summary
4. A hook in the introduction is
 a. a summary sentence b. the last sentence in the essay
 c. an evidence list d. a question, fact that grabs attention
5. The thesis statement should
 a. be a poem b. be hidden
 c. clearly show the writer's opinion d. explain only facts
6. Body paragraph 1 should include
 a. the conclusion b. only examples without reasons
 c. only a counter-argument d. greetings to the reader
7. Which phrase is useful to give your opinion?
 a. For example b. I think c. To sum up d. In conclusion
8. Which phrase is useful for the final opinion?
 a. That's why I strongly believe b. Secondly
 c. In conclusion d. For example
9. Which phrase is useful to summarize?
 a. First of all b. I think c. To sum up d. For example
10. Which phrase is useful to give a reason?
 a. That's why I strongly believe b. Secondly
 c. In conclusion d. For example
11. In the conclusion, the writer should
 a. That's why I strongly believe b. repeat the hook only
 c. start with a new idea d. only write examples
12. Body paragraph 2 usually presents
 a. introduce new unrelated ideas b. another strong reason with examples
 c. write the conclusion d. write jokes
13. An opinion essay should always be supported by
 a. evidence and logical reasoning b. greetings
 c. stories only d. songs
14. Emotional words like "I believe" or "In my opinion" are used to
 a. state your viewpoint b. the final opinion
 c. tell jokes d. state your viewpoint
15. The background in the introduction gives
 a. only examples b. unrelated stories
 c. general information about the topic d. the final opinion



Exercise 04

Translation

1. Education is the basis of progress and development for peoples and countries of the world, whether developed or developing; because it helps us prepare generations of citizens who are capable of making a difference.

السويس ٢٠٢٤

- أ. التعليم هو أساس التقدم والتنمية للناس وعالم الدول سواء المتقدمة أو النامية وذلك لأنه يساعدنا في تجهيز أجيال من المواطنين القادرين على إحداث التغيير.
- ب. التعليم هو أساس التقدم والتنمية للشعوب ودول العالم سواء التي تقدمت أو تسعى للتقدم وذلك لأنه يساعدنا في إعداد أجيال من المواطنين غير القادرين على إحداث الفرق.
- ج. التعليم هو أساس التقدم والتنمية للشعوب ودول العالم سواء المتقدمة أو النامية وذلك لأنه يساعدنا في إعداد أجيال من المواطنين القادرين على إحداث التغيير.
- د. هو الأساس في التقدم والتنمية للشعوب ودول العالم سواء المتقدمة أو النامية وذلك لأنه يساعدنا في إعداد مولدات للمواطنين القادرين على إحداث التغيير.

2. Egypt is trying to improve its economic status by attracting foreign investments and building great projects. This is beginning to show progress.

الحسينية ٢٠٢٤

- أ. تحاول مصر تحسين وضعها الاقتصادي من خلال تنمية الاستثمارات الأجنبية وبناء المشروعات الكبرى وبدأ هذا في توضيح التقدم
- ب. تحاول مصر تحسين موضعها الاقتصادي من خلال جذب الاستثمارات الأجنبية وبناء المشروعات الكبرى وبدأ هذا في تفسير التقدم
- ج. تحاول مصر تحسين وضعها الاقتصادي من خلال جذب الاستهلاكات الأجنبية وبناء المشروعات الكبرى وبدأ هذا في إظهار التقدم
- د. تحاول مصر تحسين وضعها الاقتصادي من خلال جذب الاستثمارات الأجنبية وبناء المشروعات الكبرى وبدأ هذا في إظهار التقدم

3. Mass media have a great influence on the minds of people everywhere. That's why advertisers use them to promote their sales and gain more profits.

البوقرقاص ٢٠٢٤

- أ. وسائل الإعلام لها تأثير كبير على عقول الناس في كل بلد. لهذا السبب يستخدمها المعلنون للترويج لمبيعاتهم وكسب المزيد من الأرباح.
- ب. وسائل الإعلام لها تأثير كبير على عقول الناس في كل مكان. لهذا السبب يستخدمها المعلنون للترويج لمبيعاتهم وكسب القليل من الأرباح.
- ج. وسائل الإعلام لها تأثير كبير على عقول الناس في كل مكان. لهذا السبب يستخدمها المعلنون للترويج لمبيعاتهم وكسب المزيد من المبيعات.
- د. وسائل الإعلام لها تأثير كبير على عقول الناس في كل مكان. لهذا السبب يستخدمها المعلنون للترويج لمبيعاتهم وكسب المزيد من الأرباح.

٤. أثبتت التجربة العملية أن العلم سلاح ذو حدين، فهو نعمة إذا استخدم في الخير، ونقمة إذا استخدم في الشر والدمار.

- a. Practical experience has proven that science is a double-edged weapon, as it is a blessing if it is used for good and a curse if it is used for evil and destruction.
- b. Practical experience has proven that science is a double-edged weapon, as it is a blessing if it is used for good and a curse if it is used for evil and construction.
- c. Practical experiences has proven that knowledge is a double-edged weapon, as it is a blessing whether it is used for good, and a curse if it is used for evil and destruction.
- d. Practical experience has proven that science is a double-edged weapon, as it is a blessing if it is used for good, and a curse if it is used for evil and destruction.

٥. علينا أن نشجع شبابنا على الذهاب للتخييم، ذلك يمكنهم من الاستفادة من أوقات فراغهم بطريقة مفيدة ويعلمهم التعاون

السويس ٢٠٢٤

والانضباط والاحترام .

- a. We have to encourage our youth to go to the camp. It enables them to use their spare time in a useful way. It teaches them cooperation, discipline, and respectful.
- b. We have to encourage our youth to go camping. It disables them to make use of their spare time in a useful way. It teaches them cooperation, discipline, and respect.
- c. We have to encourage our young to go camping. It enables them to make use of their spare time in a useful way. It teaches them cooperation, disciplined, and respect.
- d. We have to encourage our youth to go camping. It enables them to make use of their spare time in a useful way. It teaches them cooperation, discipline, and respect.



Exercise 04

Comprehension

Once upon a time, in a little village, there was a young boy who lived in the hill of his village and grazes and cares for sheep. Watching over the sheep made him bored and tired. He thought of amusing himself to ease his boredom; he shouted, " Help! Help! A wolf! A wolf! The wolf is chasing the sheep!"

Hearing the cry, the villagers hurried up the hill to save the sheep and chase the wolf away. But, when they arrived, they saw no wolf. The boy laughed at them; he was amused when he saw their angry faces.

"Don't scream wolf, boy," warned the villagers, "Until there is a real wolf!" They angrily went back down the hill.

Later, the little boy cried out once again, "Wolf! Wolf! The wolf is chasing the sheep!" To his amusement, he looked on as the villagers came running up the hill to scare the wolf away.

When they found out there was no wolf, they said sharply, "Save your frightened cry for when there is a real wolf! Don't cry 'wolf' when there is no wolf!"

After a while, once more, the boy saw a real wolf sneaking around his sheep. Alarmed at seeing it, he jumped on his feet and cried out as loud as he could, "Wolf! Wolf!" But the villagers thought he was fooling them again, and so they didn't come to help.

At sunset, the villagers went looking for the boy who hadn't returned with their sheep. When they went up the hill, they found him weeping. "There was really a wolf here! All the flock is gone! I cried out, "Wolf!" but you didn't come, he wailed.

1. The moral lesson of the story is that
 - a. you can build bridges with people with your lies
 - b. people never believe a liar for a while but trust them for ever
 - c. you may deceive all people all the time
 - d. people never trust liars even if they're telling the truth
2. Finally, the lies of the boy led to
 - a. watching the sheep over the hill
 - b. keeping the sheep away from the wolf
 - c. breaking trust with the villagers
 - d. being amused and entertained
3. The villagers might have saved the sheep if
 - a. the boy had been truthful
 - b. the boy had been a liar
 - c. they had remembered the boy's lies
 - d. they had neglected the boy's cries
4. According to the incidents of the story, the boy was
 - a. a stranger from another village
 - b. a member of the same village
 - c. a foolish boy wanting to hunt wolves
 - d. an ordinary boy hiking in the hills
5. The boy was in a critical situation when
 - a. the villagers believed the boy all the time
 - b. the villagers were happy with him
 - c. he couldn't protect the sheep from the wolf.
 - d. he called for help for the first time
6. The sentence that can summarize the story is "....."
 - a. The little boy lost his sheep because of his lies.
 - b. The villagers killed the wolf.
 - c. The sheep were eaten by a fake wolf.
 - d. The liar was teaching the villagers a lesson.
7. The boy was really a little
 - a. chaser
 - b. shepherd
 - c. killer
 - d. hunter
8. The suitable title of the story is "....."
 - a. The boy who chased the sheep.
 - b. The villagers who killed a wolf.
 - c. The boy who cried wolf! wolf!
 - d. The wise man and the wolf



General Exercises

on

Unit

5



Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the (2) correct answers out of the (5) options given:

- The manager wanted more transparency in the company. The antonym of "transparency" is
a. dishonesty b. openness c. clarity d. deception e. honesty
- The students quickly found a solution to the problem. The antonym of "solution" is
a. challenge b. obstacle c. fix d. key e. answer

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The magician can the audience with his hands.
a. track b. trek c. trick d. trace
- Learning skills helps students get better jobs.
a. practical b. useless c. fake d. weak
- She wanted to do something special, not just an day at school.
a. powerful b. ordinary c. urgent d. connected
- Modern cars use to control engine functions.
a. microchips b. regulations c. footprints d. postings
- Rumors can faster than facts on the internet.
a. do b. spread c. remain d. stay
- My parents no longer have any free time, ?
a. have they b. haven't they c. do they d. don't they
- Father has to take these pills three times a day, ?
a. has he b. hasn't he c. doesn't he d. does he
- Nobody should pollute our environment, ?
a. shouldn't they b. should they c. should we d. shouldn't we
- Something terrible is happening now, ?
a. isn't it b. aren't they c. is it d. are they
- She must have been ill, ?
a. isn't she b. mustn't she c. hasn't she d. doesn't she
- What is the primary purpose of an opinion essay?
a. To provide a factual and unbiased report on a topic.
b. To argue for and support a specific point of view on a topic.
c. To narrate a personal experience or story.
c. To compare and contrast two different subjects.

بني سويف ٢٠٢٤

ببا ٢٠٢٤

الزقازيق ٢٠٢٣ كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٤

اولاد صقر ٢٠٢٤

كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٤



Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Everyone is individual and different in the same way as everyone's finger-prints are unique, so is everyone's personality. We can usually see people's personality in the clothes they wear or how they look after their things, or how they behave with other people around them. When we say that we know someone well, what we really mean is that we can make accurate guesses about what that person will do or think in certain situations. We know the different features of their personality. These features are called "personality **traits**".

Psychologists think that we have "central personality traits." These affect how we behave, and how we react to people and situations. Examples of central personality traits are friendliness, neatness, competitiveness, shyness and optimism. Some psychologists think that we inherit these central traits from our family and that **they** usually stay with us all our life. Psychologists say that we also have other traits, called "secondary traits", connected with the things we prefer, such as

our favourite food, music, films or colours. These can change as we get older, but very often many of them stay the same all our lives.

Personality traits may be either positive or negative. The positive traits make the person appreciated by others while the negative ones make them hated. Positive personality traits include being human taking responsibility for actions, adaptability, determination, compassion, understanding, patience, courage and loyalty. Negative personality traits include lying which is a deplorable quality being selfish, laziness, inability to empathize with others, being disloyal and talking about others behind their back.

14. Which of the following can determine someone's personality?

- a. The way they behave
- b. The way they dream
- c. The way they sleep
- d. The way they write

15. Laziness and telling lies are known to be

- a. unchangeable personality traits
- b. negative personality traits
- c. positive personality traits
- d. good qualities of a person

16. What does the underlined word **they** refer to?

- a. personality traits
- b. qualities of people
- c. central personality traits
- d. secondary personality traits

17. The underlined word "**traits**" means

- a. personalities
- b. characteristics
- c. descriptions
- d. persons

18. We know the features of personality by his

- a. treat
- b. traits
- c. tiredness
- d. thoughts

19. Scientists think that we from our family.

- a. inherit
- b. hurt
- c. inheritance
- d. heart

20. can remain the same throughout our lives.

- a. Secondary traits
- b. Central traits
- c. Primary traits
- d. Secondary levels

21. The traits make the person appreciated by others.

- a. positive
- b. negative
- c. equal
- d. bad



Writing

A: Translate the following into Arabic:

On your way to success, don't be afraid of going slowly; only be afraid of standing still.

- أ- فى الطريق للنجاح. لا تخشى التقدم ببطء. ولكن يجب أن تخشى الوقوف ثابتاً.
- ب- فى الطريق للنجاح. لا تخشى الذهاب البطيء. ولكن يجب أن تخشى الوقوف ثابتاً.
- ج- فى الطريق للنجاح. لا تخشى التقدم ببطء. ولكن يجب أن تخشى الوقوف متزناً.
- د- فى الطريق للنجاح. لا تخشى التقدم ببطء. ولكن لا يجب أن تخشى الوقوف مازال.

B: Translate the following into English.

حقق العلماء المصريين نجاحات عظيمة فى كل أنحاء العالم وسوف يحققوا المزيد إذا تم إعطاؤهم الفرصة الملائمة.

- a. Egyptian scientists have achieved great successful all over the world. They will achieve more if they are given the due chance.
- b. Egyptian scientists have achieved great succeed all over the world. They will achieve more if they are given the due chance.
- c. Egyptian scientists have achieved great successes all over the world. They will achieve more if they are giving the due chance.
- d. Egyptian scientists have achieved great successes all over the world. They will achieve more if they are given the due chance.

Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

1. We should help the poor, shouldn't we? (We shouldn't ...)
2. I am never on time, am I? (always)

Answer the following questions :

1. Do you think Fogg misses out on experiences by focusing only on time?
2. How does Passepartout's reaction to new cultures reflect modern travelers?
3. How did life on board the ship settle into a rhythm?

Write an opinion essay of about 180 words on the following topic:

"Should Students Use Mobile Phones at School?"



1) Complete the following dialogue:

أزهر الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢

- Alaa** What is your favourite sport?
Ehab ①
Alaa ② ?
Ehab I like it because of Mohammed Salah.
Alaa ③ ?
Ehab He plays for Liverpool.
Alaa ④
Ehab It is a famous English team.

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

أزهر الجيزة ٢٠٢٢

The Romans spoke a language called Latin and they first took it to the country they called Britannia almost two thousand years ago. However, the English language came from Germany when people called Saxons arrived 500 years later. Soon the land of the Angels became known as England and the English have been using and misusing foreign words ever since. For example, words like cake, eggs, and happy all came from old Norse, which was the language spoken by the Vikings who came to England a few years after the Angels. However, many more English words came from the French who arrived in 1066. Unlike the poor people who continued speaking English, all the rich and powerful people spoke French. That's why there are so many words in English with similar meaning.

Answer the following questions:

- Where did the English language come from?
.....
- How long ago did the Romans take Latin to Britannia?
.....
- What did the land of the Angels become known as?
.....

Choose the correct answer:

- The Angels came to England the Vikings.
 a. during b. before c. after d. while
- After 1066, the rich and powerful people spoke in England.
 a. German b. French c. English d. Saxon

3. Translate into Arabic:

أزهر القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

It's time to work hard to achieve your ambition.

.....

Translate into English:

فاز نجيب محفوظ، الكاتب المصري بجائزة نوبل عام ١٩٨٨.

.....



Unit 6

Soft Skills VS. Hard Skills

Learning
Outcomes

Reading

differentiate between hard skills (technical abilities) and soft skills (personal qualities), give examples of soft and hard skills. understand why soft skills are harder to develop but are just as important.

Listening

identify key personal qualities like creativity, flexibility, and reliability in audio tracks.

Speaking

discuss the importance of skills for future careers, discuss personal qualities and their relevance in a professional context in role-playing scenarios.

Writing

write a descriptive essay on a topic like a memorable trip. Use adjectival relative clauses correctly.

Language

Correctly use defining and non-defining relative clauses in different settings.



Unit 6 Soft Skills VS. Hard Skills

Lessons 1 Soft Skills VS. Hard Skills 2 Radio Debate



Key Vocabulary

creative (adj)	مبدع	hard skills (n)	مهارات مكتسبة	cooperative (adj)	متعاون
ambitious (adj)	طموح	soft skills (n)	مهارات شخصية	creativity (n)	إبداع
essential (adj)	أساسي / جوهري	leadership (n)	قيادة	measure (n/v)	قياس / إجراء / يقيس
resilient (adj)	مرن	brilliant (adj)	بارع / رائع	measurable (adj)	ملحوظ / يمكن قياسه
reliable (adj)	موثوق به	expertise (n)	خبرة / اختصاص	vital (adj)	حيوي
time management (n)	إدارة الوقت	debate (n/v)	مناظرة / يناقش	performance (n)	أداء

Main Vocabulary

collaborate (v)	يتعاون	specific (adj)	محدد	employer (n)	صاحب العمل
management (n)	إدارة	quality (n)	جودة / سمة	employee (n)	موظف
workplace (n)	مكان العمل	personal (adj)	شخصي	personality (n)	شخصية
certificate (n)	شهادة	organized (adj)	منظم	respectful (adj)	محترم (للاخرين)
interact (v)	يتفاعل	flexible (adj)	مرن	smart (adj)	ذكي / وسيم
panic (n/v)	ذعر / يذعر	adapt (v)	يتأقلم	land (v)	يجد وظيفة
technical (adj)	تقني	imagination (n)	خيال	smoothly (adv)	بسهولة
abilities (v)	قدرات	teamwork (n)	عمل جماعي	handle (n/v)	مقبض / يتعامل
balance (n/v)	توازن / يوازن	responsible (adj)	مسئول	conflict (n)	صراع / خلاف
fix (v)	يصلح	set (n/v)	مجموعة / يحدد	professionally (adv)	بإحترافية
problem-solving	حل المشكلات	difference (n)	إختلاف	support (n/v)	دعم / يدعم
programmer (n)	مبرمج	knowledge (n)	معرفة	career (n)	حياة مهنية
long-term (adj)	طويل المدى	training (n)	تدريب	advance (n/v)	تقدم / يتقدم
suffer (v)	يعانى	affect (v)	يؤثر	purpose (n)	غرض / هدف
attitude (n)	موقف / اتجاه	involve (v)	يتورط / يتضمن	improve (v)	يتحسن / يحسن
emotional (adj)	عاطفي	intelligence (n)	ذكاء	trust (n/v)	ثقة / يثق
artist (n)	فنان	prove (v)	يثبت	perfect (adj)	رائع

Collocations

land a job	يحصل على وظيفة	make the difference	يشكل فارق
go wrong	يفشل	do their job	يقوم بمهمتهم
write perfect code	يبتكر كود مثالي	get hired	يتم توظيفه
solve problems	يحل المشاكل	get angry	يغضب
develop soft skills	يكتسب مهارات شخصية	support one another	يدعم بعضهم البعض
help the team succeed	يساعد الفريق على النجاح	focus on both skill sets	يركز على مجموعتي المهارات

Expressions & Prepositions

working in team	العمل في جماعة	adapt to	يتأقلم على
on the other hand	ومن ناحية أخرى	depend on	يعتمد على
highly-skilled	ماهر للغاية	apply for	يتقدم لوظيفة
interact with	يتفاعل مع	run smoothly	يسير بسلاسة
key to success	سر النجاح	handle conflicts	يتعامل مع الصراعات
non-artistic jobs	وظائف غير فنية	long-term success	نجاح على المدى الطويل
technical knowledge	المعرفة التقنية	prepare for	يستعد لـ
technical abilities	القدرات التقنية	in short	باختصار
technical expertise	الخبرة التقنية		

Definitions

soft skills	مهارات شخصية	▶ a person's way of thinking, feeling, or behaving; their outlook or approach
leadership	قيادة	▶ the ability to guide, inspire, and influence others toward a common goal
brilliant	بارع / لامع	▶ exceptionally intelligent, skilled, or impressive
reliable	موثوق به	▶ trustworthy and consistently good in quality or performance
measurable	ملحوظ / قابل للقياس	▶ able to be measured or quantified in some way
expertise	خبرة / اختصاص	▶ relating to specialized knowledge, especially in science, engineering, or technology
ambitious	طموح	▶ having a strong desire to succeed or achieve something important
cooperative	متعاون	▶ willing to work with others and help as part of a team
resilient	مرن	▶ able to recover quickly from difficulties or challenges
vital	حيوي	▶ very important or necessary; something you must have

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
measurable	ملحوظ / قابل للقياس	quantifiable/ observable/ noticeable	immeasurable / incalculable / unclear
cooperative	متعاون	supportive/ collaborative/ helpful	stubborn / uncooperative
brilliant	بارع / لامع	intelligent/ exceptional/ remarkable	dull/ ordinary/ average
creative	مبدع	innovative/ imaginative	conventional/ predictable
essential	أساسي / جوهري	necessary/ crucial/ vital	unnecessary/ optional
reliable	موثوق به	trustworthy/ dependable	unreliable/ irresponsible
resilient	مرن	flexible/ adaptable / strong	fragile / weak / vulnerable
vital	حيوي	crucial / necessary / crucial	unnecessary / minor / trivial
ambitious	طموح	aspiring / determined / motivated	lazy / unmotivated/ aimless
flexible	مرن	adaptable / resilient / adjustable	rigid / fixed / stiff
long-term	طويل المدى	sustainable/ permanent / lasting	short-term / temporary/ brief

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
cooperate	يتعاون cooperation	تعاون cooperative
create	يبدع creativity	إبداع creative
measure	يقيس measurement	قياسات measurable
rely	يعتمد reliability	اعتمادية reliable
lead	يقود leadership	قيادة leading



Language Notes

Notice the Difference

ambitious (adj)	طموح (شخص)	ambition (n)	الطموح
resilient	مرن	resilience	مرونة
adapt	يتأقلم	adopt	يتبنى
employee	موظف	employer	صاحب العمل
respectful	محترم (يحترم الناس)	respectable	محترم (جدير بالاحترام)
quality	جودة / سمة	quantity	كمية
certificate	شهادة (ورقية)	degree	شهادة (درجة علمية)
affect	يؤثر	effect	تأثير
success	نجاح	successful	ناجح
apply for	يتقدم لوظيفة	apply in (person)	يتقدم (طريقة التقديم)
succeed in	ينجح في	manage to	ينجح في

• employ / employment / employee / employer

employ	يوظف	The company decided to employ more workers.
employee	موظف	The employee asked for a day off.
employer	صاحب العمل	The employer offered better salaries this year.
employment	توظيف / عمل	She found employment in a bank.
employable	صالح للتوظيف	He has many skills that make him employable .

• job / career / profession / work

job	وظيفة محددة	She got a new job as a teacher.
work	عمل (عام، قد يكون وظيفة أو جهد)	He has a lot of work to do today.
career	مسار مهني (حياة وظيفية طويلة)	She built a successful career in medicine.
profession	مهنة (تتطلب مؤهلات أو تدريب خاص)	Teaching is a noble profession .

certificate, degree & grade

- certificate** شهادة (إتمام دورة أو تدريب) ▶ She received a **certificate** in English from the language center
- degree** درجة علمية (جامعية أو عليا) ▶ He has a **degree** in engineering.
- grade** درجة (علامة التقييم) ▶ he got a high **grade** in mathematics

respected / respectable / respectful

- respect** يحترم / يقدر ▶ We should always **respect** the rules.
- respect** احترام / تقدير ▶ You should always show **respect** to your teachers.
- respectable** محترم (يستحق الاحترام، ذو مكانة) ▶ He comes from a **respectable** family.
- respected** محترم (محبوب ويحظى باحترام الآخرين) ▶ She is a highly **respected** doctor.
- respectful** مؤدب / مظهر للاحترام ▶ The child was very **respectful** to his elders.

hard skills / soft skills

- hard skills** مهارات تقنية/عملية (يمكن قياسها) ▶ Coding is one of the most important **hard skills**.
- soft skills** مهارات شخصية/اجتماعية ▶ Good communication is a valuable **soft skill**.

المهارات الفنية والشخصية

Hard skills & Soft skills

المهارات الفنية والتقنية

technical abilities acquired through education and training
القدرات التقنية التي يتم اكتسابها من خلال التعليم والتدريب

include

degree or certificate	درجة أو شهادة
machine operation	تشغيل الآلة
accounting	المحاسبة
data analysis	تحليل البيانات
proficiency in a foreign language	اجادة لغة أجنبية
typing speed	سرعة الكتابة
computer programming	برمجة الحاسوب
proficiency in software	الكفاءة في البرمجيات
budgeting	الميزانية
copywriting	تأليف الإعلانات
experience with certain platforms	خبرة مع منصات معينة

المهارات الشخصية

interpersonal skills or people skills, are non-technical skills related to how individuals interact, communicate, and work with others
المهارات الشخصية أو مهارات التعامل مع الآخرين، هي مهارات غير تقنية تتعلق بكيفية تفاعل الأفراد وتواصلهم وعملهم مع الآخرين

include

communication	التواصل
flexibility	المرونة
leadership	القيادة
creativity	الإبداع
patience	الصبر
decision-making	صنع القرار
problem solving abilities	قدرات حل المشكلات
teamwork	العمل الجماعي
adaptability	القدرة على التكيف
time management	إدارة الوقت
emotional intelligence	ذكاء عاطفي
work ethic	أخلاقيات العمل



" SOFT SKILLS VS. HARD"

Before you start: ☺ Think and discuss in pairs:

Reading

1) Answer the following questions.

1. Can you think of a skill you learned at school and a skill you learned outside of school? How are they different?
2. Do you think personal qualities like teamwork and communication are as important as technical knowledge? Explain your opinion.



2) Read the following article

When **applying for** a job or preparing for the future, it's important to understand the difference between **soft skills**⁽¹⁾ and **hard skills**⁽²⁾. Both are necessary for success, but they serve different purposes.

Hard skills are the technical **abilities**⁽³⁾ or knowledge you learn through education or **training**⁽⁴⁾. For example, being able to use a computer program, speak another language, or **fix** a machine are all hard skills. These are often **measurable**⁽⁵⁾ and prove with **certificates**⁽⁶⁾, tests, or examples of work.



- (١) مهارات شخصية
- (٢) مهارات مكتسبة
- (٣) قدرات
- (٤) تدريب
- (٥) ملحوظ
- (٦) شهادة
- (٧) يوثق
- (٨) قيادة
- (٩) يقيس
- (١٠) بارع
- (١١) اداء
- (١٢) خبرة
- (١٣) موثوق
- (١٤) بسلاسة

Soft skills, on the other hand, are **personal qualities** that **affect**⁽⁷⁾ how you work and **interact** with others. These include communication, **teamwork**, **time management**, **problem-solving**, and **leadership**⁽⁸⁾. Unlike hard skills, soft skills are more difficult to **measure**⁽⁹⁾, but they are just as important in the **workplace**.

For example, a **brilliant**⁽¹⁰⁾ programmer might **write perfect code**, but if they can't explain their ideas to others or work well in a team, their **performance**⁽¹¹⁾ could **suffer**. Many employers say that while hard skills can be taught, soft skills are harder to develop because they **involve personality, attitude, and emotional intelligence**.

Today, companies not only look for technical **expertise**⁽¹²⁾ but they also want employees who can **collaborate**, solve problems, and **adapt to** change. Being smart or highly skilled isn't enough; you also need to be **respectful, reliable**⁽¹³⁾, and able to work well with others.

A workplace runs **smoothly**⁽¹⁴⁾ when people communicate clearly, handle conflicts professionally, and support one another.

These **qualities make the difference** between someone who simply **does their job** and someone who helps the whole team succeed.

Hard Skills

In short, hard skills help you get hired, but soft skills help you grow in your **career**. You might land a job because of your technical abilities, but you'll keep it—and **advance**—because of how well you work with others.

That's why developing both is **key to long-term success**. Whether you're just starting your career or looking to improve, focusing on both skill sets will prepare you for a stronger future.

Answer the following questions:

1. What is the difference between hard skills and soft skills?
2. Why are soft skills important in the workplace?
3. Give two examples of soft skills mentioned in the text.
4. Why do employers look for a balance of both skill types?
5. Which skills are easier to teach, according to employers?



Listening

Essential ⁽¹⁾ **qualities** in the world of work. There are jobs where you need to have a **specific** ⁽²⁾ skill or **personal** quality. But there are many personal qualities that are useful in almost any job. For example, it's always important to be **organized** ⁽³⁾, i.e. to plan things carefully and know exactly what you're doing. It's also important to be **flexible** ⁽⁴⁾ so that you **adapt** to changing situations. Being **creative** ⁽⁵⁾ isn't just a quality that artists and writers need.

It's essential in any job where you need **imagination** ⁽⁶⁾ to think of new ideas or solutions to problems. **Working in teams** is always important. So, it's good if you are **cooperative** ⁽⁷⁾ and like and creative working with other people. It's **vital** that you are **reliable** and **responsible** too so that people know they can **depend on** you. It also helps if you are calm and **resilience** ⁽⁸⁾ so that you don't **panic** or get angry when things start to go wrong.

And finally, it's okay to be **ambitious** ⁽⁹⁾ and to want to be a big success in your job.



- ١) جوهري
- ٢) محدد
- ٣) منظم
- ٤) مرن
- ٥) مبدع
- ٦) خيالي
- ٧) متعاون
- ٨) مرونة
- ٩) طموح

انتظروا!!!!

العمالة

كتاب مراجعة العمالة
لنصف الثاني الثاني





Exercise Ph

Key Vocabulary

1. skills are personal qualities that affect how you work with others. **SB R-2**
 a. Hard b. Soft c. Technical d. Measurable
2. The ability to fix a machine is an example of a skill. **SB R-2**
 a. soft b. social c. emotional d. hard
3. Being able to work well in a team is a key of skill. **SB R-2**
 a. teamwork b. leadership c. programming d. mechanical
4. Hard skills are often through education or training. **SB R-2**
 a. ignored b. learned c. hidden d. forgotten
5. Employers value soft skills because they help employees with others. **SB R-2**
 a. compete b. hide c. interact d. argue
6. is the ability to plan and use your time effectively. **SB R-2**
 a. Debate b. Leadership c. Programming d. Time management
1. He has a very mind and always comes up with new and innovative ideas.
 a. predictable b. creative c. ordinary d. boring
2. Water is for all forms of life on Earth.
 a. unnecessary b. optional c. vital d. insignificant
3. In technical jobs, skills like coding and engineering are very important.
 a. personal b. leadership c. soft d. hard
4. The project was successful because all the team members were and worked well together.
 a. cooperative b. resistible c. uncooperative d. isolated
5. She is very and dreams of becoming a film star.
 a. measurable b. unmotivated c. ambitious d. lazy
6. Despite the difficulties, she remained.....and continued working towards her goals.
 a. resilient b. weak c. sensitive d. fragile
7. Artists use their to create new, exciting works of art.
 a. panic b. creativity c. management d. employer
8. Her in digital marketing made her a significant member of the company.
 a. expertise b. weakness c. ignorance d. experiment
9. Good communication and teamwork are examples of.....skills , which are important for success in the workplace.
 a. academic b. hard c. technical d. soft
10. He is a/anemployee who always delivers high-quality work on time .
 a. unreliable b. untrustworthy c. unstable d. reliable
11. The company set goals to track progress and evaluate success.
 a. invisible b. measurable c. unimportant d. unclear
12. Effective is key to motivating team members and guiding them toward achieving common goals.
 a. isolation b. neighborhood c. leadership d. conflict
13. His ideas in the meeting impressed everyone in the room.
 a. dull b. poor c. brilliant d. terrible
14. A good internet connection is for online learning.
 a. optional b. essential c. insignificant d. irrelevant

15. The scientist used special tools to the temperature of the liquid during the experiment.

- a. adopt b. avoid c. appreciate d. measure



Exercise 04 Main Vocabulary

16. In group projects, it is important to with others to achieve the best results.

- a. panic b. ignore c. collaborate d. compete

17. Please provide a example to illustrate your point more clearly.

- a. ambitious b. specific c. whole d. vague

18. The is responsible for ensuring the safety and well-being of all workers.

- a. employer b. employee c. client d. guest

19. The manager admired her in completing the project ahead of schedule.

- a. failure b. absence c. delay d. performance

20. The of the company will receive annual bonuses based on their performance.

- a. owner b. client c. employee d. employer

21. After completing the course, he received a as proof of his achievement.

- a. certificate b. license c. degree d. grade

22. She is very , always keeping her desk neat and her tasks well-planned.

- a. measurable b. essential c. messy d. organized

23. A attitude toward others is essential for good relationships in the workplace.

- a. rude b. respectful c. selfish d. critical

24. In modern classrooms, students can.....with learning tools such as digital whiteboards and tablets.

- a. install b. avoid c. interact d. compete

25. The new job offers a....schedule, allowing employees to work from home when needed.

- a. flexible b. fixed c. boring d. strict

26. Ali is , always coming up with practical solutions to complex problems.

- a. vital b. loyal c. slow d. smart

27. During the emergency, it's important not to , but to stay calm and focused.

- a. relax b. panic c. adapt d. smile

28. In today's fast-paced world, we should to new technologies.

- a. delay b. reject c. adapt d. ignore

29. After years of searching, she finally managed to a job at her dream company.

- a. make b. adapt c. lose d. land

30. The event went..... , and everyone had a wonderful time without any issues.

- a. roughly b. smoothly c. absolutely d. specifically

31. The mechanic took two hours to the car.

- a. fix b. affect c. interact d. depend

32. Scientists their ideas with experiments .

- a. serve b. delay c. prove d. panic

33. Her in problem-solving and communication make her an excellent team leader.

- a. abilities b. limitations c. weaknesses d. celebrations

34. Success in any project requires good..... and collaboration among all team members.

- a. independence b. isolation c. teamwork d. competition

35. She knows how to difficult situations and always remains calm under pressure.
 a. handle b. panic c. delay d. serve
36. As a manager, it is your job to be for making key decisions in the company.
 a. successful b. ambitious c. responsible d. respectful
37. We need to a clear plan for the project before starting.
 a. avoid b. set c. remove d. overlook
38. Our company offers to employees by providing training programs and workshops.
 a. support b. criticism c. conflict d. pressure
39. A skilled writes code to develop software applications.
 a. writer b. designer c. programmer d. manager
40. Honesty is the best in a friend.
 a. quantity b. quality c. equality d. equity
41. The company has developed a plan to ensure sustainable growth over the next decade.
 a. temporary b. short-term c. terrible d. long-term
42. To in your career, it is important to keep learning new skills.
 a. advance b. slow c. decrease d. quit
43. He began to from anxiety after working long hours without a break.
 a. improve b. succeed c. suffer d. relax
44. The project will several departments working together to complete the task.
 a. inherit b. land c. consist d. involve
45. To be is to be able to recover quickly from difficulties or challenges.
 a. resilient b. vital c. reliable d. brilliant
46. The ability to guide, inspire, and influence others toward a common goal is
 a. certificate b. creativity c. imagination d. leadership



Exercise on Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

47. A small act of kindness can the difference in someone's life.
 a. make b. take c. do d. have
48. Good communication is key successful team collaboration.
 a. after b. back c. to d. for
49. Everything seemed to be good until things began to wrong in the last hour.
 a. make b. join c. go d. do
50. The project was a success; short, we met all deadlines and exceeded expectations.
 a. on b. of c. in d. from
51. It's important to stay calm and not angry when faced with difficult situations.
 a. make b. get c. take d. have
52. To be a successful programmer, you need to perfect code.
 a. write b. take c. have d. do
53. She worked hard to get at a top technology company.
 a. tired b. fired c. rejected d. hired
54. You should soft skills such as communication and teamwork.
 a. avoid b. develop c. take d. make



55. It takes time to adapt new working environments and processes.
a. to b. in c. of d. with
56. Employees must be able to interact customers effectively to build trust and loyalty.
a. with b. in c. of d. for
57. She is actively look new opportunities in her field to grow her career.
a. after b. back c. up d. for
58. His political ended when he was found to have been accepting bribes.
a. profession b. career c. work d. job
59. He gets paid a good wage, because he works for a fair
a. employment b. unemployment c. employee d. employer
60. The firm needs an to work as an accountant.
a. employ b. employer c. employee d. employment

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

61. I've asked them not to play their music so loudly, but they're not being very cooperative. The antonym of the word "cooperative" is **SB R-2**
a. stubborn b. reliable c. helpful d. vital e. uncooperative
62. The service produces clear, measurable benefits to people's health. The antonym of the word "measurable" is **SB R-2**
a. immeasurable b. calculable c. ambitious d. incalculable e. essential
63. The company's progress is measurable through sales figures. The synonym of the underlined word "measurable" is **SB R.1**
a. immeasurable b. observable c. unimportant d. invisible e. quantifiable
64. Her presentation was brilliant and everyone praised her for it. The synonym of the underlined word "brilliant" is
a. unimpressive b. ordinary c. intelligent d. remarkable e. dull
65. The artist's work was creative and unique, setting a new trend in the art world. The synonym of the underlined word "creative" is
a. traditional b. unoriginal c. conventional d. innovative e. imaginative
66. A good internet connection is essential for remote work. The synonym of the underlined word "essential" is
a. vital b. necessary c. unimportant d. unnecessary e. optional
67. She is a very reliable employee, always finishing her tasks on time. The antonym of the underlined word "reliable" is
a. unreliable b. trustworthy c. dependable d. irresponsible e. responsible
68. She is an ambitious person who is always striving for success. The synonym of the underlined word "ambitious" is
a. motivated b. unmotivated c. aspiring d. aimless e. lazy
69. The company has developed a long-term strategy for growth and sustainability. The antonym of the underlined word "long-term" is
a. short-term b. temporary c. lasting d. sustainable e. fixed
70. His brilliant performance in the competition earned him the first place. The antonym of the underlined word "brilliant" is
a. dull b. intelligent c. exceptional d. ordinary e. remarkable
71. The designer came up with a creative idea. The antonym of the underlined word "creative" is
a. important b. conventional c. predictable d. innovative e. imaginative

ضمائر الوصل

Relative clauses

	who = that	فعل	1 بمعنى (الذى / التى) وتحل محل الفاعل العاقل (يأتى بعدها فعل) ولا يمكن حذفها. ► I met Ali who is my close friend
عاقل	who = that	فاعل	1 بمعنى (الذى / التى) وتحل محل المفعول العاقل (يأتى بعدها فاعل ويمكن حذفها). ► The person, who she's visiting, is her uncle.
	whom = that	فاعل	1 بمعنى (الذى / التى) تحل محل المفعول العاقل ويمكن حذفها ولا بد أن يأتى بعدها فاعل. ► The man whom you saw in the party is my brother.
غير عاقل أو مكان (يعامل كشيء)	which = that	فعل	1 بمعنى (الذى / التى) وتحل محل فاعل غير عاقل. ► I bought a bag which is new.
	which = that	فاعل	1 بمعنى (الذى / التى) وتحل محل مفعول غير عاقل (ويمكن حذفها) ► The food which you cook tastes delicious.
مكان أو شيء يستخدم كمكان	where = (in - at) which	فاعل	1 بمعنى "حيث" وتعود على المكان ولا بد أن يأتى بعدها فاعل (لا يأتى بعدها فعل). ► This is the room where (in which) I sleep. ► This is the room which I sleep in.
اسم عاقل أو غير عاقل (عاقل)	whose	اسم عاقل أو غير عاقل (عاقل)	1 تحل محل الملكية للعاقل وغير العاقل ويتبعها اسم (أى لا يأتى بعدها فعل مطلقاً). ► I visit Nada whose father is an engineer.
زمن	when = (on - in - at) which	فاعل	1 بمعنى "حين / حينما" ولا بد أن يأتى بعدها فاعل أو مفعول. ► Friday is the day when (on which) we get up late. ► June is the month when (in which) we don't go to school.
فعل	what	فاعل	► Do you understand what I am saying? ► We'd better decide what we need to buy.
عاقل غير عاقل	that	فاعل	1 لا تستخدم (that) فى الجمل الاعتراضية بعد (,): ► Cairo, which is the capital, is very crowded. 2 هناك حالات لا بد أن نستخدم فيها (that): 1 إذا كانت أي من الكلمات التالية تصف الاسم الذي يعود عليه ضمير الوصل. all - any - some - every - only - many - much - few ► I lent her all the money that she needed. 2 مع صفات التفضيل. ► The fox is the cleverest animal that I have ever seen. 3 إذا كانت تعود على عاقل وغير عاقل فى نفس الوقت. ► I told him about the peoples and the places that I admired.

Omission of relative pronouns

١ يتم حذف كل من (who - which - whom) عندما يملأ مفعول (أي إذا جاء بعدهم فاعل):

★ This is the woman **who** I helped. = This is the woman I helped.

يمكن حذف كل من (who - which) إذا جاء بعدهم فعل في الحالات الآتية:

١ إذا جاء بعدهم فعل مبني للمعلوم وفي هذه الحالة يتم حذف الضمير و (be) ويتبقى (v + ing):

★ The girl **who** is eating ice cream comes first.
= The girl **eating** ice cream comes first.

٢ إذا جاء بعدهم صيغة مبني للمجهول وهنا نحذف أيضا الضمير و (verb to be) ويبقى التصريف الثالث للفعل.

★ The man **who** is called Omar helps the poor.
= The man **called** Omar helps the poor.



Between lines

١ لا بد من تحديد على ما يعود ضمير الوصل و مراعاة حروف الجر كما يلي:

★ I played a **match** with my friends **which** was exciting.

رغم وجود عاقل قبل ضمير الوصل إلا أن ضمير الوصل يعود على المباراة.

★ The boys in the class, **who** were listening, were clever.

رغم وجود مكان قبل ضمير الوصل إلا أن ضمير الوصل يعود على الشخص.

يمكننا استخدام حرف جر قبل (**which**) مثل (**in - at**)، وتكون هنا مثل (**where**)

★ This is my house **in which** I was born.

★ This is my house **which** I was born **in**.

★ This is my house **where** I was born.

٢ لاحظ الفرق بين **whose / who's**



يأتي بعد **whose** اسم مباشرة بدون **a / an / the**

★ The girl **whose** eyes are blue is my sister.



يأتي بعد **who's** صيغة / اسم / **V + ing / P.P**

★ The boy **who's** running is my cousin.

('s = is)

★ The man **who's** decorated our house is talented.

('s = has)

★ The boy **who's** absent today is my friend.

★ The man **who's** a servant talked to us angrily.

٣ لاحظ أن بعض الأفعال تستخدم كاسم (إذا جاء بعدهم فعل) ويمكن أن نستخدم معهم (**whose**):

play / stay / exports / imports / likes / visit / help / hope / wish / dislikes ...

★ I like Adel Emam **whose** plays are very famous.

★ He is a writer **whose** works are very wonderful.

★ The company **whose** exports are good, will receive a prize.

★ I like the stories **whose** ends are happy.

٤ يمكن فقط استخدام حرف جر قبل **whom / which / whose / what**

★ He didn't ask **for whom** I had voted.

★ This is the city **in which** I live.

★ The boy, **to whose** question I replied, got the full marks.

★ He said something **for which** he should apologize.

٥ لا نستخدم حرف جر قبل (**where - when - who - that**) ولكن يمكن أن يأتي بعد (**who - that**) حرف جر

★ This is my friend **who** I play **with**.

١ يمكن استخدام (to + inf.) بدلا من عبارة الوصل اذا كان ضمير الوصل في الجملة يجعل محل الفاعل مع كلمات مثل:

the first / second / last ...

★ I was **the first** person **who** left the ship. = I was **the first** person **to** leave the ship.

٧ يمكن استخدام (with) بدلا من عبارة الوصل (who have / that have / which have)

★ I live in a flat **which has** four rooms. = I live in a flat **with** four rooms.

٨ نستخدم **which** بدلا من **where** بعد المكان . اذا تم وصف المكان ولم يعبر عن نشاط يحدث داخل مكان و خصوصا مع أفعال مثل :

visit - build - see - recommend - buy - discover

★ This is the restaurant **which** my father recommended.

★ This is the house **which** my uncle has built.

٩ كيفية اختيار حرف الجر المناسب:

★ He said something (**for** - at - on) which he should apologize.

في المثال نختار **for** لوجود كلمة **apologize** آخر الجملة.

★ He said something (for - on - **about**) which I was excited.

في المثال نختار **about** لوجود كلمة **excited** آخر الجملة.

★ He said something (for - **with** - on) which I was pleased.

في المثال نختار **with** لوجود كلمة **pleased** آخر الجملة.

★ She went to a meeting (in - on - **at**) which she learnt how to read and write.

ننظر للكلمة التي تسبق حرف الجر نجد انها **meeting** تأخذ حرف جر **at**.

★ Can you tell me the reason **for which** (**why**) you were absent yesterday?

يمكننا استخدام حرف جر قبل (**which**) مثل (**for**) وتكون هنا بمعنى (**why**)

❌ لا نستخدم **that** بعد **comma** و لا بعد حرف جر

❌ لا نضع حرف جر قبل **who, that, where, when**

❌ ممكن وضع حرف جر قبل **what, whom, which, whose**

❌ نستخدم **which** للزمان أو المكان بدلا من **when, where** في حالة وجود حرف جر قبلها أو بعدها



1. Mr. Ali, (**who** - that) works with us, traveled to Alex.
2. Fayoum, (**which** - that) is located in Egypt, is a beautiful city.
3. This is the place in (**which** - that) he was born.
4. Ali is the best one / only one (who - **that**) won a prize.
5. Do you have any questions (which - **that**) need answering.
6. All the money (which - **that**) he had, could not save him.
7. The reason (which - **why**) he came late is unknown.
8. Did you understand (**what** - that) he explained?
9. I have some problems (which - **that**) don't make me sleep.
10. The boy, (who driving - **driving** - driven) the car is called Ali.
11. Did you understand the lesson (what - **that**) he explained?
12. Monday is the day (in - at - **on**) which I meet my friends.
13. 2000 is the year (**in** - at - on) which my son was born.
14. He wrote a novel about the people & things (who - which - **that**) he loves.
15. He kept talking during the lesson, (**which** - that) made the teacher angry.
16. The company, (which he works - where he works for - **he works for**), is in Giza.
17. Mr Ahmed, (**a famous man** - who a famous man), came to Beni Suef.
18. The boy, (who attacked - **attacked** - attacking) in Cairo, was killed.
19. I went to a meeting (**at** - on - of) which I explained my point of view.
20. I read an article (**which** - in which) expresses the writer's opinion of globalization.



يا تركا...ك يا تركا...ك
حاول تفهم وكتيب سبب الاختيار



Exercise 08 Language Level I

1. Ahmed is the student got full marks. SB R2
 a. which b. when c. where d. who
2. The new building, is solar- powered, opened last October. SB R2
 a. that b. who c. which d. where
3. Dogs are animals are loyal to their owners. SB R2
 a. who b. which c. where d. when
4. Yara, father was a teacher, is a clever doctor. SB R2
 a. whose b. who c. which d. that
5. We must protect the glory we inherited from our ancestors. SB R2
 a. who b. when c. where d. which
6. The engineer designed the bridge is from Egypt. SB R2
 a. which b. who c. where d. when
7. My phone, has a cracked screen, still works well. SB R2
 a. that b. who c. which d. where
8. The footballer took drugs has been banned from playing again. أخميم ٢٠٢٤
 a. which b. whom c. where d. who
9. People work is difficult must get enough sleep. إسنا ٢٠٢٤
 a. whose b. who c. whom d. which
10. I saw the young lady hair is yellow. العياط ٢٠٢٤
 a. who b. whose c. whom d. which
11. I don't know the man has offered to help you. المراغة ٢٠٢٤
 a. who's b. whom c. who d. whose
12. I have a friend father works in the airport. الزقازيق ٢٠٢٤
 a. that b. whom c. who d. whose
13. Charlie Chaplin, became a very rich man, was from a poor family. صان الحجر ٢٠٢٤
 a. where b. who c. when d. which
14. Greece is the country held the first Olympic Games. الصالحية ٢٠٢٤
 a. where b. whom c. which d. whose
15. Who do you think the inventor invention was the best? ببا ٢٠٢٤
 a. whom b. who c. which d. whose
16. We visited my uncle in the new factory he works in. سوهاج ٢٠٢٤ دمياط ٢٠٢٤
 a. where b. when c. which d. who
17. I visited my uncle in the new factory he works. منية النصر ٢٠٢٤
 a. where b. which c. when d. who
18. I met the genius boy skills are amazing. المنيا ٢٠٢٤
 a. that b. whom c. who d. whose
19. This is the girl brother sits next to me at school. البحر الأحمر ٢٠٢٤
 a. who b. where c. whose d. when
20. Summer is the season we go on holiday. العجمي ٢٠٢٤
 a. where b. which c. who d. when
21. I went to the shop sells toys for children aged between 3 and 9. نقادة ٢٠٢٤
 a. who b. where c. whom d. which

22. The footballer, face is often on TV, scored three goals today. ٢٠٢٤ الاسماعيلية
 a. whose b. that c. whom d. who
23. You must revise the composition you wrote yesterday; it's full of mistakes. LM
 a. who b. what c. when d. that
24. Oliver Twist, we read last year, is an interesting book. ٢٠٢٣ ههيا
 a. who b. which c. whom d. when
25. Is that the woman diamond ring was stolen? ٢٠٢٤ البدرشين
 a. whose b. who c. where d. which
26. The company, my uncle works for, is based in Aswan. ٢٠٢٣ ادارة الشهداء
 a. who b. where c. whose d. which



Exercise ٥٨ Language Level 2

27. His son, came first, was honoured by his school. ٢٠٢٤ ملوى
 a. which b. who c. what d. that
28. This is the engineer designs are so wonderful. ٢٠٢٤ ابونست
 a. who b. which c. whose d. whom
29. Aswan, which is in the south of Egypt, is my father was born. LM
 a. where b. which c. when's d. where's
30. Belal is pleased with his new mobile last week. ٢٠٢٣ القوسية أسبوت
 a. which bought b. he bought c. which buys d. who bought
31. My friend Fahmy, with I shared a flat, owns a car. ٢٠٢٤ العياط
 a. that b. whose c. which d. whom
32. The athlete, dream came true, was over the moon. ٢٠٢٤ قها
 a. who's b. that c. whose d. whom
33. Mr. Ahmad, teaches us English, is very friendly. ٢٠٢٤ LM غرب الزقازيق ٢٠٢٤ شين الكوم
 a. who b. that c. whom d. what
34. Luxor is a city is famous across the world. ٢٠٢٤ الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤ الجيرة منازل
 a. which b. where c. whose d. what
35. I admire the teacher I borrowed this wonderful book. ٢٠٢٤ ميت سلسيل
 a. who b. from who c. whom d. from whom
36. The person, wishes have come true, is very happy. ٢٠٢٤ شرين
 a. who b. whose c. whom d. who's
37. The house, I was born, has just been demolished. ٢٠٢٤ منوف
 a. whose b. in where c. in that d. in which
38. Alexandria is a city attracts millions of tourists every year. ٢٠٢٤ ديرب نجم
 a. where b. that's c. which d. whom
39. Our flat, is on the fifth floor, overlooks the Nile. ٢٠٢٤ البلينا
 a. which b. that c. whose d. where
40. The police arrested the thief about you told me yesterday. ٢٠٢٤ ملوى
 a. whose b. that c. whom d. who
41. I don't believe she says; it isn't reasonable. LM
 a. which b. that c. whom d. what
42. Today, we have a very special guest a charity activist from Egypt. ٢٠٢٤ العريش
 a. who b. who's c. whose d. whom

43. These are the two men helped us solve the problem.

- a. whom b. which c. who've d. who's

LM

44. Did you see my mother bought from the new mall?

- a. who b. what c. that d. which

LM

45. He wrote a novel about the people and things he loves.

- a. that b. which c. who d. whose

46. This is the book the main character is killed.

- a. which b. that c. in which d. to which

47. It's said that the police found the poison the victim was killed.

- a. which b. with that c. that d. by which

48. The person, he is negotiating, is my boss.

- a. to whom b. with whom c. with who d. with that

49. The person, from I bought the camera, moved to Cairo.

- a. whose b. who c. that d. whom

50. Monday is the day which I meet my friends.

- a. on b. at c. in d. by

51. Mr Al Daifi, , came from Beni Suef.

- a. who famous man b. a famous man
c. who a famous man d. that is a famous man

52. It is a club many important people belong.

- a. into which b. for which c. when d. to which



Exercise 04

Language Level 3

53. The novels by Dickens are fantastic

- a. wrote b. were written c. which wrote d. written

العياط ٢٠٢٤

54. All my friends like the food in this restaurant.

- a. served b. is served c. which it is served d. serves

طامية ٢٠٢٤

55. I'm hoping to study science at university, I'd like to work as a research assistant.

- a. after which b. whose c. after that d. which

الابراهيمية ٢٠٢٤

56. Ahmad made a suggestion we all objected.

- a. which b. on which c. that d. to which

57. Ten o'clock is the time I go to bed at.

- a. when b. where c. which d. whom

ببا ٢٠٢٤

58. The house roof I was standing was my friend's.

- a. where b. on which c. that d. on whose

بسيون ٢٠٢٤

59. She couldn't understand he said.

- a. what b. who c. why d. which

البدرشين ٢٠٢٤

60. Ramadan is the month Muslims fast in.

- a. when b. at which c. whom d. which

ساقلة ٢٠٢٤

61. Adam is a man-made construction built on a water source.

- a. which b. where c. no relative pronoun d. whose

جرجا ٢٠٢٤

62. I like the village I visit every summer.

- a. which b. that c. a & b d. where

قوص ٢٠٢٤

63. The flat, the sea, costs much.

- a. that overlook b. which overlook c. overlooks d. overlooking

المنيا ٢٠٢٤

64. I met a tourist visit to Egypt was amazing. ٢٠٢٤ دمياط
a. who b. where c. whose d. when
65. It is the dress last week. ٢٠٢٤ المنيا
a. which I bought it b. that I bought it c. I bought it d. I bought
66. Saturday, we always play football, is always a busy day for me. ٢٠٢٤ السويس
a. that b. on which c. where d. what
67. I met Dr Hafez, hospital I did the surgery. ٢٠٢٤ فاقوس
a. on which b. in which c. from whom d. in whose
68. Shakespeare was a great English writer plays were performed all over the world. ٢٠٢٤ شرق المحلة
a. whose b. who c. when d. which
69. The exam paper the least mistakes will get the best mark. ٢٠٢٤ اسوان ٢٠٢٤ بركة السبع
a. whose b. with c. which d. that
70. I went to buy a new bag, but I didn't find I wanted. ٢٠٢٤ شمالوط
a. whose b. who c. whom d. what
71. The school, , will be provided with the latest technology. ٢٠٢٤ كوم حمادة
a. where I learn b. which I learn c. I learn d. which learns
72. This is the book I told you about the last time I met you. ٢٠٢٤ قويسنا
a. it b. no word c. what d. that
73. Is this the city is smart and sustainable? ٢٠٢٤ قلين
a. who b. where c. which d. in which
74. The people in this area suffer from noise. ٢٠٢٤ طامية
a. which live b. who living c. living d. lives
75. The road the two villages is very narrow! ٢٠٢٤ البوقرقاص
a. join b. joining c. which is joined d. who is joining
76. The person I received the letter is the manager of the company. ٢٠٢٤ فاقوس
a. in whose b. who c. from which d. from whom
77. My pen-friend, from America, loves Mohamed Salah very much. ٢٠٢٤ منقلاوط
a. who b. whom c. whose d. who's
78. The boy, in the garden, is my son. ٢٠٢٤ العياط
a. who playing b. plays c. who play d. who plays
79. People other opinions are more decent than others. ٢٠٢٤ البدرشين
a. respecting b. who respects c. that respects d. are respecting
80. Great novels by Nagib Mahfouz, have been made into films. ٢٠٢٤ دكرنس
a. writing b. were written c. written d. which wrote
81. I went to the grocer's I bought what I need. ٢٠٢٤ السادات
a. when b. who c. which d. where
82. This is Khaled last week. ٢٠٢٤ روض الفرج
a. whose car hits b. that car hit him c. who the car hits d. whom the car hit
83. This is the man house we rent our new flat. ٢٠٢٤ شرق الاسكندرية
a. whose b. in which c. in whose d. which
84. I saw the wonderful watch she bought yesterday. LM
a. no word b. when c. who d. what
85. I like the worker painting my flat now. LM
a. who's b. whom c. who d. whose

86. What bad news! The secretary, I work, has had a terrible accident. LM
 a. with whose b. whom c. with whom d. that
87. Which of the following is grammatically incorrect? LM
 a. I like the child with blue eyes. b. I like the child whose eyes are blue.
 c. I like the child who's eyes are blue. d. I like the child. His eyes are blue.
88. I admire all the music by Omar Khairat. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
 a. wrote b. written c. was written d. which written
89. He stayed up late last night; reason he came ten minutes late. بني سويف ٢٠٢٣
 a. for which b. which c. that d. for that
90. Several children with disabilities suffer from paralysis. سنبلأوين ٢٠٢٣
 a. were born b. are born c. born d. was born
91. The girl blonde hair is my friend Rana. سنبلأوين ٢٠٢٣
 a. who b. whose c. with d. who have
92. The programmes, on TV these days, aim at solving the people's problems.
 a. which shown b. shown c. showing d. show them
93. Here's the e-mail to me from the bank. I've been accepted for the job.
 a. was sent b. had sent c. which sent d. sent
94. The boy in Cairo was killed and became one of the victims.
 a. who attacked b. attacked c. attacking d. that was attacked
95. Many goods, in all over the world, are made in China
 a. which is sold b. which sold c. selling d. sold
96. Abo Omar is the generous man house we had dinner yesterday. قويسنا ٢٠٢٣
 a. who's b. which c. in whose d. whose
97. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct SB R2
 a. The students who passed the exam celebrated.
 b. The students, who passed the exam, celebrated.
 c. The students who passed the exam, celebrated.
 d. The students, who passed the exam celebrated.
98. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct SB R2
 a. The movie, who was directed by Spielberg, won an Oscar.
 b. The movie which was directed by Spielberg, won an Oscar.
 c. The movie, which was directed by Spielberg, won an Oscar.
 d. The movie that was directed by Spielberg won an Oscar.
- Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning.**
1. The movie was boring. It lasted three hours. (which) SB R2
 2. My laptop is very old. It still works well. (which) SB R2
 3. The book was very interesting. I read it last week. (that) SB R2
 4. The students were very noisy. They were in my class. (who) SB R2
 5. I met a girl yesterday. She can speak five languages. (who)
 6. The car is very expensive. It was parked outside my house. (which)
 7. This is the man. His son won the gold medal. (whose)
 8. The hotel is near the beach. We stayed in it last summer. (that)
 9. The teacher is very kind. All the students respect him. (whom)
 10. The picture is very old. It hangs on the wall. (which)
 11. The boy is very clever. He answered all the questions. (who)
 12. I know the woman. Her husband is a famous doctor. (whose)
 13. The story was very funny. Ahmed told me the story. (that)
 14. The man is my uncle. You saw him yesterday. (whom)



Unit
6

Soft Skills VS. Hard Skills



Lessons

3

Skills for Work and Life

4

Hard Skills vs. Soft Skills

Key Vocabulary

adjust ^(v)	يضبط / يعدل / يتأقلم	experience ^(n/v)	خبرة / تجربة / يجرب	compromise ^(n/v)	تسوية / يتنازل
long-term ^(adj)	طويل مدى	teamwork ⁽ⁿ⁾	عمل جماعي	debate ^(n/v)	مناظرة / يناقش
emotional intelligence	ذكاء عاطفي	step out of ^(v)	يخطو خارجا	to-do-list	قائمة مهام

Idioms and their meanings

Idiom	meaning	translation
get your foot in the door	to achieve your first opportunity to enter a business, organization, or profession	يخطو الخطوة الأولى
meet others halfway	to compromise or make concessions with someone to reach an agreement	يصل لخط وسط
to think on your feet	to make quick, smart decisions, especially in unexpected situations	يفكر بسرعة
stay on top of things	to be well-informed and organized about ongoing tasks or situations	يبقي مطلعاً
comfort zone	a situation or environment where one feels safe, secure, and at ease, avoiding risk	دائرة الراحة النفسية

Main Vocabulary

effort ⁽ⁿ⁾	مجهود	practice ^(n/v)	ممارسة / يمارس	vivid ^(adj)	زاهي
design ^(n/v)	تصميم / يصمم	coding ⁽ⁿ⁾	البرمجة	details ⁽ⁿ⁾	تفاصيل
pressure ⁽ⁿ⁾	ضغط	valuable ^(adj)	قيم	sensory ^(adj)	حسي
member ⁽ⁿ⁾	عضو	social ^(adj)	اجتماعي	overview ⁽ⁿ⁾	نظرة / ملخص
interview ^(n/v)	مقابلة / يجري مقابلة	share ^(n/v)	حصة / يشارك	winner ⁽ⁿ⁾	فائز
behave ^(v)	يتصرف	understanding	فهم / متفهم	shine ^(v)	يلمع / يشرق
planner ⁽ⁿ⁾	دفتر لتنظيم الوقت	feelings ⁽ⁿ⁾	مشاعر	bright ^(adj)	لامع
connection ⁽ⁿ⁾	اتصال / صلة	concession ⁽ⁿ⁾	امتياز / تنازل	enrich ^(v)	يثرى
nap ⁽ⁿ⁾	قيلولة	cheer ^(n/v)	ابتهاج / يشجع	wrap ^(v)	يلف
crowd ⁽ⁿ⁾	حشد	podium ⁽ⁿ⁾	منصة التتويج	sweat ^(n/v)	عرق / يتعرق
forehead ⁽ⁿ⁾	مقدمة الرأس	fencing ⁽ⁿ⁾	المبارزة	imagery ⁽ⁿ⁾	تصوير مجازي
tough ^(adj)	صعب / قاسي	boastful ^(adj)	متباهي / متفاخر	figurative ^(adj)	مجازي
pentathlon ⁽ⁿ⁾	دورة اخماسية	proud ^(adj)	فتور	impression ⁽ⁿ⁾	انطباع
symbol ⁽ⁿ⁾	رمز	pride ⁽ⁿ⁾	فخر	aspect ⁽ⁿ⁾	جانب / وجه
champion ⁽ⁿ⁾	بطل رياضي	mood ⁽ⁿ⁾	حالة مزاجية	simile ⁽ⁿ⁾	تشبيه
stadium ⁽ⁿ⁾	استاد	striking ^(adj)	مميز / بارز	metaphor ⁽ⁿ⁾	استعارة
measure ^{(v) (n)}	يقيس / يقياس	needs ⁽ⁿ⁾	احتياجات / حاجات ضرورية	classmate ⁽ⁿ⁾	زميل في الفصل
ignore ^(v)	يتجاهل	argue ^(v)	يجادل / يناقش	behave ^(v)	يتصرف

Collocations

design websites	يصمم مواقع	build strong relationships	يبني علاقات قوية
do math	يقوم بالحسابات	take time and effort	يستغرق وقت ومجهود
stay calm	يبقى هادئاً	grab attention	يجذب الانتباه
join a debate	يلتحق بمناظرة	leave a lasting image	يترك انطباعاً دائماً
enrich the description	يثرى الوصف	make a to-do-list	يعد قائمة مهام

Expressions & Prepositions

job ads	إعلانات وظائف	adjust to	يتأقلم مع
under pressure	تحت الضغط	full of	ملي بـ
in fact	في الواقع	contribute to	يساهم في
in the long term	على المدى الطويل	work on	يعمل على / يطور
emotional intelligence	ذكاء عاطفي	reflect on	يفكر في
real-life experience	خبرات الحياة الحقيقية	thankful for	ممتن لـ
shape future	يشكل المستقبل	move out of	يخرج من
look for	يبحث عن	work on a group project	يعمل في مشروع جماعي
step out of	يخرج من / يترك منطقة	throw away	يرمي / يتخلص من شيء
communication skills	مهارات التواصل	key skill	مهارة أساسية

Definitions

debate	مناقشة / مناظرة	▶ a formal discussion where individuals or groups present opposing viewpoints on a particular topic
compromise	تسوية / حل وسط	▶ to settle a dispute by each side making concessions or to weaken something by accepting less than what was originally desired
long term	على المدى الطويل	▶ future continuing or remaining for a long period of time into the future
adjust	يضبط / يعدل / يتأقلم	▶ to change or modify something to make it more suitable or accurate
teamwork	عمل جماعي	▶ the collaborative effort of a group of people working together to achieve a common goal
simile	تشبيه	▶ a figure of speech that compares two different things using the words "like" or "as."
metaphor	استعارة	▶ a figure of speech that directly compares two unlike things without using "like" or "as."

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
debate	يناضر	debate	مناظرة	debatable	جدلي
adjust	يعدل	adjustment	تعديل	adjustable	قابل للتعديل
experience	يجرب	experience	خبرة	experienced	ذو خبرة
compromise	يتنازل / يصل لحل وسط	compromise	تسوية	compromised	معرض للخطر
understand	يفهم	understanding	فهم	understanding	متفاهم

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
adjust	يعدل	modify / alter / adapt	preserve / maintain / resist
debate	مناظرة / يناقش	discussion / argument / dispute	agreement / harmony / peace
long-term	طويل المدى	extended / enduring / lasting	short-term / temporary / brief
compromise	تسوية / يتنازل	concession / agreement / settlement	extremism / conflict / inflexibility
valuable	قيم	precious / important / worthwhile	Worthless / cheap / insignificant
vivid	زاهي	bright / colorful / lively	dull / faded / pale
comfort zone	دائرة الراحة	safe space / routine / ease	challenge / discomfort zone / risk
enrich	يثرى	enhance / improve / develop	weaken / spoil / reduce
boastful	متباهي	arrogant / proud / conceited	humble / modest



Language Notes

Notice the Difference

member	عضو (نادي / لجنة ...)	organ	عضو (الجسم)
social	اجتماعي (يخص المجتمع)	sociable	اجتماعي (منفتح على الناس)
intelligence	ذكاء	intelligent	ذكي
connection	علاقة / صلة	communication	تواصل
sweat	عرق	sweet	حلوى
simile	تشبيه (باستخدام كلمات التشبيه)	metaphor	استعارة (بدون استخدام أدوات التشبيه)
in the end	في النهاية	at the end of	في نهاية ...

interview / interviewee / interviewer

interview	مقابلة / يجري مقابلة	I have an interview tomorrow.
interviewee	الشخص الذي تجرى معه المقابلة	he interviewee answered all the questions
interviewer	الشخص الذي يجري المقابلة.	The interviewer asked difficult questions.

help

help + object + to + inf.
help + object + inf.

- She helped me to clean the room.
- She helped me clean the room.

انتظروا!!!!

كتاب مراجعة العملاقة
للفصل الثاني الثانوي



"soft skills are more Important"

Before you start: ☺ Think and discuss in pairs:

1) Answer the following questions.

1. What personal qualities do you think are important for success in school or work?
2. Can you think of a time when good communication or teamwork helped solve a problem?

2) Read the following article

In today's world, soft skills are more important than ever. These are the personal and **social** abilities that help us speak clearly, work well with others, solve problems, and **adjust**⁽¹⁾ to new situations. While hard skills show what you know, soft skills show how you use that knowledge. They can often **get your foot in the door**⁽²⁾, but they can also help you succeed **in the long term**⁽³⁾.



- (١) يعدل
- (٢) نتخطو اول خطوة
- (٣) على المدى الطويل
- (٤) نتخرج من
- (٥) دائرة الراحة
- (٦) مناظرة
- (٧) عمل جماعي
- (٨) يصل لتسوية
- (٩) إدارة الوقت
- (١٠) يبقى مطلعاً
- (١١) تفكر سريعاً
- (١٢) ذكاء عاطفي
- (١٣) فهم
- (١٤) يفتح المجال لـ

Soft skills are not learned from books—they grow through **practice** and **real-life experience**.

To build them, you sometimes have to **step out of**⁽⁴⁾ **your comfort zone**⁽⁵⁾. For example, to improve your communication, you could join a school **debate**⁽⁶⁾ or practice speaking in front of others. To improve **teamwork**⁽⁷⁾, you might work on a group project where you need to listen, **share**, and **meet others halfway**⁽⁸⁾.

Time management⁽⁹⁾ is another key skill. You can use a planner or **make a to-do list** to **stay on top of things**⁽¹⁰⁾.

And when something unexpected happens, it helps **to think on your feet**⁽¹¹⁾ —to make good decisions quickly.

Another important soft skill is **emotional intelligence**⁽¹²⁾.

This means **understanding**⁽¹³⁾ your own feelings and the feelings of others. It helps you solve problems calmly and build strong relationships.

Learning soft skills **takes time** and **effort**, but they can **open doors in**⁽¹⁴⁾ school, work, and life. **In the end**, knowledge fills your mind, but soft skills shape your future.

Answer the following questions:

a) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Soft skills help people with others in different situations.
 - a. argue
 - b. compete
 - c. connect
 - d. avoid
2. To develop your communication skills, you can
 - a. stay silent
 - b. join a debate
 - c. ignore your classmates
 - d. copy someone's answers

3. If you want to improve time management, it's helpful to
 - a. throw away your planner
 - b. take long naps
 - c. make a to-do list
 - d. always be late
4. When you , you leave your safe habits and try something new.
 - a. get your foot in the door
 - b. step out of your comfort zone
 - c. stay on top of things
 - d. meet others halfway
5. Emotional intelligence means understanding
 - a. only your own needs
 - b. how to solve math problems
 - c. your feelings and others' feelings
 - d. technical skills like coding

B) Answer the following questions

1. What are soft skills, and why are they important?
2. How can someone improve their communication skills?
3. What is emotional intelligence, and how does it help in life?
4. Which soft skill do you think is the hardest to learn? Why?



Listening

Hard skills and soft skills.

When people look for jobs, they need two kinds of abilities. Hard skills and soft skills. Hard skills are abilities that you can **measure**⁽¹⁾, such as speaking a foreign language, using computer programs, or **doing math**⁽²⁾. These are the skills that employers often **list in**⁽³⁾ job ads. For example, if a company needs someone who can **design websites**⁽⁴⁾, They will look for technical knowledge in **coding**. Soft skills on the other hand are personal qualities that help you work well with others.



Communication, **teamwork**⁽⁵⁾, and problem solving are examples that are very **valuable**⁽⁶⁾ in almost every job. A person who stays calm under **pressure**⁽⁷⁾ is often seen as a strong team **member**. Some people think soft skills aren't as important, which is not true.

In fact⁽⁸⁾, many employers say they prefer someone who has both types of skills. So, while hard skills may get you an **interview**⁽⁹⁾, soft skills, which show how you **behave**⁽¹⁰⁾ at work, often help you succeed **in the long term**⁽¹¹⁾.

١. يقيس
٢. يقوم بالحسابات
٣. يسجل في
٤. يصمم مواقع
٥. عمل جماعي
٦. قيم
٧. ضغط
٨. في الواقع
٩. مقابلة
١٠. يتصرف
١١. على المدى الطويل



Exercise on

Key Vocabulary

1. To develop your communication skills, you can SB
 - a. stay silent
 - b. join a debate
 - c. ignore your classmates
 - d. copy someone's answers
2. When you , you leave your safe habits and try something new. SB
 - a. get your foot in the door
 - b. step out of your comfort zone
 - c. stay on top of things
 - d. meet others halfway
3. It's important to to new environments and challenges in order to succeed.
 - a. ignore
 - b. reduce
 - c. adjust
 - d. retreat
4. The group's success was a result of excellent and collaboration among all members.
 - a. conflict
 - b. teamwork
 - c. isolation
 - d. distraction
5. She gained valuable by working in a variety of international markets.
 - a. failure
 - b. debate
 - c. experience
 - d. conflict
6. Both sides had to to reach a mutually beneficial agreement .
 - a. compete
 - b. compromise
 - c. disagree
 - d. argue
7. The organization is focused on growth strategies for the next 10 years.
 - a. instant
 - b. temporary
 - c. long-term
 - d. short-term
8. The students were asked to the pros and cons of social media.
 - a. debate
 - b. ignore
 - c. wrap
 - d. fight
9. After years of trying, she finally managed to by securing an internship at her dream company.
 - a. plan a debate
 - b. get her foot in the door
 - c. step out her comfort zone
 - d. escape the door
10. During the negotiation, both parties had to to reach an agreement.
 - a. get their foot in the door
 - b. think on their feet
 - c. meet others halfway
 - d. ignore each other
11. In emergencies, it's important to think on your feet and make quick decisions. This means that you have to
 - a. compromise
 - b. think quickly
 - c. open the door to
 - d. argue in public
12. Sarah got her foot in the door by volunteering at a tech startup, which eventually led to a full-time position. This means that she was able to
 - a. quit her job
 - b. make a lasting impact
 - c. start at the beginning
 - d. open the door for others
13. In order to resolve the conflict, both teams agreed to meet each other halfway on their demands. This means that they
 - a. disagreed completely
 - b. reached a compromise
 - c. ignored each other
 - d. dominate the discussion
14. It's essential to your strategy when faced with unexpected challenges.
 - a. ignore
 - b. resist
 - c. argue
 - d. adjust
15. To succeed in a fast-paced job, you need to stay on top of things and manage your time effectively. This means that you
 - a. neglect your responsibilities
 - b. focus on one task
 - c. avoid deadlines
 - d. handle tasks efficiently

16. He decided to step out of his comfort zone by applying for a job overseas. This means that he
- a. took a risk to try something new b. stayed in his current job
c. rejected new opportunities d. avoided travel
17. The company's goal is to focus on a long-term strategy for growth, rather than looking for quick profits. This means that they.....
- a. seek immediate results b. plan for lasting success
c. focus on short-term gains d. avoid long-term investments



Exercise on Main Vocabulary

18. The team made a lot of to ensure the project was completed on time.
a. habit b. effort c. mood d. overview
19. he spent hours in to perfect her drawing skills.
a. practice b. design c. attitude d. conflict
20. The artist's use of colors brought the painting to life.
a. social b. boring c. dull d. vivid
21. The of the new website is both user-friendly and visually appealing.
a. imagery b. pressure c. design d. effort
22. His skills were essential in developing the company's new app.
a. pressure b. coding c. sensory d. artificial
23. Working under can sometimes lead to great productivity, but it can also be exhausting.
a. habit b. detail c. pressure d. overview
24. His advice helped me make the right decision at the critical moment.
a. valuable b. figurative c. sensory d. unimportant
25. At the beginning of the lecture, the professor gave us a short of the topic.
a. story b. difference c. concession d. overview
26. Before I get the job, I have to attend a/an with the manager next week.
a. share b. interview c. journey d. lesson
27. Her good of the story helped her answer all the questions in the exam.
a. example b. debate c. understanding d. aspect
28. She is a very girl who always gets high marks in math and science.
a. bright b. lazy c. weak d. tired
29. Each in the sports team has a special role to play during the match.
a. organ b. member c. painter d. visitor
30. The company received a special from the government to sell in that area.
a. concession b. sweat c. fencing d. cheer
31. After studying for three hours, Ahmed decided to take a short
a. fencing b. concession c. podium d. nap
32. Please the gift in colorful paper before you give it to her.
a. support b. compete c. wrap d. sweat
33. The athlete stood proudly on the to receive his gold medal.
a. platform b. podium c. pavement d. fencing

34. The poet used strong in his poem to make the words more powerful.
 a. imagery b. flag c. crowd d. podium
35. Life can be very, but we must learn how to be strong.
 a. boastful b. tough c. figurative d. social
36. Nobody likes a person who always talks about himself.
 a. bright b. figurative c. polite d. boastful
37. The writer used a meaning when he said "time is money."
 a. figurative b. tough c. boastful d. factual
38. One important of the problem is how it affects young people.
 a. pentathlon b. simile c. aspect d. pride
39. In poetry, a/an compares two things using "like" or "as."
 a. metaphor b. simile c. aspect d. symbol
40. The building has a design that attracts many visitors..
 a. striking b. figurative c. dull d. sensory
41. A/an says one thing is another to show meaning, such as "the world is a stage."
 a. metaphor b. impression c. pentathlon d. cheer
42. Her first of the teacher was that he was kind and helpful.
 a. metaphor b. simile c. aspect d. impression
43. After the bad news, her changed from happy to sad.
 a. mood b. simile c. symbol d. aspect



Exercise 04

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

44. It is important to strong relationships with your classmates and teachers for success in school..
 a. take b. stay c. build d. enrich
45. Engineers must know how to math to solve scientific problems.
 a. take b. have c. make d. do
46. Achieving big goals will always time and effort, but the results are worth it.
 a. make b. take c. carry d. have
47. The colorful poster can easily attention of the students.
 a. feel b. take c. grab d. make
48. Writers often use adjectives to the description of a place or a person.
 a. grab b. do c. take d. enrich
49. To manage your day well, you should a to-do list before starting your tasks.
 a. stay b. give c. take d. make
50. It is not easy to adjust a new school, but with time you can succeed.
 a. of b. to c. on d. with
51. fact, technology makes our lives both easier and more complicated.
 a. With b. In c. Of d. For
52. Sometimes you need to your comfort zone to grow as a person.
 a. step out of b. adjust to c. reflect on d. list in
53. After a problem, it is important to reflect what really happened.
 a. in b. of c. on d. from

54. A good education can doors in many great jobs in the future.

- a. open b. close c. lock d. join

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

55. She had to adjust quickly to the new school environment. The synonym of the underlined word "adjust" is

SB R.1

- a. adapt b. refuse c. modify d. ignore e. deny

56. He could not adjust to the sudden changes in his life. The antonym of the underlined word "adjust" is

- a. modify b. arrange c. preserve d. fit e. resist

57. The students joined a debate about climate change. The synonym of the underlined word "debate" is

- a. silence b. agreement c. discussion d. argument e. greeting

58. The two friends avoided a debate and kept their conversation simple. The antonym of the underlined word "debate" is

- a. opposition b. conflict c. quarrel d. agreement e. harmony

59. She made a long-term plan for her studies abroad. The synonym of the underlined word "long-term" is

- a. enduring b. lasting c. short d. quick e. sudden

60. This is just a long-term solution, not something temporary. The antonym of the underlined word "long-term" is

- a. temporary b. enduring c. lasting d. short-term e. permanent

61. They reached a compromise after hours of negotiation. The synonym of the underlined word "compromise" is

- a. agreement b. quarrel c. denial d. refusal e. settlement

62. He refused to make any compromise on his principles. The antonym of the underlined word "compromise" is

- a. conflict b. arrangement c. inflexibility d. deal e. contract

63. The museum displayed a valuable collection of paintings. The synonym of the underlined word "valuable" is

- a. precious b. priceless c. useless d. cheap e. ordinary



المقال الوصفي

Descriptive essay



Definition of descriptive essay

- ★ A descriptive essay **focuses on describing** a person, place, object, event, or experience in vivid detail, **using sensory language to create a strong image in the reader's mind.**

المقال الوصفي يركز على وصف شخص أو مكان أو شيء أو حدث أو تجربة بتفاصيل حيّة. مستخدماً لغة الحواس لخلق صورة قوية في ذهن القارئ



Structure of Argumentative Essay

Section القسم	Purpose الغرض	Example Phrases
Introduction المقدمة	It introduces the topic, gives background and states your thesis. تقديم الموضوع، تعطي خلفية، وتطرح الرأي.	Stating your claim ▶ I believe that... ▶ In my opinion... ▶ I think it is clear that
Body Paragraph 1 الفقرة الأولى	It introduces the first reason with examples or evidence. تقديم أول سبب داعم مع أمثلة أو أدلة.	Supporting your claim ▶ Firstly,... ▶ For example,...
Body Paragraph 2 الفقرة الثانية	It introduces the second reason with more examples or facts. تقديم سبب آخر مع أمثلة أو حقائق.	▶ Another reason is... ▶ For instance,...
Opposing View عرض الرأي المعاكس	It mentions the opposite side and says why you are disagree ذكر وجهة النظر الأخرى وتقول لماذا أنت غير متفق	Introducing the other side ▶ Some people say that ▶ It is argued that ▶ On the other hand...

Section القسم	Purpose الغرض
Introduction المقدمة	▶ A hook to grab attention (a surprising fact, question, or striking image) جملة جاذبة للانتباه (حقيقة مفاجئة، سؤال، أو صورة لافتة) ▶ A brief overview of the topic. لمحة موجزة عن الموضوع. ▶ A thesis statement that hints at the main feeling you want to convey جملة أطروحة تلمح إلى الشعور الأساسي الذي تريد إيصاله. ▶ Each paragraph should describe a specific aspect of the subject ذكر وجهة النظر الأخرى.
Body Paragraphs (Usually 2-4) فقرات العرض	a. Topic Sentence ▶ Focus on one main idea or part of the description. تركز على فكرة رئيسية واحدة أو جزء من الوصف b. Sensory Details and Imagery ▶ Use vivid adjectives and verbs استخدم صفات وأفعال حيّة c. Figurative Language ▶ Use similes, metaphors, or hyperbole to enrich the description. استخدم التشبيهات أو الاستعارات أو المبالغة لإثراء الوصف.

Conclusion الخلاصة

- Summarize the impression or feeling created by the description. **لخص الانطباع أو الشعور الذي ولده الوصف**
- Reflect on the importance, meaning, or personal connection. **تأمل في الأهمية أو المعنى أو الصلة الشخصية**
- Leave the reader with a lasting image or thought. **اترك القارئ مع صورة أو فكرة تبقى في ذهنه**

السمات الرئيسية للمقال الوصفي

Key Characteristics of a Descriptive Essay

Feature السمة

Description الوصف

Focused Topic موضوع مركّز

- Talks about one main subject in detail.

يتحدث عن موضوع واحد رئيسي بتفصيل

Sensory Language لغة الحواس

- Uses words that make you see, hear, smell, taste, or feel something.

يستخدم كلمات تجعلك ترى أو تسمع أو تشم أو تذوق أو تشعر بشيء

Imagery الخيال التصويري

- Helps the reader picture things clearly in their mind

يساعد القارئ على تخيل الأشياء بوضوح في ذهنه

Organized Structure بنية منظمة

- Ideas are in order (by place, time, or theme).

الأفكار مرتبة حسب المكان أو الزمن أو الموضوع

Figurative Language اللغة المجازية

- Uses creative comparisons like similes and metaphors

يستخدم مقارنات إبداعية مثل التشبيهات والاستعارات

Emotional Impact الأثر العاطفي

- Shares a feeling or mood, like happiness, peace, or sadness.

ينقل شعوراً أو مزاجاً مثل السعادة أو السلام أو الحزن

- A descriptive essay mainly..... .
a. argues b. describes c. explains d. compares **SB - R 2**
- Which of the following is a good hook for a descriptive essay?
a. The room was silent, but the air buzzed with tension. b. I don't know what to say.
c. This is a normal day. d. Let's skip this.
- The purpose of a descriptive essay is to create
a. a story b. an image c. a debate d. a rule **SB - R 2**
- The first part of a descriptive essay is the
a. body b. conclusion c. introduction d. example
- A hook in the introduction is
a. a summary b. an attention grabber c. a detail d. a conclusion
- The thesis statement should hint at
a. facts b. history c. jokes d. feelings
- Each body paragraph describes
a. many topics b. a conclusion c. one aspect d. background
- Sensory details use
a. adjectives b. numbers c. names d. jokes
- Figurative language uses
a. summaries b. rules c. statistics d. similes and metaphors
- The conclusion should
a. add new topics b. summarize the feeling c. rules d. start the essay again
- What is the purpose of a thesis statement in a descriptive essay?
a. To list daily activities b. To hint at the main feeling you want to convey
c. To tell an unrelated story d. To explain scientific facts



1. During life, man goes through many different situations, and these situations give them experience in how to deal with life and people. ٢٠٢٤ قلين

أ يمر الإنسان خلال حياته بالعديد من المواقف المختلفة، وهذه المشاكل تكسبه خبرة في كيفية التعامل مع الحياة والناس.
ب يمر الإنسان خلال حياته بالقليل من المواقف المختلفة. وهذه المواقف تكسبه خبرة في كيفية التعامل مع الحياة والناس.
ج يمر الإنسان خلال حياته بالعديد من المواقف المختلفة. وهذه المواقف تمنحه خبرة في كيفية التعامل مع الحياة والناس.
د يمر الإنسان خلال حياته بالعديد من المواقف المختلفة. وهذه المواقف تكسبه تجارب في كيفية التعامل مع الحياة والناس.

2. Some people think that increasing business and cultural contact between nations is positive. Others think it leads to the disappearance of the national identity. ٢٠٢٤ دمنهور

أ يعتقد البعض أن زيادة الاتصال التجاري والزراعي بين الدول أمر إيجابي ويعتقد البعض الآخر أنه يؤدي إلى اختفاء الهوية الوطنية.
ب يعتقد البعض أن زيادة الاتصال الصناعي والثقافي بين الدول أمر إيجابي ويعتقد البعض الآخر أنه يؤدي إلى اختفاء الهوية الوطنية.
ج يعتقد البعض أن زيادة الاتصال التجاري والثقافي بين الدول أمر إيجابي ويعتقد البعض الآخر أنه يؤدي إلى اختفاء الهوية الوطنية.
د يعتقد البعض أن زيادة الاتصال التجاري والثقافي بين الدول أمر سلبي ويعتقد البعض الآخر أنه يؤدي إلى اختفاء الهوية الوطنية.

3. There is an increase in the number of people who leave the countryside and look forward to living in cities in spite of the problems which face communities there. ٢٠٢٤ اسوان

أ هناك زيادة في عدد الناس الذين يتركون الريف ويتطلعون إلى العيش بالمدن بفضل المشاكل التي تواجه المجتمعات هناك.
ب هناك تناقص في عدد الناس الذين يتركون الريف ويتطلعون إلى العيش بالمدن بالرغم من المشاكل التي تواجه المجتمعات هناك.
ج هناك زيادة في عدد الناس الذين يتركون الريف ويتطلعون إلى العيش بالمدن بسبب المشاكل التي تواجه المجتمعات هناك.
د هناك زيادة في عدد الناس الذين يتركون الريف ويتطلعون إلى العيش بالمدن بالرغم من المشاكل التي تواجه المجتمعات هناك.
٤. لم تعد الرياضة مجرد وسيلة للاستمتاع بالوقت، ولكنها أيضاً تعلمنا دروس عظيمة وتعزز قيم سامية في نفوسنا جميعاً.

٢٠٢٤ اسوان

- a. Sport is no longer just a means to enjoy time, but it also teaches us great lessons and reinforces noble values inside us all.
b. Sport is no longer just a means to enjoyment time, but it also teaches us great lessons and weakens noble values inside us all.
c. Sport is any longer just a means to enjoy time, but it also learns us great lessons and reinforces noble values inside us all.
d. Sport is no longer just means for enjoy time, but it also teaches us good lessons and reinforces noble values outside us all.

٢٠٢٤ قلين

٥. تتأثر البيئة بالنشاط البشري لهذا السبب يعد الإنسان أهم عنصر في الحفاظ على البيئة أو تدميرها.

- a. The environment is affected by human activity. For this reason man is the most important element in preserving or destroying the environment.
b. The environment isn't affected by human activity. For this reason man is the most important thing in preserving or destroying the environment.
c. The environment is infected by human activity. For this reason man is most important element in deserving or destroying the environment.
d. The environment is affected by human creativity. For this reason man isn't the most important element in deserving or destroying the environment.

٦. القراءة ليست مجرد وسيلة للتسلية ولكنها وسيلة لفهم العالم الذي نعيش فيه، فمن خلال القراءة نكتسب مهارات يمكن أن تساعدنا في حل مشكلات الحياة اليومية.

٢٠٢٤ دمنهور

- a. Reading is not just a pastime, but a way to understand the world in where we live. Through reading, we acquire skills that help us solve everyday life problems.
b. Reading is not just a pastime, but a way to understand the world in which we live. Though reading, we acquire skills that help us solve everyday life problems.
c. Reading is not just a pastime, but a way to understand the world in which we live. Through reading, we acquire skills that help us solve everyday life problems.
d. Reading is not just a pastime, but it a way to understand the world in which we live, Through reading, we acquire skills that help us solving everyday life problems.



General Exercises

on

Unit

6



A

Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the (2) correct answers out of the (5) options given:

- Good health is vital for living a happy life. The antonym of "vital" is
a. important b. unnecessary c. trivial d. necessary e. crucial
- He was very cooperative in helping the team. The synonym of "cooperative" is
a. competitive b. uncooperative c. helpful d. aggressive e. collaborative

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- means having a strong desire to succeed or achieve something important.
a. Reliable b. Ambitious c. Brilliant d. Cooperative
- The problems of poverty and are all interconnected.
a. employment b. unemployment c. employee d. employer
- If any needs to take time off, he /she should contact the Personnel Department.
a. employment b. unemployment c. employee d. employer
- My as an English teacher didn't last long.
a. career b. works c. work d. jobs
- Egypt is full of examples of amazing of ancient and modern engineering.
a. professions b. jobs c. tasks d. works
- The man, the car, is called Seif.
a. driving b. driven c. that is driving d. who driving
- My brother has four flats. His flat was robbed last week.
a. which lies on the Nile b. ,that lies on the Nile,
c. ,which lies on the Nile, d. who lies on the Nile
- The company, is in Giza.
a. which he works b. where he works for c. he works for d. whose he works
- I read an article the writer expresses his opinion of globalization.
a. that b. which c. at which d. in which
- She would have been successful if she well.
a. plans b. planned c. had planned d. has planned
- A focused topic means
a. one subject in detail b. many subjects c. no subject d. general ideas
- A good conclusion leaves
a. a question b. a number c. a lasting image d. a joke

نقطة ٢٠٢٤

B

Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

As the world population continues to grow and climate change makes it more difficult to produce food in the traditional way, scientists are developing new ways of growing plants efficiently. One of these ways is growing plants without soil.

Although this may sound like a modern process, it is not new technology. Ancient Egyptians writings describe how plants were grown in water and early examples include the famous gardens of Babylon and floating gardens built by the Aztec in Mexico. In traditional farming, soil protects the roots of plants, but scientists have shown that plants don't need soil to grow as long as **they** can get nutrients from somewhere, they will grow successfully. To grow plants without soil, a special fertilizer is added to water, the plants take this in through their roots.

Recently, this technology has developed very quickly. It is common in northern Europe where it is used to grow food crops. Vegetables have been grown in submarines and

astronauts have produced food in space using this technology. Many people think that growing plants in water could help to solve the world's food problems. As cities become larger, there is less land for agriculture. Countries with little land for growing crops could produce more of their food without soil. This way can also be used in poor soils such as deserts and in areas near the sea where salty water is damaging the soil. Perhaps soon there will be no areas in the world where food can be produced.

- The best title for this passage is
a. floating gardens b. food shortage
c. traditional farming d. planting without soil
- There must be a to grow plants in water.
a. vitamin b. medicine c. food d. fertilizer
- Growing plants in water can be used in areas with soil.
a. rich b. poor c. strong d. excellent
- Scientists are to solve the world's food problems.
a. imagining b. helping c. urging d. questioning
- As cities become larger, there is land for agriculture.
a. few b. many c. much d. less
- In traditional farming, soil the roots of plants.
a. protects b. covers c. damages d. feeds
- Ancient Egyptian writings describe plants were grown in water.
a. when b. who c. how d. where
- The underlined pronoun "they" refers to
a. plants b. scientists c. roots d. cities



Writing

A) Translate the following into English.

Egypt has won AFCON more than any other country, seven times, at one time three in succession.

- لقد فازت مصر ببطولة أبطال إفريقيا أكثر من أي دولة أخرى، سبع مرات، منهم ٣ مرات على التوالي.
- لقد فازت مصر ببطولة أبطال أوروبا أكثر من أي دولة أخرى، سبع مرات، منهم ٣ مرات على التوالي.
- لقد فازت مصر ببطولة أبطال إفريقيا أقل من أي دولة أخرى، سبع مرات، منهم ٣ مرات على التوالي.
- لقد فازت مصر ببطولة أبطال إفريقيا أكثر من أي دولة أخرى، سبع مرات، منهم ٣ مرات على فترات.

B) Translate the following into Arabic.

الانترنت ومواقع التواصل الاجتماعي هما أسرع نظام اتصال متنامي في تاريخ البشرية.

- The internet and social networking sites are the fastest growing communication system in human history.
- The internet and social networking sights are the fastest growing communication system in human history.
- The internet and social networking sites are the fastest growth contact system in humane history.
- The internet and social networking websites are the fastest growth contact system in human history.

Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

- The city is very crowded. I visited it last year. (which)
- The boy won the race. His father is our coach. (whose)

Answer the following questions:

- Do you think Fogg is motivated by honor or pride in his decisions?
- Would you feel safe traveling across the jungle on an elephant? Why or why not?
- What kinds of people did Passepartout see at the station?

Write a descriptive essay of about 180 words on the following topic:

"A place you've visited and you will never forget"



1) Complete the following dialogue:

أزهر دمياط ٢٠٢٢

Laila has just moved to the town. She asks her neighbour Manal about places to buy food"

- Manal** Hello. Are you new in town?
Laila ① I'm Leila I have just moved in.
Manal I am Manal ② ?
Laila Yes, please. I'd like to ask you about places to buy food.
Manal ③
Laila Is the supermarket too expensive?
Manal No, it isn't, but ④
Laila Are there any street markets here?
Manal Yes, but they sell only fruit and vegetables there.
Laila Thank you very much for your help.

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

أزهر الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢

According to the United Nations, there will be almost 10 billion people in the world by 2050. As a result, we will have to increase our food production about 70 percent. However, farmers don't have space on the land to keep more livestock and grow more crops. So why don't we think about farms in the sea?

Algae are plants that grow very quickly in water and wet places. Some kinds of algae are called seaweed and this is a very popular food in China and Japan. Algae is very healthy food and some scientists believe that a lot more people will be eating it in the future. They hope that farmers will not need to damage the environment because they will be growing our food in the ocean.

Answer the following questions:

- What will happen to the world by 2050?
- Why should we think about farms in the sea?
- What peoples like eating seaweed?

Choose the correct answer:

- Algae is for health.
 a. dangerous b. harmful c. good d. bad
- Increasing food production is a/an
 a. must b. option c. choice d. luxury

3. Translate into Arabic:

أزهر الجيزة ٢٠٢٢

Smartphones are changing the way we choose to communicate with each other. More people use the phone to send messages than they do to make phone calls.

Translate into English:

الحفاظ على الصحة مطلب أساسي للاستمتاع بالحياة.



Vocabulary

1) Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

- The computer will calculate your position with accuracy with pinpoint accuracy. The synonym of the word “accuracy” is
a. exactness b. fragment c. politeness d. intensity e. precision
- The road is open now, but it is often blocked by much traffic. The synonym of the word “blocked” is
a. cracked b. congested c. jammed d. tracked e. flapped
- Some people find that certain foods their headaches.
a. cite b. cause c. match d. trigger e. distinguish
- I've asked them not to play their music so loudly, but they're not being very cooperative. The antonym of the word “cooperative” is
a. stubborn b. reliable c. helpful d. vital e. uncooperative
- The service produces clear, measurable benefits to people's health. The antonym of the word “measurable” is
a. immeasurable b. calculable c. ambitious d. incalculable e. essential

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Scientists use satellites and radar to storms.
a. ignore b. track c. stop d. delay
- The of a storm refers to how strong it is.
a. accuracy b. intensity c. humidity d. pattern
- means being ready for an emergency.
a. Prediction b. Preparedness c. Evacuation d. Damage
- A waterproof container keeps water from important documents.
a. drying b. damaging c. heating d. cleaning
- plates are large pieces of Earth's crust that move and cause earthquakes.
a. Atmospheric b. Tectonic c. Oceanic d. Volcanic
- Meteorologists study and predict conditions.
a. geological b. weather c. economic d. social
- A(n) kit includes flashlights, water, and first aid supplies.
a. emergency b. school c. travel d. cooking
- are practice activities for real emergencies.
a. Predictions b. Drills c. Reports d. Meetings
- “Better safe than sorry” emphasizes the importance of
a. risk-taking b. preparedness c. luck d. delay
- Fake news often uses headlines to grab attention.
a. boring b. sensational c. scientific d. quiet
- “Don't believe everything you read” is advice to avoid
a. truth b. science c. education d. misinformation
- A(n) is a system that shows you similar content based on your past activity.
a. printer b. algorithm c. camera d. battery
- means checking if information is true or accurate.
a. Guessing b. Printing c. Verification d. Sharing

19. are mistakes in written text.
a. Headlines b. Misprints c. Photos d. Videos
20. Media uses tactics to influence how people think.
a. harmful b. subtle c. slow d. old
21. "Going viral" is an example of content.
a. boring b. trending c. hidden d. forgotten
22. skills are personal qualities that affect how you work with others.
a. Hard b. Soft c. Technical d. Measurable
23. The ability to fix a machine is an example of a skill.
a. soft b. hard c. emotional d. social
24. Being able to work well in a team is a key of skill.
a. leadership b. teamwork c. programming d. mechanical
25. Hard skills are often through education or training.
a. ignored b. learned c. hidden d. forgotten
26. Employers value soft skills because they help employees with others.
a. compete b. interact c. hide d. argue
27. A person who can solve problems quickly is said to on their feet.
a. run b. think c. jump d. walk
28. is the ability to plan and use your time effectively.
a. Debate b. Leadership c. Programming d. Time management
29. A helps you stay organized and "on top of things."
a. phone b. planner c. friend d. game
30. A brilliant programmer needs to explain ideas to others.
a. coding b. isolation c. silence d. communication



Language

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

31. This box is than the other one.
a. heavy b. heavier c. more heavy d. heaviest
32. She is the student in the class.
a. intelligent b. more intelligent c. most intelligent d. less intelligent
33. This is movie I've ever seen!
a. good b. better c. the better d. the best
34. My brother is taller than me.
a. many b. much c. such d. more
35. This is one of cities I've visited.
a. beautiful b. the most beautiful c. more beautiful d. the less beautiful
36. This exercise is than the last one.
a. easy b. easier c. the easier d. more easy
37. Mount Everest is mountain in the world.
a. high b. higher c. the highest d. most high
38. She speaks French fluently, she?
a. doesn't b. isn't c. does d. is
39. They didn't finish the project, they?
a. did b. didn't c. do d. have
40. He's been to Paris before, he?
a. hasn't b. isn't c. has d. is

41. They are sad as they have lost the match, they?
 a. don't b. didn't c. haven't d. aren't
42. You won't tell anyone, you?
 a. will b. won't c. do d. don't
43. She's very kind, she?
 a. isn't b. doesn't c. hasn't d. has
44. I'm late, ?
 a. am I not b. aren't I c. don't I d. isn't it
45. Of the two answers, this one is
 a. correct b. more correct c. the most correct d. most correct
46. The test was than I expected.
 a. hard b. harder c. the harder d. hardest
47. Ahmed is the student got full marks.
 a. which b. who c. where d. when
48. The new building, is solar- powered, opened last October.
 a. that b. which c. who d. where
49. Dogs are animals are loyal to their owners.
 a. who b. which c. where d. when
50. Yara, father was a teacher, is a clever doctor.
 a. whose b. who c. which d. that
51. We must protect the glory we inherited from our ancestors.
 a. who b. which c. where d. when
52. The engineer designed the bridge is from Egypt.
 a. which b. who c. where d. when
53. My phone, has a cracked screen, still works well.
 a. that b. which c. who d. where
54. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct:
 a. She likes coffee, doesn't she?
 b. She likes coffee, doesn't he?
 c. She likes coffee, does she?
 d. She likes coffee, isn't she?
55. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct:
 a. They aren't coming, are they?
 b. They aren't coming, aren't they?
 c. They aren't coming, do they?
 d. They aren't coming, isn't they?
56. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct:
 a. He's never late, is he?
 b. He's never late, isn't he?
 c. He's never late, doesn't he?
 d. He's never late, has he?
57. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct:
 a. The students who passed the exam celebrated.
 b. The students, who passed the exam, celebrated.
 c. The students who passed the exam, celebrated.
 d. The students, who passed the exam celebrated.
58. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct:
 a. I'm the most tallest in my family.
 b. I'm taller than anyone in my family.
 c. I'm more taller than my brother.
 d. I'm the most high in my family.
59. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct:
 a. One of the most beautiful places is Hawaii.
 b. One of the more beautiful places is Hawaii.
 c. One of the beautiful places is Hawaii.
 d. One of the beautiful places Hawaii.

60. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct:

- The movie, who was directed by Spielberg, won an Oscar.
- The movie which was directed by Spielberg, won an Oscar.
- The movie, which was directed by Spielberg, won an Oscar.
- The movie that was directed by Spielberg won an Oscar.

2) Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- | | |
|---|---------------|
| 61. She's never late for work, is she? | (always) |
| 62. Mount Fuji is the highest mountain in Japan. | (higher than) |
| 63. He doesn't smile much, does he? | (rarely) |
| 64. This phone is more expensive than the one I had before. | (not as) |
| 65. My laptop is very old. It still works well. | (which) |
| 66. The book was very interesting. I read it last week. | (that) |
| 67. The students were very noisy. They were in my class. | (who) |
| 68. That was the worst movie I've ever seen, wasn't it? | (much worse) |
| 69. The movie was boring. It lasted three hours. | (which) |
| 70. She doesn't mind working late, does she? | (happy to) |

Translation

1) Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

71. Soft skills, like communication and teamwork, are personal qualities that help individuals work effectively with others.

- المهارات المكتسبة، مثل التواصل والعمل الجماعي، هي صفات شخصية تساعد الأفراد على العمل بكفاءة مع الآخرين.
- المهارات الشخصية، مثل التواصل والعمل الفردي، هي صفات شخصية تساعد الأفراد على العمل بكفاءة مع الآخرين.
- المهارات الشخصية، مثل التواصل والعمل الجماعي، هي صفات شخصية تساعد الأفراد على العمل بفعالية مع الآخرين.
- المهارات المكتسبة، مثل التواصل والعمل الجماعي، هي صفات عامة تساعد الأفراد على العمل بفعالية مع الآخرين.

72. Sensational headlines and biased reporting can mislead audiences, undermining trust in truthful journalism.

- يمكن للعناوين الرئيسية المثيرة والتقارير المتحيزة أن تضلل الجمهور، مما يقوض الثقة في الصحافة الصادقة.
- يمكن للعناوين الرئيسية المثيرة والتقارير المتحيزة أن تضلل الجمهور، مما يعزز الثقة في الصحافة الصادقة.
- يمكن للعناوين الرئيسية المثيرة والتقارير الصادقة أن تضلل الجمهور، مما يقوض الثقة في الصحافة المنحازة.
- يمكن للعناوين الرئيسية العادية والتقارير المتحيزة أن تضلل الجمهور، مما يؤكد الثقة في الصحافة الكاذبة.

73. Earthquakes can cause widespread destruction by shaking the ground violently, often collapsing buildings and triggering tsunamis.

- يمكن أن تسبب الزلازل محدود واسع النطاق من خلال هز الأرض برفق، وغالباً ما تؤدي إلى انهيار المباني وتسبب موجات تسونامي.
- يمكن أن تسبب الزلازل دماراً واسع النطاق من خلال هز الأرض بعنف، وغالباً ما تؤدي إلى انهيار المباني وتسبب موجات تسونامي.
- يمكن أن تسبب الزلازل دماراً واسع النطاق من خلال هز الأرض برفق، وغالباً ما تؤدي إلى ترميم المباني وتسبب موجات تسونامي.
- يمكن أن تسبب الزلازل دماراً محدود النطاق من خلال هز الأرض بعنف، وغالباً ما تؤدي إلى ترميم المباني وتسبب موجات تسونامي.

2) Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

٧٤. تسبب الأعاصير رياحاً قوية وأمطاراً غزيرة، مما يؤدي إلى فيضانات وأضرار جسيمة في المناطق الساحلية.

- Hurricanes bring powerless winds and heavy rainfall, leading to flooding and significant damage in desert areas.
- Hurricanes prevent powerful winds and heavy rainfall, leading to flooding and significant damage in desert areas.
- Hurricanes bring powerless winds and heavy rainfall, leading to bleeding and significant damage in coastal areas.
- Hurricanes bring powerful winds and heavy rainfall, leading to flooding and significant damage in coastal areas.

D Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions below:

Mass media, encompassing television, radio, newspapers, and the internet, is a powerful force in modern society. While it plays a crucial role in disseminating information and connecting people globally, its negative effects are a growing concern. One of the most significant impacts is the distortion of reality. The constant barrage of curated images and stories can create unrealistic expectations about life, success, and beauty. For instance, social media often presents a highlight reel of people's lives, leading to feelings of inadequacy and low self-esteem among viewers.

Another major drawback is the potential for misinformation and fake news to spread rapidly.

In the digital age, anyone can publish content, and without proper fact-checking, false information can go viral, influencing public opinion and even political outcomes. This erodes trust in traditional news sources and creates a fragmented and polarized society. Furthermore, the relentless exposure to media, particularly violent content, has been linked to increased aggression and desensitization in some individuals, particularly young people.

The constant need for media consumption can also lead to **information overload** and addiction.

The fear of missing out (FOMO) and the compulsive checking of devices disrupt sleep, reduce productivity, and strain relationships. The pressure to conform to media-driven trends, whether in fashion or lifestyle, can stifle individuality and promote a culture of consumerism. While media literacy education is key to helping people navigate these challenges, the negative effects of mass media on mental health, societal trust, and personal well-being remain a critical issue that demands our attention.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is that mass media' '
 - a. Is entirely beneficial for society
 - b. Is only a problem for young people
 - c. Has both positive and negative impacts, with the negative ones being a significant concern
 - d. Is not a powerful force in modern society
2. The passage mentions that a pressure to conform can be a result of
 - a. media- driven trends
 - b. a focus on individuality
 - c. the promotion of diverse opinions
 - d. traditional values
3. The feeling of "fear of missing out" (FOMO) is linked to which negative effect?
 - a. Improved productivity
 - b. Disrupted sleep and strained relationships
 - c. Reduced need for media
 - d. A desire to disconnect from devices
4. The passage suggests that mass media can distort reality by
 - a. only showing the negative aspects of life
 - b. presenting a curated and unrealistic view of life
 - c. encouraging people to be themselves
 - d. limiting access to information
5. The spread of "fake news" is described as a concern because it can
 - a. increase trust in traditional news
 - b. be easily verified by anyone
 - c. influence public opinion and polarize society
 - d. only affect a small number of people
6. The underlined phrase "information overload" refers to
 - a. the lack of available information
 - b. having too much information to process
 - c. the process of fact- checking
 - d. an interest in various topics

7. The author suggests that a potential solution to the negative effects of media is
 a. completely avoiding all media
 b. increasing the amount of media consumed
 c. promoting media literacy education d. relying solely on social media for news
8. Which of the following is NOT listed as a form of mass media in the passage?
 a. Television b. Social gatherings c. Radio d. Newspapers



Writing

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A formal report should begin with a clear that tells the reader the topic.
 a. story b. title c. joke d. email
2. In a formal report, you should write "do not" instead of "don't" because formal writing avoids
 a. headings b. contractions c. paragraphs d. punctuation
3. The section that explains the purpose of the report is called the
 a. conclusion b. introduction c. findings d. greeting
4. A formal report uses a tone, not casual or emotional language.
 a. funny b. neutral and polite c. angry d. poetic
5. Using bullet points and headings helps to make the report to read.
 a. harder b. more organized c. longer d. more colorful
6. Which phrase is most appropriate for making a recommendation in a formal report?
 a. I think we should... b. Maybe we can...
 c. It is recommended that... d. Let's try...
7. A strong introduction should include a hook, background, and
 a. secret b. joke c. song d. thesis statement
8. In the conclusion, you should restate your opinion and give a
 a. future prediction b. random guess c. movie title d. phone number
9. The section that explains the purpose of the report is called the
 a. findings b. greeting c. conclusion d. introduction
10. The part of the report that presents facts and observations is called the
 a. title b. findings c. story d. opinion
11. What is the primary purpose of an opinion essay?
 a. To provide a factual and unbiased report on a topic.
 b. To argue for and support a specific point of view on a topic.
 c. To narrate a personal experience or story.
 d. To compare and contrast two different subjects.
12. Which of the following is a good hook for a descriptive essay?
 a. I don't know what to say.
 b. The room was silent, but the air buzzed with tension.
 c. This is a normal day. d. Let's skip this.

2) Write on one of the following:

- a. An opinion essay about "Social media does more harm than good."
- b. A descriptive essay about "A time you felt proud of yourself."



Around the World in Eighty Days

للفصل الثاني الثانوي

تحليل الشخصيات وموضوعات القصة.

النص المدرسى مع ترجمته إلى اللغة العربية.

ملخص لكل فصل مع ترجمته إلى اللغة العربية.

أسئلة التفكير النقدي بإجاباتها.

أسئلة كتاب الوزارة بإجاباتها.

أسئلة على كل فصل بدون إجابات.

Main Characters

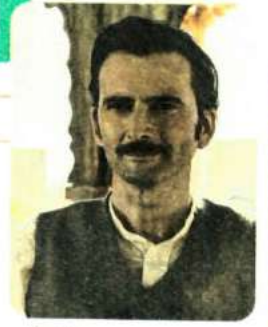
الشخصيات الرئيسية



1) Phileas Fogg

فيلياس فوج

- A rich, calm English gentleman. رجل إنجليزي ثري وهادئ
- Loves punctuality and routine. يحب الالتزام بالمواعيد والنظام
- Bets he can travel around the world in 80 days. يراهن على أنه يستطيع السفر حول العالم في ٨٠ يوماً



2) Passepartout

باسبارتو

- Fogg's loyal French servant. الخادم الفرنسي الوفي لفوج
- Kind and humorous, but sometimes clumsy. طيب ومرح، لكنه أحياناً أحمق
- Helps Fogg on the journey. يساعد فوج في الرحلة



3) Detective Fix

المحقق فيكس

- A British detective. محقق بريطاني
- Thinks Fogg robbed a bank. يعتقد أن فوج سرق بنكاً
- Follows Fogg around the world. يطارد فوج حول العالم



4) Aouda

أودا

- An Indian woman rescued by Fogg. امرأة هندية أنقذها فوج
- Falls in love with Fogg. تقع في حب فوج
- Marries him at the end. تتزوج في النهاية



5) Reform Club Members

أعضاء نادي الإصلاح

- Fogg's friends at the club. أصدقاء فوج في النادي
- Doubt his ability to travel in 80 days. يشكون في قدرته على السفر في ٨٠ يوماً
- Accept the bet with him. يقبلون الرهان معه



General Summary

الملخص العام

Around the World in Eighty Days by Jules Verne is an adventure novel about Phileas Fogg, a calm and mysterious English gentleman. Fogg makes a bold bet that he can travel around the entire world in just 80 days. With his loyal servant Passepartout, he sets off on a thrilling journey by train, ship, and even an elephant. Along the way, they face storms, delays, and dangerous situations, including a detective named Detective Fix who believes Fogg is a bank robber. Despite all the challenges, Fogg arrives back in London at the last moment and wins the bet, proving his determination and intelligence.

رواية حول العالم في ثمانين يوماً لجولز فيرن هي قصة مغامرة تدور حول فيلياس فوج، رجل إنجليزي هادئ وغامض. يراهن فوج على أنه يستطيع السفر حول العالم في ثمانين يوماً فقط. ينطلق مع خادمه الوفي باسبارتو في رحلة مثيرة باستخدام القطار والسفينة وحتى الفيل. يواجهان في طريقهما عواصف وتأخيرات ومواقف خطيرة. بما في ذلك مطاردة من محقق يدعى المحقق فيكس الذي يعتقد أن فوج لص بنك. ورغم كل التحديات، يعود فوج إلى لندن في اللحظة الأخيرة ويفوز بالرهان، مثبتاً إصراره وذكائه.

Chapter

1

The Mysterious Gentleman of Savile Row

السيد الغامض
من شارع سافيل

Key Vocabulary

gentleman ⁽ⁿ⁾	رجل نبيل / مهذب	respected ^(adj)	محترم	position ⁽ⁿ⁾	وظيفة
unlike ^(prep)	على غير / بخلاف	ceiling ⁽ⁿ⁾	سقف	lively ^(adj)	نابض بالحياة
habit ⁽ⁿ⁾	عادة	politician ⁽ⁿ⁾	سياسي	regularity ⁽ⁿ⁾	انتظام
punctuality ⁽ⁿ⁾	الانضباط في المواعيد	engineer ⁽ⁿ⁾	مهندس	suitable ^(adj)	مناسب
neighbors ⁽ⁿ⁾	الجيران	temple ⁽ⁿ⁾	معبد	adventure ⁽ⁿ⁾	مغامرة
delay ⁽ⁿ⁾	تأخير	strategy ⁽ⁿ⁾	استراتيجية / خطة	unusual ^(adj)	غير عادي
precision ⁽ⁿ⁾	دقة	servant ⁽ⁿ⁾	خادم	decorations ⁽ⁿ⁾	زينة / ديكورات
whisper ^(v)	يهمس	suddenly ^(adv)	فجأة	harmony ⁽ⁿ⁾	انسجام
discipline ⁽ⁿ⁾	انضباط	advertisement ⁽ⁿ⁾	إعلان	restful ^(adj)	مريح
private ^(adj)	خاص	apply ^(v)	يتقدم (لوظيفة)	travel ^(v)	يسافر

Values in this Chapter



القيم في هذا الفصل

Discipline:

الانضباط

Mr. Fogg shows the strength of order and punctuality.

يظهر السيد فوج قوة النظام والدقة في المواعيد.

Loyalty and Service

الولاء والخدمة

Passepartout, though surprised, follows his master faithfully.

يتبع باسبارتو سيده بإخلاص. رغم دهشته.

Curiosity and Openness

الفضول والانفتاح

Passepartout reminds us that new experiences can bring growth.

يذكرنا باسبارتو أن التجارب الجديدة يمكن أن تجلب النمو والتطور.

"Measure by the tick of the clock"

القياس بدقة الساعة

Living life with strict punctuality and order.

العيش بحياة منظمة ومنضبطة

"A man of habit"

رجل العادة

Someone who follows the same routine every day.

شخص يتبع نفس الروتين يومياً

"Heart of a traveler"

قلب المسافر

A natural love for adventure and moving from place to place.

حب طبيعي للمغامرة والتنقل من مكان لآخر.

"First impressions"

الانطباعات الأولى

The initial opinion or feeling someone gets when they see or meet something for the first time.

الرأي أو الشعور الأول الذي يتكون لدى الشخص عند رؤية أو مقابلة شيء للمرة الأولى.

**Summary**

In 1872, Phileas Fogg, a mysterious Englishman, lived in a quiet London street. He was known for his strict routine and perfect punctuality. Every part of his day—meals, reading, walks—was carefully organized. Fogg spent most of his time at the Reform Club, where wealthy and educated men met to read newspapers and play cards. He spoke little but was always precise. On October 2nd, 1872, Fogg's previous servant quit due to his strict rules. That same day, he hired a new servant, Jean Passepartout, a lively Frenchman who had tried many jobs before and wanted a calm life. Passepartout believed working for Fogg would bring him peace, but he was wrong. When he entered Fogg's house, he noticed its plain and orderly style, with clocks ticking in every room. He thought this life would be restful, but within two days, he would leave London and start a great journey across Europe.

في عام ١٨٧٢، كان فيلياس فوج، رجل إنجليزي غامض، يعيش في شارع هادي بلندن. كان معروفاً بروتيته الصارم ودقته الكاملة في المواعيد. كان كل جزء من يومه-الوجبات، والقراءة، والمشي-منظماً بعناية. كان فوج يقضي معظم وقته في نادي الإصلاح، حيث يلتقي الرجال الأثرياء والمتعلمون لقراءة الصحف ولعب الورق. كان قليل الكلام لكنه دائماً دقيق. في الثاني من أكتوبر عام ١٨٧٢، استقال خادم فوج السابق بسبب قواعده الصارمة. وفي نفس اليوم، وظف خادماً جديداً، جان باسبرتو. شاب فرنسي نشيط كان قد جرب العديد من الوظائف من قبل، وكان يريد حياة هادئة. اعتقد باسبرتو أن العمل مع فوج سيجلب له السلام، لكنه كان مخطئاً.

عندما دخل منزل فوج، لاحظ أسلوبه البسيط والمنظم. مع وجود ساعات تدق في كل غرفة. ظن أن هذه الحياة ستكون مريحة. لكن خلال يومين فقط، سيغادر لندن ويبدأ رحلة عظيمة عبر أوروبا.

The Calm Life of Mr. Phileas Fogg

الحياة الهادئة للسيد فيلياس فوج

In the year 1872, in the busy heart of London, lived a gentleman who was unlike any other. His name was Phileas Fogg, and though many people had heard of him, very few truly knew him. He was a man of habits, of order, and of perfect punctuality. His home was in Savile Row, a quiet street known for tailors and fine houses. The neighbors sometimes wondered about this man who seemed to live without change, without family, and without visible work. Mr. Fogg's life was measured by the tick of the clock.

في عام ١٨٧٢. في قلب لندن المزدحم. كان يعيش رجل نبيل مختلف عن أي شخص آخر. اسمه كان فيلياس فوج. ورغم أن الكثيرين سمعوا عنه. إلا أن القليلين فقط كانوا يعرفونه حقاً. كان رجلاً ذا عادات. منظماً. ودقيقاً للغاية في مواعيده. كان منزله في شارع سافيل رو. وهو شارع هادي معروف بالخياطين والمنازل الفخمة. أحياناً كان الجيران يتساءلون عن هذا الرجل الذي يبدو أنه يعيش بلا تغيير. بلا عائلة. وبلا عمل ظاهر. حياة السيد فوج كانت تقاس بدقائق الساعة.

He left his house at the same minute each morning, returned at the same exact time each evening, and never allowed the smallest delay to interrupt his order. His meals, his reading, even his walks were organized with mathematical precision. Some people thought he was cold and proud. Others whispered that he might be rich but strange. But the truth was simpler: Phileas Fogg valued calm, order, and discipline above all things. Every day, at the same hour, he went to the Reform Club, a private gentlemen's club where London's wealthiest and most respected men met to read newspapers, discuss important topics, or play games.

كان يغادر منزله في نفس الدقيقة كل صباح. ويعود في نفس الوقت بالضبط كل مساء. ولم يسمح أبداً لأدنى تأخير بأن يخل بنظامه. كانت وجباته. وقراءته. وحتى نزهاته منظمة بدقة حسابية. بعض الناس اعتقدوا أنه بارد ومتكبر. والبعض الآخر همس بأنه قد يكون غنياً لكنه غريب الأطوار. لكن الحقيقة كانت أبسط: كان فيلياس فوج يتردد الهدوء والنظام والانضباط فوق كل شيء. كل يوم. في نفس الساعة. كان يذهب إلى نادي الإصلاح. وهو نادي خاص بالرجال حيث يجتمع أغنى وأشهر رجال لندن لقراءة الصحف. ومناقشة المواضيع المهمة. أو لعب الألعاب.

The Reform Club on Pall Mall was a place of polished oak tables, red leather chairs, high ceilings, and the constant rustle of newspapers. The men who gathered there were politicians, bankers, engineers, and men of science. It was a temple of reason and respectability, where arguments were sharp but voices remained calm. There, Mr. Fogg spent hours reading and playing whist, a card game that required concentration and strategy. He spoke little, but when he did, his words were clear and precise.

كان نادي الإصلاح في شارع بال مال مكاناً يحتوي على طاولات من خشب البلوط المصقول، وكراسي من الجلد الأحمر. وسقوف عالية. وصوت الورق المتسارع للصحف دائماً حاضر. الرجال الذين يجتمعون هناك كانوا من السياسيين والمصرفيين والمهندسين وعلماء العلوم. كان معبداً للعقل والاحترام. حيث تكون النقاشات حادة لكن الأصوات تبقى هادئة. هناك. قضى السيد فوج ساعات وهو يقرأ ويلعب لعبة الوست. وهي لعبة ورق تتطلب التركيز والاستراتيجية. كان يتحدث قليلاً. لكن عندما يتحدث. كانت كلماته واضحة ودقيقة.

A New Servant

خادم جديد

On the morning of October 2nd, 1872, something unusual disturbed Mr. Fogg's carefully ordered life. His servant had left him suddenly, unable to endure his master's strict schedule and demands. Mr. Fogg, calm as always, simply placed an advertisement for a new valet. That same day, a Frenchman named Jean Passepartout arrived at Savile Row to apply for the position. Passepartout was about thirty years old, with a friendly face, lively eyes, and the heart of a traveler. He had tried many professions—singer, acrobat, firefighter, and even circus performer—but now he longed for a quiet and steady life. When Mr. Fogg interviewed him, the conversation was short and direct.

في صباح ٢ أكتوبر ١٨٧٢. حدث شيء غير معتاد أزعج حياة السيد فوج المنظمة بعناية. فقد تركه خادمه فجأة. غير قادر على تحمل جدول سيده الصارم ومتطلباته. ظل السيد فوج هادئاً كالعادة. ووضع ببساطة إعلاناً عن حاجته لخادم جديد. في نفس اليوم. وصل

فرنسي يدعى جان باسبارتو الى شارع سافيل رو لتقديم طلب التوظيف. كان باسبارتو يبلغ حوالي ثلاثين عاماً. ذو وجه ودود. وعيون حيوية، وقلب مسافر. جرب العديد من المهن - مغني، بهلوان، رجل اطفاء، وحتى مورد في السيرك - لكن الآن كان يتوق الى حياة هادئة ومستقرة. عندما أجرى السيد فوج معه المقابلة، كانت المحادثة قصيرة ومباشرة.

"Your name?" asked Fogg. "Jean, but everyone calls me Passepartout," replied the Frenchman cheerfully. "You wish to serve as my valet?" "Yes, sir. I am strong, punctual, and loyal. I left Paris because I desired peace and regularity." "Peace and regularity, you shall have," said Mr. Fogg, without changing his expression. "My house is in order, and my habits never change. If you serve me well, you will find this place most suitable." Passepartout accepted with relief. After so many adventures, a life of calm sounded perfect. He did not yet know how mistaken he was.

"ما اسمك؟" سال فوج. "جان، لكن الجميع يناديني باسبارتو." اجاب الفرنسي بمرح. هل ترغب في العمل كخادمي الخاص؟ - نعم، سيدي. انا قوي، دقيق في المواعيد، ومخلص. غادرت باريس لانني رغبت في حياة هادئة ومنظمة. السلام والنظام. ستحصل عليهما. قال السيد فوج دون ان يغير تعبير وجهه. منزلي مرتب، وعاداتي لا تتغير ابدا. اذا خدمتني جيدا. ستجد هذا المكان مناسباً جداً. قبل باسبارتو العرض بارتياح. بعد كل هذه المغامرات، بدت له حياة هادئة مثالية. لكنه لم يكن يعلم بعد كم كان مخطئاً.



Passepartout's First Impressions

الانطباعات الأولى لباسبارتو

As soon as he entered his master's house, Passepartout noticed its unusual character. The furniture was plain but elegant, polished until it shone. There were no pictures, no decorations, no family portraits. The only thing that seemed alive was the large clock in every room, all ticking in harmony. "This is the home of a man who loves order more than life itself," Passepartout whispered to himself. "Well, at least it will be restful!" He did not know that within two days, he would be traveling across Europe, leaving London far behind.

ما ان دخل باسبارتو منزل سيده، لاحظ طابعه الغريب. كانت الاثاث بسيطة لكنها انيقة. مصقولة حتى تلمع. لم يكن هناك اي صور، او زخارف، او صور عائلية. الشيء الوحيد الذي بدا حياً كان الساعة الكبيرة في كل غرفة. كلها تدق بتناغم. هذا بيت رجل يجب النظام اكثر من الحياة نفسها. همس باسبارتو لنفسه. حسناً، على الأقل سيكون هادئاً! لم يكن يعلم انه خلال يومين فقط، سيكون مسافراً عبر أوروبا. تاركاً لندن بعيداً وراءه.

Setbook Questions & Answers



- Who was Phileas Fogg and where did he live?
من هو فيلياس فوج واين كان يعيش؟
Phileas Fogg was a gentleman who lived in Savile Row, London.
كان فيلياس فوج رجلاً إنجليزياً يعيش في شارع سافيل في لندن.
- How was Mr. Fogg's daily routine described?
كيف وُصف الروتين اليومي للسيد فوج؟
His routine was very strict and perfectly timed; he did everything at the same time every day.
كان روتينه صارماً جداً ومنظماً بدقة. يفعل كل شيء في نفس الوقت كل يوم.
- What did people think of Mr. Fogg's personality?
ماذا كان يظن الناس بشأن شخصية السيد فوج؟
Some thought he was cold and proud, while others thought he was rich but strange.
بعض الناس ظنوا أنه بارد ومتكبر. وآخرون اعتقدوا أنه غني لكنه غريب الأطوار.
- Where did Mr. Fogg spend most of his time outside his home?
اين كان يقضي السيد فوج معظم وقته خارج المنزل؟
At the Reform Club.
في نادي الإصلاح.
- What game did Fogg enjoy playing?
ما اللعبة التي كان فوج يستمتع بلعبها؟
Whist, a card game.
لعبة الورق "وست".
- Why did Mr. Fogg need a new servant?
لماذا كان السيد فوج بحاجة إلى خادم جديد؟
Because his old servant left because he couldn't handle Fogg's strict schedule.
لأن خادمه السابق تركه العمل بسبب جدول فوج الصارم.

7. Who applied for the position of valet?

📖 Jean Passepartout, a Frenchman.

من تقدم لوظيفة الخادم الشخصي؟

جان باسبارتو، وهو فرنسي.

8. What kind of jobs had Passepartout tried before?

📖 Singer, acrobat, firefighter, and circus performer.

مغني، بهلوان، رجل إطفاء، وعامل في السيرك.

9. Why did Passepartout leave Paris?

📖 He wanted peace and a regular life.

لماذا غادر باسبارتو باريس؟

لأنه أراد حياة هادئة ومنظمة.

10. How did Mr. Fogg describe his habits?

📖 He said his habits never change.

كيف وصف السيد فوج عاداته؟

قال إن عاداته لا تتغير أبداً.

11. Why might neighbors have found Fogg mysterious?

📖 Because he had no family, no visible job, and lived a very quiet life.

لماذا قد يري الجيران فوج غامضاً؟

لأنه لم يكن لديه عائلة ولا عمل واضح، وكان يعيش حياة هادئة وغامضة.

12. How does punctuality define Fogg's character?

📖 It shows he is very disciplined and values time highly.

كيف تنعكس الدقة في المواعيد شخصية فوج؟

يبين أنه منضبط جداً ويقدر الوقت كثيراً.

Critical Thinking Questions:

13. Do you think living a life of strict routine is positive or negative? Why?

هل تعتقد أن العيش بحياة روتينية صارمة أمر إيجابي أم سلبي؟ ولماذا؟

📖 It can be negative because it feels boring and stressful.

14. How important is punctuality in today's world compared to Fogg's time?

ما مدى أهمية الالتزام بالمواعيد في عالم اليوم مقارنة بعصر فوج؟

📖 It is still very important, especially for work and school.

ما زال مهماً جداً، خاصة للعمل والدراسة.

15. What qualities make a good servant or assistant in your opinion?

ما الصفات التي تجعل الخادم أو المساعد جيداً في رأيك؟

📖 Loyalty, punctuality, and honesty.

الولاء، الالتزام بالمواعيد، والصدق.

16. If you were Passepartout, would you accept the job? Why or why not?

إذا كنت مكان باسبارتو، هل ستقبل الوظيفة؟ ولماذا أو لماذا لا؟

📖 Yes, because it seems safe and calm.

نعم، لأنها تبدو آمنة وهادئة.

17. Why do you think Jules Verne chose to make Fogg mysterious instead of ordinary?

لماذا تعتقد أن جولز فيرن جعل فوج غامضاً بدلاً من عادي؟

📖 To make the story more exciting and interesting.

لجعل القصة أكثر تشويقاً وإثارة.

18. Can order and discipline be more valuable than adventure? Explain.

هل يمكن أن تكون النظام والانضباط أكثر قيمة من المغامرة؟ اشرح.

📖 Yes, because they bring stability and success.

نعم، لأنها تجلب الاستقرار والنجاح.

19. How would you feel living in a house with no decorations, only clocks?

كيف ستشعر لو كنت تعيش في منزل بلا زينة، فيه ساعات فقط؟

📖 I would feel uncomfortable and sad.

سأشعر بعدم الراحة والحزن.

20. What might be the advantages and disadvantages of Fogg's personality?

ما هي المزايا والعيوب المحتملة في شخصية فوج؟

📖 Advantages: organized and punctual.

المزايا: منظم وملتزم بالمواعيد.

📖 Disadvantages: cold and too strict.

العيوب: بارد وصارم جداً.

Chapter 1 General Exercises

1) Answer the following questions

1. Why do you think Mr. Fogg values punctuality and order so much?
2. How might Passepartout's adventurous past cause problems in his new job?
3. What does the description of Mr. Fogg's house reveal about his personality?
4. Why do you think Mr. Fogg didn't get angry when his servant left?
5. What could be the reason Passepartout believes this job will be "restful"?
6. How do the Reform Club's atmosphere and members reflect Mr. Fogg's character?
7. What might happen if Passepartout cannot adapt to Fogg's routine?
8. Why do you think Fogg keeps his life so private and secretive?
9. What lesson can we learn from Mr. Fogg's calm reaction to problems?
10. How does the last sentence create suspense for the reader?
11. Describe Mr. Fogg's daily routine in your own words.
12. What kind of job did Passepartout want and why?
13. How did Passepartout feel when he first saw Mr. Fogg's house?
14. What does Passepartout notice about the clocks in the house?
15. Why did Mr. Fogg need a new valet?
16. Describe the Reform Club.
17. Why did Passepartout leave Paris?



18. How is Mr. Fogg different from other men in London?

19. What are some jobs Passepartout had before working for Mr. Fogg?

20. What do you predict will happen to Passepartout in the coming days?

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Phileas Fogg lived in
a. Paris b. London c. Rome d. New York
2. Mr. Fogg's home was on
a. Oxford Street b. Bond Street c. Regent Street d. Savile Row
3. Fogg was known for his
a. kindness b. habits and punctuality
c. wealth and fame d. large family
4. The neighbors thought Fogg was
a. very social b. a teacher c. always traveling d. strange and cold
5. Fogg spent much of his day at the
a. Parliament b. Reform Club c. Royal Academy d. Theater
6. At the club, he often played
a. chess b. poker c. whist d. dominoes
7. Mr. Fogg spoke
a. loudly and often b. very little but clearly
c. quickly and nervously d. only to his family
8. On October 2nd, 1872, Fogg's servant
a. disappeared suddenly b. got married c. left for Paris d. became sick
9. Fogg hired a new valet named
a. Fix b. Ralph c. Passepartout d. Andrew
10. Passepartout was about years old.
a. 20 b. 25 c. 30 d. 35
11. Passepartout had tried many
a. books b. professions c. schools d. sports
12. One of his jobs had been as a
a. doctor b. singer c. banker d. tailor
13. Passepartout wanted a life of
a. fame b. travel c. peace and regularity d. adventure
14. Fogg told Passepartout that his habits
a. never change b. change often c. depend on travel d. are confusing
15. Passepartout thought Fogg's house was
a. full of paintings b. elegant but plain c. untidy and messy d. noisy and crowded
16. The furniture in the house was
a. colorful and heavy b. old and broken
c. plain but polished d. expensive and golden
17. There were no in the house.
a. chairs b. windows c. decorations d. clocks
18. Instead, there were large in every room.
a. portraits b. clocks c. mirrors d. lamps

Chapter 2

The challenge at the Reform Club

التجسدي
في نادي الإصلاح

Key Vocabulary

particular (adj)	محدد / معين	steamships (n)	سفن بخارية	precision (n)	دقة
conversation (n)	محادثة / حديث	companions (n)	رفاق / شركاء	astonishment (n)	دهشة / ذهول
arise (v)	ينشأ / يظهر	mysterious (adj)	غامض	protest (v)	يحتج
rob (v)	يسرق	generous (adj)	كريم / سخي	imaginary (adj)	خيالي
thief (n)	لص	chuckle (v)	ضحك بهدوء	succeed (v)	ينجح
escape (v)	يهرب	measured (adj)	محسوب / موزون	risk (v)	يغامر / يخاطر
shocked (adj)	مصدوم	nonsense (n)	هراء / كلام فارغ	enormous (adj)	ضخم جداً
speculate (v)	يتكهن / يخمن	entirely (adv)	تماماً / كلياً	eccentric (adj)	غريب الأطوار
identity (n)	هوية	hesitation (n)	تردد	venture (n)	مغامرة / مشروع محفوف بالمخاطر
discuss (v)	يناقش	timetable (n)	جدول مواعيد		
		disbelief (n)	عدم تصديق		

Values in this Chapter



القيم في هذا الفصل

Precision and Planning

الدقة والتخطيط

Careful preparation can make even the impossible possible.

التحضير الدقيق يمكن أن يجعل حتى المستحيل ممكناً.

Courage to Risk

الشجاعة على المخاطرة

Daring to put everything on the line requires bravery.

الجرأة على وضع كل شيء على المحك تتطلب شجاعة.

Loyalty

الولاء

Passepartout's obedience shows devotion, even in confusion.

طاعة باسبارتو تظهر التفاني، حتى في المواقف المربكة.

Justice and Duty

العدالة والواجب

Detective Fix demonstrates persistence in pursuing what he believes is right.

المحقق فيكس يظهر الإصرار في متابعة ما يعتقد أنه صواب.

"Bet your life on it"

راهن بحياتك على ذلك

To be very certain about something.

أن تكون متأكدًا جدًا من شيء ما.

"A temple of reason and respectability"

معبد للعقل والاحترام

A place where logic, knowledge, and respect are highly valued.

مكان يُقدَّر فيه المنطق والمعرفة والاحترام بدرجة عالية.

"Crossing oceans faster than ever before"

عبور المحيطات أسرع من أي وقت مضى

Making unprecedented progress in travel and technology.

تحقيق تقدم غير مسبوق في السفر والتكنولوجيا.

"Caught the attention of Mr. Fogg"

جذب انتباه السيد فوج

Strongly interested or focused his mind, not literally grabbing attention.

أثار اهتمامه أو ركّز ذهنه بقوة، وليس بالمعنى الحرفي للقبض على الانتباه.

GIANTS
المعاني

Summary

In October 1872, Phileas Fogg was at the Reform Club when news spread about a Bank of England robbery. Some men talked about the robbery, while others discussed modern travel with trains and steamships. One man said traveling around the world would take many months, but Stuart said it could be done in 80 days. Fogg surprised everyone by saying: "Yes, it's possible." He then showed a detailed plan proving it could be done in exactly 80 days. Stuart didn't believe him, so Fogg suggested a bet: if he failed, he would pay £20,000, and if he succeeded, they would pay him the same amount. They agreed, and Fogg announced he would start his journey that very evening at 8:45 p.m. and return on December 21st. Everyone was shocked and amazed.

في أكتوبر ١٨٧٢، كان فيلياس فوج في نادي الإصلاح عندما انتشرت أخبار عن سرقة بنك إنجلترا. بينما كان البعض يتحدث عن السرقة، ناقش آخرون سرعة السفر الحديثة بالقطارات والسفن. قال أحدهم إن السفر حول العالم قد يستغرق عدة أشهر، لكن ستيفارت قال إنه قد يتم في 80 يومًا. فوج فاجأ الجميع وقال بهدوء: "نعم، هذا ممكن." ثم عرض خطة دقيقة لرحلة تستغرق ٨٠ يومًا تمامًا. ستيفارت لم يصدق ذلك، فاقترح فوج رهًا: إذا فشل سيدفع 20 ألف جنيه، وإذا نجح سيدفعون له نفس المبلغ. وافقوا، وأعلن فوج أنه سيبدأ رحلته في نفس الليلة، الساعة ٨:٤٥ مساءً، وسيعود يوم 21 ديسمبر. الجميع كان في حالة صدمة ودهشة.



An Afternoon at the Reform Club

بعد ظهر في نادي الإصلاح

That particular afternoon in October 1872, a conversation arose in the Reform Club that would change the life of Phileas Fogg forever. The news had spread through London: the Bank of England had been robbed of fifty-five thousand pounds. The thief had escaped, leaving the city in shock. The newspapers speculated about his identity, though no one yet knew who he was. Some members of the club spoke of the robbery while reading the day's paper. Others discussed the speed of modern travel.

في ذلك العصر من أكتوبر ١٨٧٢، نشأت محادثة في نادي الإصلاح كان لها تأثير كبير على حياة فيليبس فوج إلى الأبد. انتشرت الأخبار في لندن: لقد سُرقت خمسة وخمسون ألف جنيه من بنك إنجلترا. هرب اللص. مما ترك المدينة في حالة صدمة. تكهنت الصحف بهويته. رغم أن لا أحد كان يعرفه بعد. تحدث بعض أعضاء النادي عن السرقة أثناء قراءة صحيفة اليوم. بينما ناقش آخرون سرعة وسائل السفر الحديثة.

New railways were being built in India, the Suez Canal had opened, and steamships were crossing oceans faster than ever before. Phileas Fogg sat quietly, as always, playing whist with his companions. He seemed unaffected by the excitement around him. His calmness made him mysterious, and some of the gentlemen often wondered if anything could truly surprise him.

كانت السكك الحديدية الجديدة تبنى في الهند. وقد فتح قناة السويس. وكانت السفن البخارية تعبر المحيطات أسرع من أي وقت مضى. جلس فيليبس فوج هادئاً كالعادة. يلعب لعبة الوست مع رفقاته. بدا غير متأثر بالضجة من حوله. كان هدوءه يجعل منه شخصاً غامضاً. وغالباً ما كان بعض السادة يتساءلون إن كان يمكن لأي شيء أن يفاجئه حقاً.



A Heated Debate

جدال عنيد

One of the players, Mr. Ralph, set down his cards and declared: "The world is growing smaller every day. Why, gentlemen, one might soon travel around it in a matter of months!" "Months?" replied Andrew Stuart, another member, laughing. "You are too generous, Ralph. With all these steamships and railways, one might do it in eighty days or even less!" The group chuckled, but Stuart's words caught the attention of Mr. Fogg. He raised his calm eyes from the cards and spoke in his measured voice. "Eighty days," he said. "It can be done." "Done?" cried Stuart. "Nonsense! You cannot travel around the world in eighty days. It is impossible." "On the contrary," replied Fogg, "it is entirely possible. I am prepared to prove it." The men leaned closer. "You speak seriously, Fogg?" "I never speak otherwise." "Then explain yourself," demanded Stuart.

وضع أحد اللاعبين، السيد رالف، أوراقه على الطاولة وأعلن: "العالم يصبح أصغر يوماً بعد يوم أيها السادة. قد يسافر المرء حوله قريباً في غضون أشهر!" "أشهر؟" رد أندرو ستوارت، عضو آخر، ضاحكاً. "أنت كريم جداً يا رالف مع كل هذه السفن البخارية والسكك الحديدية. يمكن للمرء أن يفعلها في ثمانين يوماً أو أقل!" "اضحكت المجموعة. لكن كلمات ستوارت جذبت انتباه السيد فوج. رفع عينيه الهادئتين من الأوراق وتحدث بصوته المدروس: ثمانون يوماً. قال: يمكن تحقيقها." صرخ ستوارت: "هذا هراء! لا يمكنك السفر حول العالم في ثمانين يوماً. هذا مستحيل." "على العكس،" رد فوج: "هذا ممكن تماماً. أنا مستعد لإثبات ذلك." مال الرجال للأمام بانتباه هل تتحدث بجديّة يا فوج؟ "أنا لا أتكلم إلا بجديّة." "أذن فسر نفسك." طالب ستوارت.



The Calculation

الحسابات

"Without hesitation, Mr. Fogg produced a small notebook from his pocket. Inside was a neat timetable, drawn up with precision. He spoke as though reciting a mathematical formula, listing each stage of the journey with exact times. Then, with calm certainty, he concluded, 'Total: exactly 80 days.'" He recited it like a formula:

- London to Suez – 7 days
- Suez to Bombay – 13 days

- Bombay to Calcutta – 3 days
- Calcutta to Hong Kong – 13 days
- Hong Kong to Yokohama – 6 days
- Yokohama to San Francisco – 22 days
- San Francisco to New York – 7 days
- New York to London – 9 days

يدون تردد. أخرج السيد فوج دفترًا صغيرًا من جيبه. كان بداخله جدول مرتب ومعد بدقة. تحدث وكأنه يتلو صيغة رياضية. مدرجًا كل مرحلة من الرحلة مع أوقاتها الدقيقة. ثم بثقة هادئة. استنتج: الإجمالي: بالضبط ٨٠ يومًا. وذكر الجدول كصيغة:

- لندن إلى السويس – ٧ أيام
- السويس إلى بومباي – ١٣ يومًا
- بومباي إلى كلكتا – ٣ أيام
- كلكتا إلى هونغ كونغ – ١٣ يومًا
- هونغ كونغ إلى يوكوهاما – ٦ أيام
- يوكوهاما إلى سان فرانسيسكو – ٢٢ يومًا
- سان فرانسيسكو إلى نيويورك – ٧ أيام
- نيويورك إلى لندن – ٩ أيام

The men stared in astonishment. "You forget storms, delays, accidents," protested Stuart. "You count only the minutes of the timetable, not the accidents of life." "Accidents?" said Fogg. "I never plan for accidents. A true gentleman does not waste time on imaginary delays. The routes exist. The ships sail. The trains run. The journey is possible." "Impossible," muttered Stuart. "Even if you succeed in reaching India, the rest of the world will defeat you." Mr. Fogg placed his cards on the table. "Shall we make it interesting?"

حدق الرجال بدهشة. لقد نسيت العواصف والتأخيرات والحوادث. أنت تحسب فقط دقائق الجدول الزمني. لا حوادث الحياة. "الحوادث؟" قال فوج. أنا لا أخطط للحوادث. الرجل النبيل الحقيقي لا يضع وقته في تأخيرات وهمية. الطرق موجودة. السفن تبهر. القطارات تعمل. الرحلة ممكنة. "مستحيلة." تتم ستيوارت. حتى لو نجحت في الوصول إلى الهند. بقية العالم سيهزمك. "وضع السيد فوج أوراقه على الطاولة. هل نجعل الأمر ممتعًا؟"



The Challenge

التحدي

The other men looked at one another. Stuart narrowed his eyes. "What do you mean?" he asked. "I propose a challenge," said Fogg calmly. "I shall go around the world in eighty days or less. If I fail, I will pay you twenty thousand pounds. If I succeed, you will pay me the same." A silence followed. Twenty thousand pounds! It was an enormous sum, enough to buy an estate or fund an entire railway project. For Fogg to risk so much showed either great confidence or great madness. "You are jesting," said Stuart. "Not in the least," replied Fogg.

نظر الرجال الآخرون إلى بعضهم البعض. ضيق ستيوارت عينيه. ماذا تعني؟ سأل. "أفترح تحديًا." قال فوج بهدوء. سأسافر حول العالم في ثمانين يومًا أو أقل. إذا فشلت. سأدفع لك عشرين ألف جنيه. وإذا نجحت. ستدفع لي نفس المبلغ. "عم صمت. عشرين ألف جنيه! كان مبلغًا هائلًا. يكفي لشراء عقار أو تمويل مشروع سكك حديدية كامل. مخاطرة فوج بمثل هذا المبلغ أظهرت إيمانًا كبيرًا أو جنونًا كبيرًا. "أنت تمزح." قال ستيوارت. "ليس بالقدر القليل." أجاب فوج.

"Shall we say the challenge is accepted?" One by one, the men agreed. They were curious to see if this eccentric gentleman would truly attempt such a ridiculous venture. A contract was drawn up and signed. "You will leave when?" asked Ralph. "Immediately," said Fogg. "Today, October 2nd, at 8:45 in the evening, I shall take the train to Dover, and from there to Calais. I shall return here to the Reform Club on Saturday, December 21st, at the same hour. Gentlemen, mark your calendars." The men shook their heads in disbelief.

"هل نقول إذن أن التحدي مقبول؟ وافق الرجال واحداً تلو الآخر. كانوا فضوليين لمعرفة ما إذا كان هذا الرجل الغريب الأطوار سيحاول بالفعل هذه المغامرة الغريبة. تم إعداد عقد وتوقيعه. متى ستغادر؟ سأل رالف. "على الفور." قال فوج. اليوم. ٢ أكتوبر. الساعة ٨:٤٥ مساءً. سأستقل القطار إلى دوفر. ومن هناك إلى كاليه. سأعود إلى نادي الإصلاح يوم السبت ٢١ ديسمبر في نفس الساعة. أيها السادة. ضعوا هذا التاريخ في مذكرتكم. "هز الرجال رؤوسهم بعدم تصديق.

Setbook Questions & Answers



- Where was the Reform Club located?**
It was located in London.
أين كان يقع نادي الإصلاح؟
كان يقع في لندن.
- Who were the members of the Reform Club?**
They were politicians, bankers, engineers, and men of science.
من كانوا أعضاء نادي الإصلاح؟
كانوا سياسيين، مصرفيين، مهندسين، ورجال علم.
- What major crime had shocked London?**
The Bank of England was robbed.
ما الجريمة الكبرى التي صدمت لندن؟
تم السطو على بنك إنجلترا.
- How much money was stolen from the Bank of England?**
Fifty-five thousand pounds.
كم كان المبلغ المسروق من بنك إنجلترا؟
خمسة وخمسون ألف جنيه.
- What important travel development was mentioned in the discussion?**
The opening of the Suez Canal and the building of new railways in India.
ما التطور المهم في السفر الذي ذكر في النقاش؟
افتتاح قناة السويس وبناء سكك حديدية جديدة في الهند.
- What game did Fogg play at the club?**
Whist, a card game.
ما اللعبة التي كان فوج يلعبها في النادي؟
لعبة الورق "وست".
- Who suggested that the world could be traveled in 80 days?**
Andrew Stuart.
من اقترح أن العالم يمكن السفر حوله في ٨٠ يوماً؟
أندرو ستيوارت.
- How did Phileas Fogg react to Stuart's claim?**
He calmly said it was possible and that he could prove it.
كيف كان رد فعل فيليبس فوج على كلام ستيوارت؟
قال بهدوء إنه ممكن وأنه قادر على إثبات ذلك.
- What did Fogg use to show his calculation of the trip?**
A notebook with a detailed timetable.
ما الذي استخدمه فوج ليظهر حساب رحلته؟
دفتر ملاحظات يحتوي على جدول زمني مفصل.
- What was Stuart's main argument against Fogg's plan?**
Stuart said Fogg forgot about storms, delays, and accidents.
ما كان اعتراض ستيوارت الرئيسي على خطة فوج؟
قال ستيوارت إن فوج تجاهل العواصف والتأخيرات والحوادث.
- Why did Fogg's calmness make him seem mysterious?**
Because he stayed calm even when others were excited or shocked.
لماذا جعل هدوء فوج منه شخصاً غامضاً؟
لأنه ظل هادئاً بينما كان الآخرون متحمسين أو مضطربين.
- How does the Suez Canal symbolize progress in the story?**
It showed how travel was becoming faster and more connected.
كيف ترمز قناة السويس إلى التقدم في القصة؟
أظهرت كيف أصبح السفر أسرع وأكثر ترابطاً.

Critical Thinking Questions

13. How has modern travel changed compared to the 1870s?

كيف تغير السفر الحديث مقارنة بعام ١٨٧٠؟

Today, travel is much faster and easier with planes and advanced technology.

اليوم أصبح السفر أسرع وأسهل بكثير بفضل الطائرات والتقنيات الحديثة.

14. Do you think accidents should always be considered in planning? Why or why not?

هل تعتقد أنه يجب دائماً أخذ الحوادث في الاعتبار عند التخطيط؟ ولماذا؟

Yes, because unexpected problems can happen anytime.

نعم، لأن المشاكل غير المتوقعة يمكن أن تحدث في أي وقت.

15. Would you risk everything you own for a challenge? Why or why not?

هل تخاطر بكل ما تملك من أجل تحدٍ؟ ولماذا؟

No, because it is too dangerous and risky.

لا، لأنه خطر جداً ومحفوف بالمخاطر.

16. How does Fogg's determination inspire or worry you?

كيف يلهمك إصرار فوج أو يجعلك تشعر بالقلق؟

It inspires me because he is brave and confident.

يلهمني لأنه شجاع وواثق بنفسه.

17. If you were one of the gentlemen at the club, would you accept Fogg's challenge?

إذا كنت أحد رجال النادي، هل كنت ستقبل تحدي فوج؟

Yes, to see if he could really succeed.

نعم، لأرى إذا كان سينجح حقاً.

18. How might this chapter reflect human curiosity about the world?

كيف قد يعكس هذا الفصل فضول البشر تجاه العالم؟

It shows people are excited to explore and test limits.

يبين أن الناس متحمسون للاستكشاف وتجربة حدود قدراتهم.

19. Do you think challenges and risks are necessary for progress? Explain.

هل تعتقد أن التحديات والمخاطر ضرورية للتقدم؟ اشرح.

Yes, because without risks there is no growth or discovery.

نعم، لأنه بدون المخاطرة لا يوجد نمو أو اكتشاف.

20. What does this chapter teach us about confidence? ماذا يعلمنا هذا الفصل عن الثقة بالنفس؟

That confidence can help you achieve great things, but it must be balanced with caution.

أن الثقة بالنفس تساعدك على تحقيق إنجازات عظيمة، لكن يجب أن تتوازن مع الحذر.

Chapter 2 General Exercises

1) Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think Mr. Fogg was so calm when everyone else was shocked by the bank robbery?

2. What does Fogg's precise timetable reveal about his personality?

3. Why was Stuart so sure the journey was impossible?

4. Why might Fogg refuse to plan for accidents during his journey?

5. What risk does Fogg take by betting twenty thousand pounds?
6. Why do the other men agree to the bet even though they doubt Fogg?
7. How does the opening of the Suez Canal affect global travel in this story?
8. What does Fogg's decision to leave immediately show about his character?
9. Why do you think the other men find Fogg mysterious?
10. What lesson can we learn from Fogg's bold challenge?
11. How much money was stolen from the Bank of England?
12. What two main topics were the gentlemen discussing at the Reform Club?
13. Who suggested that the world could be traveled in eighty days?
14. What tool did Fogg use to explain his travel plan?
15. List two parts of Fogg's journey timetable.
16. What did Stuart say Fogg forgot to consider?
17. What was the amount of the bet between Fogg and the men?
18. When exactly did Fogg plan to leave London?
19. When was Fogg supposed to return to the Reform Club?
20. Why were the men shocked after hearing Fogg's plan?

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

1. The Reform Club was located on
 a. Savile Row b. Pall Mall c. Oxford Street d. Bond Street
2. The Reform Club was known for its
 a. loud parties b. art galleries
 c. concerts d. respectability and reason

3. The members of the Reform Club were
 a. bankers, engineers, scientists b. actors and singers
 c. students and teachers d. soldiers only
4. The Bank of England had been robbed of
 a. £25,000 b. £55,000 c. £100,000 d. £5,000
5. The robbery left the city of London in
 a. joy b. confusion c. shock d. peace
6. Newspapers speculated about the of the thief.
 a. age b. identity c. family d. address
7. Some members of the club also discussed the speed of
 a. modern travel b. farming c. new schools d. newspapers
8. The opening of the had made travel faster.
 a. Eiffel Tower b. Reform Club c. Suez Canal d. Big Ben
9. Mr. Fogg sat quietly, playing as usual.
 a. chess b. whist c. dice d. cards with children
10. His calmness made him seem
 a. ordinary b. lazy c. angry d. mysterious
11. Mr. Ralph said the world was growing
 a. larger b. smaller c. more crowded d. more dangerous
12. Stuart said one could travel the world in
 a. 1 year b. 6 months c. 80 days or less d. 200 days
13. Phileas Fogg replied that the journey was
 a. impossible b. possible c. dangerous d. foolish
14. Fogg pulled out a from his pocket.
 a. timetable notebook b. deck of cards
 c. newspaper d. map of London
15. Stuart argued that Fogg forgot about
 a. food and water b. delays and accidents
 c. tickets and money d. family and friends
16. Fogg said he never planned for
 a. delays b. happiness c. food d. travel
17. According to Fogg, a gentleman does not waste time on
 a. real travel b. playing cards c. imaginary delays d. other people
18. Fogg proposed a to prove his point.
 a. lecture b. challenge c. debate d. story
19. The gentlemen thought the challenge was either great confidence or great
 a. luck b. wisdom c. kindness d. madness
20. Fogg planned to leave on
 a. October 2nd at 8:45 p.m. b. October 3rd at 9:00 a.m.
 c. October 4th at midnight d. October 5th at noon
21. The men reacted with to his plan.
 a. belief b. disbelief c. excitement d. joy

Chapter 3

Across the Mediterranean to Suez

عبر البحر المتوسط
إلى السويس

Key Vocabulary

wardrobe ⁽ⁿ⁾	خزانة ملابس	voyage ⁽ⁿ⁾	رحلة بحرية	rattle ^(v)	يهتز / يرتج
carpetbag ⁽ⁿ⁾	حقيرة سفر صغيرة	compartment ⁽ⁿ⁾	مقصورة	countryside ⁽ⁿ⁾	الريف
stockings ⁽ⁿ⁾	جوارب طويلة	dizzy ^(adj)	مصدوم / مرتبك	vineyards ⁽ⁿ⁾	كروم العنب
rug ⁽ⁿ⁾	بطانية / سجادة صغيرة	mutter ^(v)	يتمتم	glimpse ⁽ⁿ⁾	لمحة / نظرة خاطفة
precisely ^(adv)	بدقة / بالضبط	haste ⁽ⁿ⁾	عجلة / استعجال	vessel ⁽ⁿ⁾	سفينة
tremble ^(v)	يرتجف	proof ⁽ⁿ⁾	دليل	rigging ⁽ⁿ⁾	جبال وصواري السفينة
hooves ⁽ⁿ⁾	حوافر	fate ⁽ⁿ⁾	قدر / مصير	revive ^(v)	ينتعش / يتعافى
clatter ^(v)	يحدث صوت طرقعة	confused ^(adj)	مشوش / مرتبك	curiosity ⁽ⁿ⁾	فضول
foggy ^(adj)	ضبابي	extraordinary ^(adj)	استثنائي	idle ^(adj)	فارغ / بلا عمل
glow ^(v/n)	يتوهج / توهج			warrant ⁽ⁿ⁾	مذكرة / أمر رسمي

Values in this Chapter

القيم في هذا الفصل

Discipline in all circumstances

الانضباط في جميع الظروف

Fogg's orderliness gives him strength.

تنظيم فوج يمنحه القوة.

Openness to new experiences

الانفتاح على التجارب الجديدة

Passepartout shows the value of wonder and curiosity:

باسبارتو يظهر قيمة الدهشة والفضول.

Perseverance in duty

المثابرة في الواجب

Fix's determination, though misguided, shows commitment.

إصرار فيكس، رغم كونه مضللاً، يُظهر الالتزام.

Respect and fairness

الاحترام والإنصاف

Fogg treats others with dignity, even while focused on his goal.

فوج يعامل الآخرين بكرامة، حتى أثناء تركيزه على هدفه.

"Keep a close watch"

راقب عن كثب

☞ Observe carefully.

المراقبة الدقيقة والانتباه لكل التفاصيل.

"Eyes widened"

اتساع العيون

☞ Showing shock or amazement, not just opening eyes.

يدل على الصدمة أو الدهشة، وليس مجرد فتح العينين.

"Off to the ends of the earth"

إلى أقاصي الأرض

☞ Going very far away, to the most distant places.

الذهاب بعيداً جداً، إلى الأماكن الأبعد أو النائية جداً.

"If only the sea would stop moving!"

ليت البحر يتوقف عن الحركة

☞ Expressing frustration with seasickness.

التعبير عن الإحباط بسبب دوّار البحر.



Summary



In 1872, Phileas Fogg lived quietly in London, following a strict routine at the Reform Club. After a debate, he bet £20,000 that he could travel around the world in 80 days. That night, he left with his servant Passepartout, while Detective Fix secretly followed, suspecting Fogg was a thief. They crossed France to Marseilles, then sailed to Egypt. Fogg stayed calm and organized, Passepartout enjoyed the adventure, and Fix watched closely, planning to arrest him.

في عام ١٨٧٢، عاش فيليبس فوج حياة هادئة ومنظمة في لندن. بعد نقاش، راهن بمبلغ ٢٠ ألف جنيه أنه يستطيع السفر حول العالم في ٨٠ يوماً. في نفس الليلة، غادر مع خادمه باسبرتو، بينما تبعه المفتش فيكس سرّاً ظناً أنه لص البنك. عبروا فرنسا إلى مارسيليا، ثم أبحروا إلى مصر. فوج ظل هادئاً ومنظماً، باسبرتو استمتع بالمغامرة، وفيكس راقبهم محاولاً القبض عليه.

انتظروا!!!!

كتاب مراجعة العملاقة
للفصل الثاني الثانوي

العملاقة



A Servant in Shock

الخادم في صدمة

When Mr. Fogg returned to his house on Savile Row, Passepartout was arranging his master's wardrobe. The Frenchman had imagined a calm life with quiet walks and peaceful evenings. He had no idea what was about to happen. "Passepartout," said Fogg without a trace of emotion, "we are leaving in ten minutes. Pack a carpetbag with two shirts and three pairs of stockings. Bring my woolen coat and the traveling rug. Do not forget the banknotes. We leave for Dover." Passepartout dropped the shoes he was polishing. "Leaving? Tonight?" "Yes. We are going around the world in eighty days." Passepartout's eyes widened. "Around the world? In eighty days?" "Precisely." The Frenchman had dreamed of quiet. Instead, he was being thrown into the greatest adventure of his life. But he had no choice. He obeyed, though his hands trembled as he packed.

عندما عاد السيد فوج إلى منزله في شارع سافيل، كان باسبارتو يرتب خزانة ملابس سيده. تخيل الفرنسي حياة هادئة مع نزوات مسائية ومساعات هادئة. ولم يكن يعرف ما سيحدث. قال فوج بلا أي أثر للعاطفة: "باسبارتو، سنغادر خلال عشر دقائق. ضع في حقيبة صغيرة قميصين وثلاث جوارب. احضر معطفني الصوفي وبطانية السفر. لا تنس الأوراق النقدية. نتوجه إلى دوفر." سقطت الأحذية التي كان يلمعها باسبارتو من يده. "نغادر؟ الليلة؟" "نعم، سنحيط العالم في ثمانين يوماً." اتسعت عينا باسبارتو بدهشة "حول العالم؟ في ثمانين يوماً؟" بالضبط. "كان الفرنسي يحلم بالهدوء. لكنه وجد نفسه في أعظم مغامرة في حياته. لم يكن له خيار سوى الطاعة. رغم أن يديه ارتعشت أثناء حزم أمتعته.

The Departure

الانطلاق

At exactly 8:45 that evening, Mr. Fogg and Passepartout left Savile Row and entered a cab. The horse's hooves clattered against the stones as they hurried through the foggy streets of London. Gas lamps glowed faintly, and the bells of Big Ben struck the hour as if to mark the beginning of their strange voyage. At Charing Cross Station, the train was waiting. Passengers hurried to their compartments, porters shouted, and whistles blew. Calm as ever, Fogg checked his watch, purchased two tickets, and boarded. Passepartout followed, still dizzy from the speed of events. "Mon Dieu!" he muttered. "Here I thought I had found peace, and now I am off to the ends of the earth!" The train whistled and moved forward. The journey had begun.

في تمام الساعة ٨:٤٥ مساءً، غادر فوج وباسبارتو شارع سافيل وركبا عربة. صهيل الحصان كان يطرُق الحجازة بينما سارعوا عبر شوارع لندن الضبابية. أضواء الغاز تلالأت بشكل خافت. ودقات ساعة بيغ بن أعلنت بداية رحلتهم الغريبة. في محطة تشارينج كروس، كان القطار في الانتظار. ركض الركاب إلى عرباتهم. والصيادون صاحوا. وأطلق الصافرات. بهدوء المعتاد، تحقق فوج من ساعته. اشتوى تذكريتين. وركب القطار. تبعه باسبارتو. ما زال مذهولاً من سرعة الأحداث. "يا الهي! أتممت. ظننت أنني وجدت السلام. والآن أنا متجه إلى أطراف الأرض!" أصقر القطار وتحرك. بدأت الرحلة.

Suspicion Arises

ظهور الشك

At that same moment, another man was watching. His name was Detective Fix, an agent of Scotland Yard. He had been following rumors about the Bank of England robbery. The description of the suspect—a tall, well-dressed Englishman with calm manners—seemed to match Phileas Fogg. When Fix saw Fogg and his servant board the train to Dover with such haste, his suspicions deepened. Why else would a gentleman leave London so suddenly with a bag of banknotes? Fix decided to follow them.

في نفس اللحظة، كان رجل آخر يراقبهم. اسمه المحقق فيكس. من سكوتلاند يارد. كان يتابع الشائعات حول سرقة بنك إنجلترا. وصف المشتبه به — رجل إنجليزي طويل. أنيق. وهادئ — بدى مطابقاً لفوج. عندما رأى فيكس فوج وخادمه يركبان القطار إلى دوفر بهذه السرعة، تعمق شكه. لماذا يغادر رجل لندن فجأة ومعه حقيبة مليئة بالأوراق النقدية؟ قرر فيكس متابعة القطار.

He would keep a close eye on this mysterious traveler until he had proof. Thus, as the train sped into the night, three men were bound together by fate:

- Fogg, calm and determined, who trusted in timetables more than chance.
- Passepartout, confused but loyal, who longed for peace but found adventure.
- Fix, watchful and suspicious, who believed he was chasing a thief.
- The stage was set for an extraordinary race against time.

سيظل يراقب هذا المسافر الغامض حتى يحصل على الدليل. وهكذا. مع انطلاق القطار في الليل. أصبح ثلاثة رجال مرتبطين بالقدر:

- فوج: هادئ ومصمم. يثق بالجدول أكثر من الحظ.
- باسبارتو: مرتبك لكنه مخلص. يريد السلام لكنه وجد المغامرة.
- فيكس: مراقب ومشكك. يعتقد أنه يطارد لصاً.
- استعد المسرح لسباق استثنائي ضد الزمن.



From Paris to the Sea

من باريس إلى البحر

The train from Paris rattled southward through the French countryside. Fields of golden wheat and rows of vineyards rolled past the windows. Villages with red-tiled roofs and small church towers flashed by as the train sped on. Inside the carriage, Phileas Fogg sat with his usual calm, his eyes occasionally glancing at the timetable in his hand. Passepartout, on the other hand, pressed his face to the glass like an eager child. He had never traveled so far from London, and every detail fascinated him—the smoke of distant factories, the peasants gathering grapes, the winding rivers that shone in the afternoon sun.

تحرك القطار من باريس جنوباً عبر الريف الفرنسي. حقول القمح الذهبية وكروم العنب مرّت أمام النوافذ. القرى ذات الأسطح الحمراء وأبراج الكنائس الصغيرة اختفت بسرعة بينما تسارع القطار. جلس فوج هادئاً كعادته. ينظر أحياناً إلى الجدول الزمني في يده. أما باسبارتو. فقد ضغط وجهه على الزجاج مثل طفل متحمس. لم يسافر بعيداً عن لندن من قبل. وكل التفاصيل أدهشته — دخان المصانع البعيدة. الضاحون الذين يجتمعون العنب. والأنهار المتعرجة التي تلمع تحت الشمس.

"Mon Dieu," he whispered, "I thought my master was a quiet man who lived only by his clock. Instead, he drags me across all of France within a day!" Fogg, hearing him, simply nodded and adjusted his cuffs. "The train is on time," he said. When they reached Marseilles, the air was filled with the smell of salt and tar. Ships crowded the port, their masts rising like a forest of poles against the evening sky. The Mediterranean lay before them, blue and endless. For Passepartout, it was a first glimpse of a world beyond Europe. Within hours, they boarded the steamship Mongolia, which was bound for Egypt.

همس قائلاً "يا الهي". ظننت أن سيدي رجل هادئ يعيش وفق ساعته فقط. لكنه يجرفني عبر كل فرنسا في يوم واحد. "اسمعه فوج. فأوما ببساطة وعدل أكمامه". القطار في الموعد. "عندما وصلوا إلى مرسيليا. امتلأ الجو برائحة الملح والقطران. السفن كانت مزدهمة في الميناء. وسراياتها ترتفع كغابة من الأعمدة أمام السماء المسائية. كان البحر الأبيض المتوسط أمامهم أزرقاً ولا نهاية له. بالنسبة لباسبارتو. كانت هذه أول لمحة عن عالم خارج أوروبا. بعد ساعات. ركبوا السفينة البخارية منغوليا المتجهة إلى مصر.



Life on the Mongolia

الحياة على متن المنغوليا

The Mongolia was a proud vessel, painted black with gleaming brass rails. Its tall smokestack belched clouds of coal smoke, and its engines beat with the rhythm of a giant heart. On deck, the salty wind whipped through the rigging, and gulls followed in their wake. Passengers came from many nations: English merchants, French officers, Indian officials, and travelers of every description. The deck echoed with different languages—English, French, Italian, Arabic, and more.

كانت منغوليا سفينة فخمة. سوداء اللون. مع قضبان نحاسية لامعة. المدخنة الطويلة كانت تنفث أعمدة من الدخان. ومحركاتها كانت تضرب بايقاع قلب عملاق. على السطح. كان النسيم المالح يمر عبر الحبال. والنوارس تلاحق السفينة. كان الركاب من عدة جنسيات. تجار إنجليز. ضباط فرنسيون. مسؤولون هنود. ومسافرون من كل وصف. ارتفعت الأصوات بلغات مختلفة — الإنجليزية. الفرنسية. الإيطالية. العربية. وأكثر.

Passepartout at first struggled to keep his balance as the ship rocked gently. He leaned over the rail and groaned. "If only the sea would stop moving!" But soon, the fresh air revived him, and curiosity replaced discomfort. He wandered among the passengers, asking questions, marveling at their costumes, and laughing at the strange mixture of accents. At night, he stood on deck gazing at the stars, brighter than he had ever seen in London. Mr. Fogg, by contrast, lived exactly as if he were still in Savile Row.

في البداية. واجه باسبارتو صعوبة في الحفاظ على توازنه بينما كانت السفينة تتأرجح برفق. مال على الحاجز وتنهّد: ليت البحر يتوقف عن الحركة! لكن سرعان ما أنعشه الهواء النقي. وحلت الفضول محل الانزعاج. تجول بين الركاب. يسأل الأسئلة. ويعجب بأزيائهم. ويضحك من الاختلاط الغريب للهجات. في الليل. وقف على السطح متأملاً النجوم. أكثر إشرافاً مما رأى في لندن من قبل. أما السيد فوج. فكان يعيش كما لو أنه لا يزال في شارع سافيل رو.

He rose at eight, took breakfast at nine, walked for half an hour, then joined a game of whist with three gentlemen. He read his guidebook at fixed hours and checked his watch regularly. He did not waste a moment on idle talk or sightseeing. "My master travels the world," Passepartout muttered, "but he behaves as if he never left his armchair!" Still, the servant admired Fogg's self-control. No storm, no noise, no change of scene could disturb his calm.

كان يقوم في الساعة الثامنة. ويتناول الإفطار في التاسعة. ويمشي نصف ساعة. ثم ينضم إلى لعبة الوست مع ثلاثة رجال. كان يقرأ كتاب دليله في أوقات محددة ويفحص ساعته بانتظام لم يضيع لحظة في الحديث الفارغ أو مشاهدة المعالم. تسمت باسبارتو: سيدي يسافر حول العالم. لكنه يتصرف كما لو أنه لم يترك كرسيه أبداً! ومع ذلك. كان الخادم معجباً بانضباط فوج الذاتي. لا عاصفة. ولا ضوضاء. ولا تغير في المشهد يمكن أن يزعج هدوءه.

A Watchful Eye

عين حذرة

Among the passengers was Detective Fix, an officer of Scotland Yard. He had secretly followed Fogg from Calais, convinced that the mysterious gentleman was the thief who had robbed the Bank of England. Fix kept a close watch, walking the deck at all hours, pretending to admire the sea while keeping Fogg in view. He noted every detail: the calm way Fogg handled his cards at whist, the exact change he gave the steward, the precise moments when he walked on deck. At Brindisi in Italy, the ship stopped briefly to take on coal.

من بين الركاب كان المحقق فيكس. ضابط من سكوتلاند يارد. لقد تبع فوج سراً منذ كاليه. مقتنعاً بأن هذا الرجل الغامض هو نفس الشخص الذي سرق بنك إنجلترا. ظل فيكس يراقب عن قرب. يتجول على سطح السفينة في كل الأوقات. متظاهراً بالاعجاب بالبحر بينما يراقب فوج بعين يقظة. لاحظ كل التفاصيل: هدوء فوج أثناء لعب الوست. والمبلغ الدقيق الذي يعطيه للخادم. واللحظات المحددة التي يمضي فيها على السطح. عند مدينة برينديزي في إيطاليا. توقفت السفينة لفترة وجيزة لتزويدها بالفحم.

While passengers stretched their legs, Fix hurried to send a telegram to London: "Suspect has boarded Mongolia. Bound for Suez. Please send arrest warrant to await him." But the telegraph wires were slow. Messages crawled across Europe and the Mediterranean at the pace of old horses, not lightning. Fix feared that the warrant would not arrive in time. "No matter," he thought grimly. "I shall not lose sight of him. One mistake, one slip, and I will have my proof."

بينما كان الركاب يتمددون ويمشون على السطح. أسرع فيكس لإرسال تلغراف إلى لندن: المشتبه به قد صعد على متن منغوليا. متجه إلى السويس. الرجاء إرسال أمر القبض لانتظاره. لكن أسلاك التلغراف كانت بطيئة. الرسائل زحفت عبر أوروبا والبحر الأبيض المتوسط بسرعة خيول قديمة. وليس بالبرق. خشي فيكس ألا يصل أمر القبض في الوقت المناسب. فلا بأس: فكر بصرامة. لن أفقده من نظري خطأ واحد. زلة واحدة. وسأحصل على دليلي.

Passepartout's Delight

بهجة باسبارتو

Passepartout knew nothing of Fix's suspicions. For him, the voyage was a dream. He had never seen such clear skies, such blue water, such brilliant sunsets. He laughed like a boy when he saw dolphins leaping beside the ship. He clapped his hands when flying fish

scattered like silver arrows across the waves. He stared for hours at the coastlines—Italy's rocky shores, the distant islands rising like clouds from the sea. One evening he said aloud, "Ah, France, I miss you! But what wonders await me! Who could have imagined I would travel farther in one week than in all my life before?" The young Frenchman also began to feel respect for his master. Fogg never spoke unkindly, never raised his voice, and always paid fairly. He seemed cold, but he was never cruel. Passepartout thought, "Perhaps this journey will not be so bad after all."

لم يكن باسبارتو يعلم شيئاً عن شكوك فيكس. بالنسبة له. كانت الرحلة حلمًا. لم ير أبدًا سماء صافية كهذه. ولا ماء أزرق كهذا. ولا غروب شمس رائع كهذا. ضحك مثل صبي عندما رأى الدلافين تقفز بجانب السفينة. وصقق يديه عندما تفرقت الأسماك الطائرة مثل السهام الفضية عبر الأمواج. ظل يحرق لساعات في السواحل. الشواطئ الصخرية لإيطاليا. والجزر البعيدة التي ترتفع من البحر مثل الغيوم. وفي إحدى الأمسيات قال بصوت عالٍ: "أه. فرنسا. أشتاق إليك! لكن يا لها من عجائب في انتظارني! من كان يظن أنني سأقطع مسافة أكبر في أسبوع واحد مما قطعت في حياتي كلها من قبل؟" بدأ الشاب الفرنسي أيضًا يشعر بالاحترام تجاه سيده. لم يتكلم فوج بقسوة أبدًا. ولم يرفع صوته أبدًا. وكان دائمًا عادلًا. بدا باردًا. لكنه لم يكن قاسيًا أبدًا. فكر باسبارتو: "ربما لن تكون هذه الرحلة سيئة كما كنت أظن بعد كل شيء."

Setbook Questions & Answers



1. What did Fogg tell Passepartout to pack before leaving?

ماذا طلب فوج من باسبارتو أن يحزم قبل المغادرة؟

Two shirts, three pairs of stockings, a woolen coat, a traveling rug, and the banknotes. قميصان. وثلاثة أزواج من الجوارب. ومعطف صوفي. وبطانية سفر. وأوراق نقدية.

2. At what exact time did Fogg and Passepartout leave London?

في أي وقت بالضبط غادر فوج وباسبارتو لندن؟

At exactly 8:45 in the evening. في تمام الساعة ٨:٤٥ مساءً.

3. From which station did they depart?

من أي محطة غادروا؟

Charing Cross Station. محطة تشارينغ كروس.

4. Who was Detective Fix?

من هو المفتش فيكس؟

He was a detective from Scotland Yard who suspected Fogg of robbing the Bank of England. كان مفتشًا من سكوتلاند يارد يشتبه في أن فوج هو من سرق بنك إنجلترا.

5. Why did Fix suspect Fogg?

لماذا اشتبه فيكس في فوج؟

Because Fogg matched the description of the bank robber and left London suddenly with a bag of banknotes. لأن أوصاف فوج تطابقت مع أوصاف سارق البنك. وغادر لندن فجأةً ومعه حقيبة مليئة بالأوراق النقدية.

6. How did Passepartout feel about leaving so suddenly?

كيف شعر باسبارتو بشأن المغادرة المفاجئة؟

He was shocked and nervous, but he obeyed his master. كان مصدومًا ومتوترًا. لكنه أطاع سيده.

7. What did Passepartout notice from the train window in France?

ماذا لاحظ باسبارتو من نافذة القطار في فرنسا؟

He saw golden fields, vineyards, villages with red roofs, and winding rivers. رأى حقولًا ذهبية. وكروم عنب. وقرى ذات أسطح حمراء. وأنهارًا متعرجة.

8. Where did they board the steamship Mongolia?

أين صعدوا إلى السفينة البخارية مونغوليا؟

In Marseilles, France. في مدينة مارسيليا بفرنسا.

9. How was the Mongolia described?

كيف وُصفت سفينة مونغوليا؟

- It was a proud, black-painted ship with brass rails, a tall smokestack, and powerful engines. كانت سفينة فخمة مطلية باللون الأسود. وبها قضبان نحاسية. ومدخنة عالية. ومحركات قوية.

10. What did Passepartout enjoy most about the voyage?

ما الذي استمتع به باسبارتو أكثر خلال الرحلة؟

- He enjoyed seeing dolphins, flying fish, sunsets, and meeting people from different cultures. استمتع برؤية الدلافين والأسماك الطائرة وغروب الشمس. والتعرف على أشخاص من ثقافات مختلفة.

Critical Thinking Questions

11. If you were Passepartout, how would you feel about leaving your new job so suddenly? لو كنت مكان باسبارتو، كيف ستشعر حيال ترك وظيفتك الجديدة فجأة؟

- I would feel shocked and sad. سأشعر بالصدمة والحزن.

12. Do you think Detective Fix was right to be suspicious of Fogg? Why or why not?

هل تعتقد أن المفتش فيكس كان محقًا في الاشتباه في فوج؟ ولماذا؟

- Yes, because Fogg left very suddenly with money. نعم، لأن فوج غادر فجأة ومعه مال.

13. Would you enjoy traveling like Fogg (strict schedule) or like Passepartout (curious and amazed)? هل ستستمتع بالسفر مثل فوج (بنظام صارم) أم مثل باسبارتو (فضولي ومدهش)؟

- Like Passepartout, because it's more fun. مثل باسبارتو لأنه أكثر متعة.

14. How would you react if your boss suddenly told you to travel around the world?

كيف سيكون رد فعلك إذا أخبرك مديرك فجأة أن تسافر حول العالم؟

- I would be surprised and excited. سأكون متفاجئا ومتحمسا.

15. What do you think is more important during travel: discipline or wonder?

ما الذي تعتقد أنه أكثر أهمية أثناء السفر: الانضباط أم الدهشة؟

- Wonder, because travel should be enjoyed. الدهشة. لأن السفر يجب أن يكون ممتعا.

16. How does this chapter show the difference between planning and adventure?

كيف يوضح هذا الفصل الفرق بين التخطيط والمغامرة؟

- Fogg plans, but Passepartout enjoys the adventure. فوج يخطط. وباسبارتو يستمتع بالمغامرة.

17. Do you think Fogg should have explained more to Passepartout? Why?

هل تعتقد أن فوج كان عليه أن يشرح أكثر لباسبارتو؟ ولماذا؟

- Yes, to make him feel ready. نعم، ليجعله يشعر بالاستعداد.

18. How does the author use Fix to build suspense?

كيف استخدم الكاتب شخصية فيكس لبناء عنصر التشويق؟

- By making readers wonder if Fogg is guilty or not. بجعل القارئ يتساءل إذا كان فوج مذنبًا أم لا.

19. What lessons about travel can we learn from Passepartout's excitement?

ما الدروس التي يمكن أن نتعلمها عن السفر من حماس باسبارتو؟

- Travel is better when you are curious. السفر أجمل عندما تكون فضوليا.

20. Do you think traveling without enjoying the scenery, like Fogg, is a waste? Explain.

هل تعتقد أن السفر دون الاستمتاع بالمناظر، مثل فوج، يُعتبر مضيعة؟ فسر.

- Yes, because travel is about fun and beauty. نعم، لأن السفر يتعلق بالمتعة والجمال.



Chapter 3 General Exercises

1) Answer the following questions

1. Why do you think Mr. Fogg told Passepartout about the journey at the last minute?

2. How does Passepartout's reaction to the trip show his personality?

3. Why might Detective Fix suspect Mr. Fogg without solid proof?

4. What does Fogg's behavior on the ship reveal about him?

5. Why do you think Passepartout admires Fogg's calmness despite finding it strange?

6. How might Fix's presence on the ship affect Fogg's journey later?

7. Why does Passepartout enjoy watching the passengers while Fogg ignores them?

8. What does the description of the Mediterranean port symbolize for Passepartout?

9. Why is Fix worried about the slow telegram?

10. What lesson can we learn from the contrast between Fogg and Passepartout?

11. What items did Fogg ask Passepartout to pack?

12. How did Passepartout feel when he first heard about the world trip?

13. Describe the scene at Charing Cross Station.

14. What was Detective Fix's first impression of Fogg?

15. How did Passepartout react to the train journey through France?

16. Describe the steamship Mongolia.

17. What kinds of people were on the Mongolia?

18. What made Passepartout seasick at first?

19. How did Mr. Fogg spend his time on the ship?

20. What action did Fix take in Brindisi, and why?

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. On October 2nd, Mr. Fogg told Passepartout to pack because they were
 a. moving houses b. leaving for Dover c. going to Paris d. visiting the club
2. Passepartout was told to bring only a
 a. suitcase full of books b. box of food
 c. trunk with decorations d. carpetbag with clothes and money
3. Passepartout was surprised because he thought life with Fogg would be
 a. calm and quiet b. full of travel c. dangerous d. full of surprises
4. At exactly Fogg and Passepartout left Savile Row.
 a. 7:00 p.m. b. 8:45 p.m. c. 9:30 a.m. d. 10:15 p.m.
5. They left London from Station.
 a. Waterloo b. King's Cross c. Charing Cross d. Paddington
6. As the journey began, gas lamps glowed and struck the hour.
 a. Big Ben b. church bells c. the town clock d. the train whistle
7. Another man watching Fogg was
 a. Mr. Ralph b. Andrew Stuart c. Detective Fix d. Passepartout
8. Fix suspected Fogg because of the robbery.
 a. jewelry store b. Bank of England c. Reform Club d. train station
9. Fix thought Fogg's sudden departure meant he was
 a. going on holiday b. escaping with stolen money
 c. running from family d. sick
10. Passepartout dreamed of peace but instead found
 a. boredom b. trouble with money
 c. a great adventure d. a new master
11. On the train to Paris, Passepartout looked out at the
 a. ocean b. London streets c. desert d. French countryside
12. He saw in the fields.
 a. camels b. grapes and wheat c. elephants d. palm trees
13. Fogg only cared about the
 a. timetable b. animals c. scenery d. passengers
14. Passepartout said, "My master drags me across within a day!"
 a. London b. France c. India d. Italy
15. At Marseilles, they prepared to board the
 a. Mongolia steamship b. Reform Club boat c. Titanic d. Dover ferry
16. Passepartout had never seen the before.
 a. mountains b. Mediterranean Sea c. deserts d. Thames River
17. The Mongolia was painted with brass rails.
 a. red b. black c. blue d. white
18. Passepartout felt seasick but later enjoyed the
 a. fresh air and stars b. noisy engines
 c. crowded cabins d. captain's speeches

Chapter

4

The Desert Crossing and Cairo

عبور الصحراء والقاهرة

Key Vocabulary

port ⁽ⁿ⁾	ميناء	suspicious ^(adj)	مريب / مشكوك فيه	amazed ^(adj)	مبهور / مذهول
shimmer ^(v)	يلمع / يتلألأ	urgent ^(adj)	عاجل	intervals ⁽ⁿ⁾	فترات زمنية متباعدة
dock ^(v)	ترسو (السفينة)	warrant ⁽ⁿ⁾	مذكرة / أمر رسمي	alleys ⁽ⁿ⁾	أزقة
solid ground ^(phr)	أرض صلبة	resolve ⁽ⁿ⁾	عزيمة / إصرار	fragrance ⁽ⁿ⁾	رائحة عطرة
disembark ^(v)	ينزل من السفينة	casual ^(adj)	عفوي / غير رسمي	merchant ⁽ⁿ⁾	تاجر
astonished ^(adj)	مندعش	justice ⁽ⁿ⁾	عدالة	bazaar ⁽ⁿ⁾	سوق شعبي
domes ⁽ⁿ⁾	قباب	determination ⁽ⁿ⁾	تصميم / إصرار	connections ⁽ⁿ⁾	وصلات / روابط
minarets ⁽ⁿ⁾	مآذن	desert ⁽ⁿ⁾	صحراء	enchanted ^(adj)	مسحور / مفتون
precisely / exactly ^(adv)	بدقة / بالضبط	caravans ⁽ⁿ⁾	قوافل	onward ^(adv)	إلى الأمام
faithfully ^(adv)	بإخلاص	wonders ⁽ⁿ⁾	عجائب	explore ^(v)	يكتشف / يستكشف

Values in this Chapter



القيم في هذا الفصل

Discipline keeps us focused

الانضباط يبقي الشخص مركزاً

Fogg's strict order helps him stay on track.

نظام فوج الصارم يساعده على البقاء على المسار الصحيح.

Openness to wonder

الانفتاح على الدهشة

Passepartout shows the importance of curiosity and appreciation of new cultures.

باسبارتو يُظهر أهمية الفضول وتقدير الثقافات الجديدة.

Persistence in duty

المثابرة في الواجب

Detective Fix, though misguided, demonstrates determination.

المحقق فيكس، رغم أنه مضلل، يُظهر التصميم والعزيمة.

Respect in relationships

الاحترام في العلاقات

Fogg treats Passepartout fairly, showing leadership through calm respect.

فوج يعامل باسبارتو بعدل، مظهراً القيادة من خلال الاحترام الهادئ.

"On schedule"

على الجدول

happening at the planned time.

يحدث في الوقت المخطط له.

"Waste no time"

لا تضيع الوقت

act quickly, without delay.

التصرف بسرعة، دون تأخير.

"A man of precision, not of wonder"

رجل دقيق، لا يعيش للدهشة

Someone who values order and accuracy over curiosity or amazement.

شخص يقدر النظام والدقة أكثر من الفضول أو الدهشة.

"A vision from a storybook"

رؤية من قصة خيالية

Something that looks magical and unreal, like in a fairy tale.

شيء يبدو سحرياً وغير واقعي، كما في الحكايات.



Summary

Phileas Fogg and his servant Passepartout arrived at Suez port in Egypt after a week at sea. Passepartout was amazed by the golden sands, camels, and city life, while Fogg focused only on his timetable, saying: "We are on schedule." Detective Fix was secretly watching them, believing Fogg was the Bank of England thief, and sent a telegram to London for an arrest warrant. The train to Cairo traveled through the desert. Passepartout admired everything—Bedouins, camel caravans, and the landscape. Fogg stayed calm, checking the schedule to make sure they were on time. Arrival in Cairo They reached Cairo in the evening. Passepartout was amazed by the narrow streets, markets, smells, and architecture, while Fogg went directly to confirm tickets for the next train to the ship heading to Bombay, India. Fix followed them through the city, waiting for a chance to stop Fogg, but the strict timetable left little opportunity. Departure to India The next day, they left Cairo toward the Red Sea, where their ship waited. Fogg calmly bought tickets and checked the time, while Passepartout waved goodbye to the city. Fix followed, determined to stop Fogg if he could. Thus, the great adventure toward India began.

وصل فيليبس فوج وخادمه الفرنسي باسبارتو إلى ميناء السويس في مصر بعد أسبوع من الرحلة البحرية. باسبارتو كان مذهولاً من الرمال الذهبية والجمال والناس والمدينة. بينما فوج كان يركز فقط على جدول الرحلة ويقول: "نحن على الموعد". المحقق فيكس كان يراقبهم سراً. معتقداً أن فوج هو لص بنك إنجلترا. وأرسل برقية إلى لندن لطلب أمر قبض. انطلق القطار إلى القاهرة عبر الصحراء. وباسبارتو كان معجباً بكل شيء: البدو على الخيول. القوافل. المناظر الصحراوية. أما فوج. فكان هادئاً. يراقب الجدول الزمني ويضمن أن كل شيء يسير في الوقت المحدد. الوصول إلى القاهرة وصلوا إلى القاهرة في المساء. باسبارتو انبهر بالأسواق الضيقة. الروائح. الأصوات. والعمارة الجميلة. بينما فوج مشى مباشرة لتأكيد تذاكر القطار التالي نحو سفينة متجهة إلى بومباي. الهند. فيكس تابعهم في المدينة. محاولاً الانتظار للحصول على أمر القبض. لكنه لم يجد فرصة لتعطيل فوج بسبب دقة جدول الرحلة. المغادرة نحو الهند في اليوم التالي. غادروا القاهرة باتجاه البحر الأحمر حيث تنتظرهم السفينة. فوج اشترى التذاكر بهدوء وتحقق من الساعة قبل أن ينطلق القطار. وباسبارتو ودّع المدينة المدهشة. خلفهم. كان فيكس يراقب. مصمماً على إيقاف فوج إذا سئحت له الفرصة. وهكذا. بدأت المغامرة الكبرى نحو الهند.



The Port of Suez

ميناء السويس

The port of Suez shimmered under the hot Egyptian sun. The steamship Mongolia had just docked after a week at sea, and its passengers were eager to step onto solid ground again. Among them were Mr. Phileas Fogg and his servant, Passepartout, who followed his master with quick, lively steps. For Passepartout, Egypt was a dream he had never imagined— golden sands, narrow streets full of camels, and minarets rising against the burning sky. For Mr. Fogg, however, Egypt was only a point on a timetable, a line in his carefully measured plan. Mr. Fogg checked his watch as soon as he disembarked.

كان ميناء السويس يتلألأ تحت الشمس المصرية الحارقة. كانت السفينة البخارية منغوليا قد رست للتو بعد أسبوع في البحر. وكان الركاب متشوقين للعودة إلى اليابسة مرة أخرى. من بينهم كان السيد فيلياس فوج وخادمه باسبارتو، الذي تبع سيده بخطوات سريعة ونشيطة بالنسبة لباسبارتو. كانت مصر حلمًا لم يتخيله من قبل. رمال ذهبية، شوارع ضيقة مليئة بالجمال، وماذن ترتفع ضد السماء الملتهبة. أما بالنسبة للسيد فوج، فكانت مصر مجرد نقطة في الجدول الزمني، خط في خطته المحسوبة بدقة، تحقق فوج من ساعته فور نزوله من السفينة.

"We are on schedule," he murmured calmly, as if speaking to himself. Passepartout wiped sweat from his forehead, astonished by the heat and the new sights. "Mon Dieu!" he exclaimed. "This is another world! Look, master—those domes, those palm trees, those camels carrying water!" But Mr. Fogg only nodded politely. "The train for Cairo departs in two hours. We must not waste time." Passepartout sighed. His master was a man of precision, not of wonder. Still, he followed faithfully.

"نحن على الموعد المحدد"، تتم فوج بهدوء، كما لو كان يتحدث إلى نفسه. مسح باسبارتو العرق عن جبينه. مدهوشًا من الحرارة والمشاهد الجديدة. يا إلهي! صرخ. هذا عالم آخر! انظر، يا سيد — تلك القباب، وأشجار النخيل، والجمال تحمل الماء! لكن السيد فوج اكتفى بالإيماء بأدب. قطار القاهرة يغادر خلال ساعتين. لا يجب أن نضيع الوقت. تنهد باسبارتو. كان سيده رجل دقيق، لا يقدر العجائب. ومع ذلك، تابع الخادم بإخلاص.

Detective Fix at Work

المحقق فيكس في العمل

Not far behind, Detective Fix of Scotland Yard kept a careful eye on them. He had followed Fogg since the Channel crossing, convinced that the English gentleman was the very man who had robbed the Bank of England. Fogg's quiet manner and enormous challenge only increased Fix's suspicion. At Suez, Fix hurried to the telegraph office and sent another urgent message to London.

قريبًا وراءهم، كان المحقق فيكس من سكوتلاند يارد يراقبهم بعناية. لقد تبع فوج منذ عبور القناة الإنجليزية، مقتنعًا أن هذا الرجل الإنجليزي هو نفسه الذي سرق بنك إنجلترا. كان هدوء فوج وتحديه الكبير يزيدان من شكوك فيكس. عند السويس، أسرع فيكس إلى مكتب التلغراف وأرسل رسالة عاجلة أخرى إلى لندن.

"Suspect Phileas Fogg has arrived in Suez. Traveling to Cairo by train. Please send warrant for arrest immediately." But the wires were slow, and the journey long. Fix knew the warrant might not arrive before Fogg moved further east. That frustrated him, but it also strengthened his resolve. He would stay close, waiting for the right moment to act. Meanwhile, he struck up a casual conversation with Passepartout, who was too trusting to doubt him. Passepartout said proudly. "We have already crossed France, Italy, and the Mediterranean. Next is India, then Hong Kong, then America, and back to London." Fix nodded but thought to himself, This challenge is just a cover. He is escaping justice! His determination deepened. He must stop Fogg at all costs.

"المشتبه به فيلياس فوج قد وصل إلى السويس. يسافر إلى القاهرة بالقطار. الرجاء إرسال أمر القبض فوراً." لكن الأسلاك كانت بطيئة، والرحلة طويلة. علم فيكس أن أمر القبض قد لا يصل قبل أن يتحرك فوج شرقاً أكثر. أزعجه ذلك، لكنه عزز أيضاً عزمه. قرر البقاء قريباً. ينتظر اللحظة المناسبة للتحرك. وفي الوقت نفسه، بدأ محادثة ودية مع باسبارتو، الذي كان

كثير الثقة لدرجة لا تجعله يشك فيه. قال باسبارتو بفخر: لقد عبرنا بالفعل فرنسا وإيطاليا والبحر المتوسط. التالي هو الهند. ثم هونغ كونغ. ثم أمريكا. ثم العودة إلى لندن. أو ما فيكس برأسه لكنه فكر في نفسه. هذا التحدي مجرد غطاء. إنه يهرب من العدالة! ازدادت عزيمته. يجب أن يوقف فوج باي ثمن.

Across the Desert

عم الصحراء

The train to Cairo began its long journey through the desert. It was a curious mixture of European technology and ancient landscape. The iron tracks cut across golden sands, while the wind carried whispers of ancient caravans that had once crossed the same routes. Passepartout sat by the window, his eyes wide with delight. He pointed excitedly at every sight. "Look, monsieur! Bedouins on horseback! And there—a caravan of camels loaded with goods! This land is full of wonders."

بدأ القطار المتجه إلى القاهرة رحلته الطويلة عبر الصحراء. كانت مزيجاً غريباً من التكنولوجيا الأوروبية والمناظر الطبيعية القديمة. قطعت القضبان الحديدية عبر الرمال الذهبية، بينما حملت الرياح همسات القوافل القديمة التي عبرت نفس الطرق من قبل. جلس باسبارتو بجانب النافذة. وعيونه واسعة من الفرح. وأشار بحماس إلى كل منظر. انظر. سيدي! يبدو على ظهور الخيل! وهناك — قافلة من الجمال محملة بالبضائع! هذه الأرض مليئة بالعجائب!

Mr. Fogg, on the other hand, sat upright in his seat, quietly reading his timetable and guidebook. His expression never changed. At exact intervals, he glanced at his watch, confirming the train's punctuality. After a while, Passepartout could not contain himself. "Master, do you never feel amazed? This desert, this sun—it is unlike anything in England!" Fogg looked up calmly. "The world is wide, Passepartout. But amazement does not help us arrive on time." Still, Passepartout smiled. He admired his master's discipline, even if he did not understand it.

أما السيد فوج، فجلس مستقيماً في مقعده. يقرأ بهدوء جدول الرحلة وكتاب الدليل. لم يتغير تعبير وجهه أبداً. في أوقات محددة بدقة. كان ينظر إلى ساعته. مؤكداً على دقة مواعيد القطار. بعد فترة. لم يستطع باسبارتو أن يكبح نفسه. سيدي. ألا تشعر بالدهشة أحياناً! هذه الصحراء. هذه الشمس — انها مختلفة تماماً عن أي شيء في إنجلترا! انظر فوج بهدوء. العالم واسع. باسبارتو. لكن الدهشة لا تساعدنا على الوصول في الوقت المحدد. ومع ذلك. ابتسم باسبارتو. كان معجباً بانضباط سيده. حتى لو لم يفهمه.

Cairo

القاهرة

By evening, the train rolled into Cairo, the great city by the Nile. For Passepartout, it was a vision from a storybook: narrow alleys filled with colorful markets, the sound of merchants calling out, and the fragrance of spices, coffee, and roasted meat. Donkeys and camels shared the streets with carriages. Minarets pierced the sky, and the call to prayer echoed across the rooftops. "Magnificent!" Passepartout exclaimed. "I never thought I would see such a place with my own eyes." Mr. Fogg, however, moved with steady steps. He walked straight to the ticket office to confirm their passage on the next train to Suez, where a ship would take them toward Bombay, India. Time was everything. Detective Fix shadowed them through the crowded streets. He kept silent, but his thoughts burned.

بحلول المساء. دخل القطار إلى القاهرة. المدينة العظيمة على ضفاف النيل. بالنسبة لباسبارتو. كانت رؤية من كتاب قصص. أزقة ضيقة مليئة بالأسواق الملونة. وصوت التجار ينادون على بضائعهم. وعطر التوابل والقهوة واللحم المشوي. كانت الحمير والجمال تشارك الشوارع مع العربات. اخترقت المآذن السماء. وكان أذان الصلاة يتردد عبر الأسطح. رائع! صرخ باسبارتو. لم أتخيل أن أرى مكاناً كهذا بعيني. أما السيد فوج. فتحرك بخطوات ثابتة توجه مباشرة إلى مكتب التذاكر لتأكيد مرورهم على القطار التالي إلى السويس. حيث ستأخذهم سفينة نحو بومباي في الهند. كان الوقت كل شيء. تبعه المحقق فيكس عبر الشوارع المزدحمة. ظل صامتاً. لكن أفكاره كانت مشتتة.

If only the warrant arrives in time.... ليت أم القبض يصل في الوقت المناسب....

That evening, Fogg allowed Passepartout a short walk through the bazaar. The servant marveled at the lamps that glowed in the dark, the craftsmen hammering brass, and the storytellers gathering children around them. To him, Cairo was alive with magic. But his

master was already preparing for the next stage. He calculated the hours, the distance, and the connections. "We are still on schedule," he said, satisfied. "If no delays occur, we will reach Bombay as planned." Passepartout nodded, though in his heart he wished for more time to explore. Still, he respected his master's mission. This was not a holiday; it was a race against time.

في تلك الأمسية، سمح فوج لباسبارتو بجولة قصيرة في البازار. اندهش الخادم من المصاييح التي تتوهج في الظلام. والحرفيين وهم يطرقون النحاس. ورواة القصص الذين يجمعون الأطفال حولهم. بالنسبة له. كانت القاهرة حية بالسحر. لكن سيده كان بالفعل يحضر للمرحلة التالية. حسب الساعات والمسافة والروابط بين القطارات والسفن. قال مبتسماً: بما زلنا على الجدول الزمني. إذا لم تحدث أي تأخيرات. سنصل إلى بومباي كما هو مخطط. أوما لباسبارتو برأسه. رغم أنه في قلبه كان يتمنى وقتاً أطول للاستكشاف. ومع ذلك. أحترم مهمة سيده. لم تكن هذه عطلة. بل كانت سباقاً مع الزمن.



Fix Makes His Move

تحرك فيكس

The next morning, as they prepared to leave Cairo, Fix approached Passepartout again. This time he spoke with false friendliness. "You are fortunate to serve such a master," Fix said. "But tell me—do you know why he is in such a hurry? Why he risks so much money?" Passepartout laughed. "Why, of course! He is a man of honor. He has made a challenge, and he will win it. You will see." Fix smiled but thought.

في صباح اليوم التالي. أثناء استعدادهم لمغادرة القاهرة. اقترب فيكس من لباسبارتو مرة أخرى. هذه المرة تحدث بود مزيف. قال فيكس: أنت محظوظ لأنك تخدم مثل هذا السيد. لكن أخبرني—هل تعرف لماذا هو في عجلة من أمره؟ لماذا يخاطر بكل هذا المال؟ ضحك لباسبارتو وقال: بالطبع! إنه رجل شرف. لقد وضع تحدياً. وسيفوز به. ستري. ابتسم فيكس لكنه فكر.

The servant knows nothing. I must catch the master myself. He then secretly wrote another telegram to London, repeating his request for the arrest warrant. He was determined to delay Fogg in Egypt if possible, but Fogg's strict schedule left little chance.

الخادم لا يعرف شيئاً. يجب أن أمسك بالسيد بنفسي. ثم كتب سراً لتلغراف آخر إلى لندن. مكرراً طلبه لأمر القبض. كان عازماً على تأخير فوج في مصر إذا أمكن. لكن جدول فوج الصارم ترك فرصة ضئيلة لذلك.



Departure

المغادرة

The time soon came to leave Cairo and return toward the Red Sea, where their ship waited. Fogg bought the tickets with his usual calmness, checked his watch, and guided Passepartout back to the station. As the train pulled away, Passepartout leaned out of the window, waving at the city that had enchanted him. "Goodbye, Cairo! Perhaps one day I shall return." Fogg closed his guidebook and said quietly, "Onward to India." Behind them, Fix followed, his determination stronger than ever. The great adventure was only beginning.

اقتراب وقت مغادرة القاهرة والعودة نحو البحر الأحمر. حيث كانت تنتظرهم سفينتهم. اشترى فوج التذاكر بهدوئه المعتاد. وتحقق من ساعته. ورافق لباسبارتو إلى المحطة. وعندما انطلق القطار. مال لباسبارتو من النافذة موجهاً التحية للمدينة التي أسرت قلبه. قال: وداعاً يا القاهرة! ربما سأعود يوماً ما. أغلق فوج كتاب الدليل وقال بهدوء: إلى الهند. خلفهم. تبعهم فيكس. وعزمته أقوى من أي وقت مضى. كانت المغامرة العظيمة قد بدأت للتو.

Setbook Questions & Answers



1. What was Passepartout's reaction to Egypt?

ما كان رد فعل لباسبارتو تجاه مصر؟

He was amazed and excited by the sights, sounds, and culture.

كان مندهشاً ومتحمساً بسبب المناظر والأصوات والثقافة.

2. How did Fogg react upon arriving in Suez?

كيف كان رد فعل فوج عند وصوله إلى السويس؟

He stayed calm and focused only on the timetable.

ظل هادئاً وركز فقط على الجدول الزمني.

3. What amazed Passepartout on the way to Cairo?

ما الذي أدهش باسبارتو في طريقه إلى القاهرة؟

He was amazed by Bedouins on horseback and caravans of camels.

انبهر برؤية البدو على ظهور الخيل وقوافل الجمال.

4. How did Fogg behave during the desert journey?

كيف تصرف فوج خلال رحلة الصحراء؟

He sat quietly, checking his watch and reading his guidebook.

جلس بهدوء، يراجع ساعته ويقرأ دليل السفر.

5. Who followed Fogg and Passepartout closely?

من كان يتابع فوج وباسبارتو عن قرب؟

Detective Fix from Scotland Yard.

المفتش فيكس من سكوتلاند يارد.

6. What messages did Detective Fix send to London?

ما الرسائل التي أرسلها المفتش فيكس إلى لندن؟

He sent telegrams reporting Fogg's location and asking for an arrest warrant.

أرسل برقيات يبلغ فيها عن مكان فوج ويطلب أمراً بالقبض عليه.

7. What did Passepartout think of the bazaar in Cairo?

ماذا كان رأي باسبارتو في السوق بالقاهرة؟

He thought it was magical and full of life.

اعتقد أنه كان ساحراً ومليئاً بالحياة.

8. What was Fogg's main priority in Cairo?

ما كان أول اهتمام لفوج في القاهرة؟

To confirm tickets and stay on schedule for the next stage of the journey.

تأكيد التذاكر والالتزام بالجدول الزمني للمرحلة التالية من الرحلة.

9. How did Passepartout describe his master to Fix?

كيف وصف باسبارتو سيده لفيكس؟

He said Fogg was a man of honor who would win the challenge.

قال إن فوج رجل شريف وسيفوز بالتحدي.

10. What did Fix secretly think about Passepartout's knowledge?

ما الذي كان يعتقد فيكس سراً عن معرفة باسبارتو؟

He thought Passepartout knew nothing about Fogg's supposed crime.

كان يعتقد أن باسبارتو لا يعرف شيئاً عن الجريمة المزعومة لفوج.

11. Why did Fogg value the timetable more than amazement?

لماذا كان فوج يقدر الجدول الزمني أكثر من الاندهاش؟

Because staying on schedule was essential to winning the challenge.

لأن الالتزام بالجدول كان ضرورياً للفوز بالتحدي.

12. How do the desert and Cairo symbolize adventure for Passepartout?

كيف ترمز الصحراء والقاهرة إلى المغامرة بالنسبة لباسبارتو؟

They represent mystery, excitement, and new experiences.

تمثل الغموض والحماس والتجارب الجديدة.

Critical Thinking Questions

13. Would you enjoy Egypt the way Passepartout did, or stay focused like Fogg? Why?

هل ستستمتع بمصر مثل باسبارتو، أم ستتركز مثل فوج؟ ولماذا؟

I would enjoy Egypt like Passepartout because it is full of wonders.

سأستمتع بمصر مثل باسبارتو لأنها مليئة بالعجائب.

14. Do you think Fogg is too strict, or is his focus necessary?

هل تعتقد أن فوج صارم جداً أم أن تركيزه ضروري؟

His focus is necessary to win the challenge.

تركيزه ضروري للفوز بالتحدي.

15. How would you feel if someone followed you secretly like Fix?

كيف ستشعر إذا كان شخص ما يتابعك سراً مثل فيكس؟

I would feel scared and angry.

سأشعر بالخوف والغضب.

16. Should Passepartout have trusted Fix so easily? Why or why not?

هل كان يجب على باسبارتو أن يثق في فيكس بسهولة؟ ولماذا؟

No, because Fix had hidden motives.

لا، لأن فيكس كان لديه نوايا خفية.

17. Do you think amazement is as important as punctuality when traveling? Explain.

هل تعتقد أن الدهشة مهمة مثل الدقة في المواعيد أثناء السفر؟ فسّر.

Yes, because travel should be enjoyed, not only planned.

نعم، لأن السفر يجب أن يكون ممتعاً، وليس مجرد تخطيط.

18. Would you choose to live like Fogg (order) or like Passepartout (curiosity)? Why?

هل تختار أن تعيش مثل فوج (منظم) أم مثل باسبارتو (فضولي)؟ ولماذا؟

Like Passepartout, because curiosity makes life exciting.

مثل باسبارتو، لأن الفضول يجعل الحياة ممتعة.

19. What lesson does Cairo give Passepartout about new cultures?

ما الدرس الذي تعلمه باسبارتو من القاهرة عن الثقافات الجديدة؟

He learned that new cultures are beautiful and full of surprises.

تعلم أن الثقافات الجديدة جميلة ومليئة بالمفاجآت.

20. Do you think Fix will succeed in stopping Fogg? Why or why not?

هل تعتقد أن فيكس سينجح في إيقاف فوج؟ ولماذا؟

No, because Fogg is smart and careful.

لا، لأن فوج ذكي وحذر.

Chapter 4 General Exercises

1) Answer the following questions

- Why do you think Mr. Fogg didn't show excitement when he saw Egypt for the first time?
- What can we learn about Passepartout's personality from his reaction to Egypt?
- Why did Detective Fix suspect Fogg so strongly, even without clear evidence?
- How does the contrast between Fogg and Passepartout make the story more interesting?
- What problem might arise if the arrest warrant doesn't arrive in time?

6. Why is time so important to Mr. Fogg's journey?
7. What does Passepartout's excitement about Cairo tell us about his values?
8. Why did Fix try to be friendly with Passepartout?
9. If you were Passepartout, would you trust Fix? Why or why not?
10. What lesson can readers learn from Fogg's focus and determination?
11. Describe Passepartout's first impressions of Egypt.
12. How did Fogg and Passepartout's reactions to Cairo differ?
13. Explain why Fix followed Fogg secretly.
14. What do the train and desert symbolize in the story?
15. Describe what Passepartout saw from the train window.
16. Why did Passepartout wish for more time in Cairo?
17. What challenge did Fogg face when traveling through Egypt?
18. How did Passepartout feel when leaving Cairo?
19. What do we learn about Fix's character from his actions?
20. Describe how Cairo was portrayed in the story.

2) Choose the correct answer a, b, c, or d

1. The port of Suez shimmered under the hot sun.
 a. Indian b. Egyptian c. Arabian d. Italian
2. For Passepartout, Egypt seemed like a
 a. desert nightmare b. dream he never imagined
 c. familiar place d. cold land
3. For Mr. Fogg, Egypt was only a
 a. holiday b. dangerous place
 c. new adventure d. line in his timetable

4. As soon as he arrived in Suez, Fogg checked his
 a. bag b. timetable c. watch d. guidebook
5. Passepartout was amazed by the
 a. temples and markets b. desert and camels
 c. domes and palm trees d. all of the above
6. Fogg said the train to Cairo departed in hours.
 a. 1 b. 2 c. 3 d. 4
7. Detective Fix kept a careful on Fogg.
 a. friendship b. eye c. distance d. schedule
8. Fix believed Fogg was really the
 a. bank thief b. mayor of London c. circus man d. new servant
9. Fix sent another urgent to London.
 a. letter b. telegram c. book d. parcel
10. Passepartout proudly explained that they had already crossed
 a. France, Italy, and the Mediterranean b. Asia and Africa
 c. America d. Australia
11. Fix secretly thought the journey was just a cover to
 a. explore the world b. escape justice c. enjoy a holiday d. find gold
12. The train to Cairo crossed the hot
 a. jungle b. forest c. mountains d. desert
13. Passepartout pointed out along the way.
 a. Bedouins and camels b. elephants
 c. kangaroos d. castles
14. Fogg sat quietly reading his during the trip.
 a. maps b. novel
 c. letters d. timetable and guidebook
15. Passepartout asked if his master ever felt
 a. tired b. amazed c. angry d. bored
16. Fogg replied that amazement did not help them
 a. enjoy the trip b. arrive on time c. see the world d. spend money
17. In Cairo, Passepartout was fascinated by the
 a. markets and spices b. storytellers
 c. coffee shops and lamps d. all of the above
18. For Mr. Fogg, Cairo was just a place to buy
 a. food b. souvenirs c. train tickets d. clothes
19. Fix shadowed Fogg and Passepartout through the
 a. desert b. crowded streets c. ship d. hotel
20. Passepartout trusted Fix and spoke to him with
 a. suspicion b. pride c. fear d. anger
21. Fix asked Passepartout if he knew why his master was in such a
 a. disguise b. good mood c. bad mood d. hurry
22. Passepartout said Fogg was a man of
 a. luck b. money c. honor d. science

Chapter 5

The Indian Ocean and Bombay

المحيط الهندي وبومباي

Key Vocabulary

steamer (n)	سفينة بخارية	stroll (v)	يتمشى	exotic (adj)	غريب / غير مألف
steadily (adv)	بثبات / باستمرار	vast (adj)	ضخم / واسع	clench (v)	يقبض (يده)
narrow (adj)	ضيق	gaze (v)	يحدق	astonishing (adj)	مذهل
stretches (n)	امتدادات / مساحات	suspicion (n)	شك	harbor (n)	ميناء
shimmer (v)	يتلألأ / يتماوج	frustration (n)	إحباط	plead (v)	يتوسل
fortune (n)	ثروة	barren (adj)	قاحل	trinkets (n)	حلي صغيرة / تذكارات
awe (n)	رهبة / انبهار	oppressive (adj)	خائف / شديد	stifling (adj)	خائف
rhythm (n)	إيقاع / نسق	consequence (n)	عاقبة / نتيجة	marvel (v)	يتعجب / يندهش
timetable (n)	جدول مواعيد	willpower (n)	قوة الإرادة	horizon (n)	الأفق
press southward (v)	يندفع نحو الجنوب	the holy ground (v)	الأرض المقدسة	phosphorescence (n)	توهج فسفوري

Values in this Chapter



القيم في هذا الفصل

Discipline in adversity

الانضباط في الشدائد

Fogg's calm routine shows strength of mind.

روتين فوج الهادئ يظهر قوة العقل.

Curiosity and respect

الفضول والاحترام

Passepartout learns the importance of observing traditions when traveling.

باسبارتو يتعلم أهمية مراعاة التقاليد عند السفر.

Perseverance

المثابرة

Fix's chase continues despite endless delays.

مطاردة فيكس تستمر رغم التأخيرات المتكررة.

Wonder and openness

الدهشة والانفتاح

New sights expand Passepartout's vision of the world.

المشاهد الجديدة توسع رؤية باسبارتو للعالم.

"A page in the timetable"

صفحة في الجدول الزمني

treating events as ordinary steps.

التعامل مع الأحداث كخطوات عادية.

"Another world"

عالم آخر

a place very different from what one knows.

مكان مختلف تماماً عما يعرفه الشخص.

"Torn between"

حائر بين

unable to choose between two feelings or actions.

غير قادر على الاختيار بين شعورين أو فعلين.

"The world grows larger every day"

العالم يكبر كل يوم

New discoveries and experiences make the world feel vast and full of possibilities.

الاكتشافات والتجارب الجديدة تجعل العالم يبدو واسعاً ومليئاً بالإمكانات.

"The harbor was alive with ships"

كان الميناء حياً بالسفن

The harbor was busy and full of energy, not literally alive.

كان الميناء مزدحماً ومليئاً بالنشاط، وليس حياً حرفياً.



Summary

The Mongolia sailed from Suez through the Red Sea. Fogg focused on his schedule, while Passepartout admired the desert and later the city of Aden. Days on the ship were calm, with Fogg disciplined and Fix watching closely. After 13 days, they reached Bombay. Passepartout enjoyed the sights but learned to respect local customs after a temple incident. Fogg bought train tickets to Calcutta, and their Indian journey began, with Fogg precise, Passepartout excited, and Fix determined to catch him.

أبحرت سفينة مونغوليا من السويس عبر البحر الأحمر. ركز فوج على مواعيده بدقة. بينما استمتع باسبرتو بالصحراء ثم بمدينة عدن.

قضوا أياماً هادئة على السفينة. وفكس يراقبهم. بعد ١٣ يوماً وصلوا إلى بومباي. انبهر باسبرتو بالمدينة. لكنه تعلم احترام العادات

بعد مشكلة في معبد هندوسي. اشترى فوج تذاكر القطار إلى كلكتا. وهكذا بدأت رحلتهم عبر الهند: فوج منظم. باسبرتو متحمس.

وفكس عازم على القبض عليه.

The sun was rising as the steamer Mongolia left the port of Suez, its engines turning steadily as it entered the narrow waters of the Red Sea. For many of the passengers, this was their first view of the desert coast of Arabia, with its endless stretches of golden sand and rocky hills. The air shimmered with heat, and the cries of seabirds followed the ship as it pressed southward toward the Indian Ocean. For Phileas Fogg, the departure was no different from the turning of a page in a timetable.

كانت الشمس تشرق بينما غادرت الباخرة منغوليا ميناء السويس. وكانت محركاتها تعمل بثبات وهي تدخل المياه الضيقة للبحر الأحمر. بالنسبة لكثير من الركاب. كانت هذه أول مرة يرون فيها الساحل الصحراوي للعربية. بامتداداته اللامتناهية من الرمال الذهبية والتلال الصخرية. كان الهواء يلمع بالحرارة. وصرخات طيور البحر تلاحق السفينة وهي تتجه جنوباً نحو المحيط الهندي. أما بالنسبة لفيلياس فوج. فلم يكن المغادرة مختلفة عن قلب صفحة في جدول مواعيده.

He checked his watch, compared it with the ship's clock, and then calmly opened his guidebook to note the distance to Bombay. His entire fortune depended on such calculations, and yet his face showed no trace of worry. Passepartout, however, was in awe. "Mon Dieu," the valet whispered to himself, leaning over the rail, "the world grows larger every day. And yet my master behaves as if it were only another street in London!"

تفقد فوج ساعته. وقارنها بساعة السفينة. ثم فتح دليله بهدوء ليسجل المسافة إلى بومباي. كانت ثروته كلها تعتمد على مثل هذه الحسابات. ومع ذلك لم يظهر على وجهه أي أثر للقلق. أما باسپارتو. فكان مبهوراً. فهمس الخادم لنفسه وهو يتمكن على الدرابزين: يا إلهي! إن العالم يكبر يوماً بعد يوم. ومع ذلك يتصرف سيدي كما لو كان الأمر مجرد شارع آخر في لندن!

Life Aboard the Mongolia

الحياة على متن منغوليا

The days at sea soon developed their rhythm. The passengers dined at fixed hours, strolled on deck during the cooler mornings and evenings, and played games of cards to pass the time. Mr. Fogg continued his habit of playing whist, winning or losing with equal calmness, as though the game itself mattered more than the money. Passepartout, meanwhile, enjoyed exploring the ship. He spoke with sailors, asked questions about the engines, and admired the skill with which the crew managed such a vast machine.

سرعان ما اكتسبت الأيام في البحر إيقاعها الخاص. كان الركاب يتناولون الطعام في أوقات محددة. ويتمشون على السطح خلال الصباحات والمساءات الباردة. ويلعبون ألعاب الورق لتمضية الوقت. واصل السيد فوج عاداته في لعب الورق. سواء فاز أو خسر بنفس الهدوء. كما لو أن اللعبة نفسها أهم من المال. أما باسپارتو. فاستمتع باستكشاف السفينة. تحدث مع البحارة. وطرح أسئلة عن المحركات. وأعجب بالمهارة التي يدير بها الطاقم هذه الآلة الضخمة.

At night he often stood on deck gazing at the stars, wondering how far from Paris he had already traveled. Sometimes he dreamed of home, but the thrill of adventure always returned with the sunrise. Among the passengers, however, Detective Fix kept his watch. He observed every movement of Fogg, never relaxing his suspicion. Each day he hoped for a message from Suez or Aden that would confirm the arrest warrant, but none came. The telegraph lines were still too slow, and his frustration grew.

في الليل. غالباً ما كان يقف على السطح متأملاً النجوم. متسائلاً عن المسافة التي قطعها منذ مغادرته باريس. أحياناً كان يحلم بالوطن. لكن إثارة المغامرة كانت تعود مع شروق الشمس. أما بين الركاب. فكان المحقق فيكس يراقب عن قرب. لاحظ كل حركة لفوج. دون أن يخفف من شكوكه. كل يوم كان يأمل برسالة من السويس أو عدن تؤكد أمر القبض. لكن لم تأت أي رسالة. كانت خطوط التلغراف لا تزال بطيئة جداً. وازداد إحباطه.

Through the Red Sea

عبر البحر الأحمر

The Mongolia sailed down the long body of the Red Sea, passing barren coastlines and the occasional Arab dhow with its triangular sail. The heat became oppressive, and the air thick with salt and dust. Many passengers hid below decks, but Fogg continued his measured walks at the exact same hours, no matter the weather. Passepartout, sweating heavily, fanned himself with his hat. "Does my master not feel this heat?" he muttered. But

when he asked, Fogg replied only: "The temperature is of no consequence, provided the timetable is maintained." In truth, Fogg's willpower was a mystery to everyone. He treated heat, cold, and distance all as minor inconveniences compared to the precision of his plan.

أبحرت منغوليا عبر طول البحر الأحمر. مارة بالسواحل القاحلة وبالعديد من القوارب العربية ذات الأشرعة المثلثة. أصبح الحر خانقا. والهواء كثيفا بالملح والغبار. اختبأ العديد من الركاب تحت الطوابق. لكن فوج استمر في جولاته المنظمة في نفس الساعات. بغض النظر عن الطقس. كان ياسبارتو يتصب عرقا. ويهوي نفسه بقبعته. تمت: ألا يشعر سيدي بهذا الحر؟ لكن عندما سأل. أجاب فوج فقط: درجة الحرارة لا تهم. شريطة أن يتم الالتزام بالجدول الزمني. في الحقيقة. كانت إرادة فوج لغزا للجميع. اعتبر الحر والبرد والمسافة جميعها إزعاجات ثانوية مقارنة بدقته خطته.



The Port of Aden

ميناء عدن

After several days the steamer reached the port of Aden, at the southern tip of Arabia. The ship stopped to take on coal, and Passepartout was allowed to disembark for an hour. He marveled at the whitewashed houses, the crowded bazaar, and the camels kneeling patiently under the burning sun. For him, every sight was exotic, every sound a discovery. Fix, too, went ashore, though his eyes searched not for wonders but for telegraph offices. Still no reply from London. He clenched his fists. "The warrant must arrive in Bombay," he told himself. "It must." Meanwhile, Fogg remained on the ship. He spent the hour writing in his notebook, calmly recording the time of arrival and departure, and calculating how many hours remained until Bombay. For him, the stop at Aden was simply another entry in his careful schedule.

بعد عدة أيام. وصلت الباخرة إلى ميناء عدن. في أقصى جنوب شبه الجزيرة العربية. توقفت السفينة لتعبئة الفحم. وسمح لياسبارتو بالنزول لمدة ساعة. اندهش من المنازل المطلية باللون الأبيض. ومن السوق المزدهم. ومن الجمال التي كانت تجشو بصره تحت الشمس الحارقة. بالنسبة له. كان كل منظر غريبا. وكل صوت اكتشافا. ذهب فيكس أيضا إلى الشاطئ. لكن عيناه لم تبحثا عن العجائب. بل عن مكاتب التلغراف. ومع ذلك. لم يأت أي رد من لندن. قبض على يديه وقال لنفسه: يجب أن يصل أمر القبض إلى بومباي. يجب أن يصل. في تلك الأثناء. بقي فوج على السفينة. قضى الساعة يكتب في دفتره. مسجلا بهدوء أوقات الوصول والمغادرة. وحاسبا كم ساعة بقيت حتى بومباي. بالنسبة له. كانت التوقف في عدن مجرد إدخال آخر في جدول مواعيده الدقيقة.



Into the Indian Ocean

عبر المحيط الهندي

The Mongolia now left the narrow seas and entered the wide Indian Ocean. The air grew fresher, the waves larger, and the horizon endless. For the first time since leaving London, Passepartout felt the true immensity of the world. At night, the ship cut through waters sparkling with phosphorescence. Dolphins raced beside the bow, Passepartout clapped his hands in delight, calling other passengers to watch. Even Fix, though troubled, could not help admiring the sight. The voyage across the Indian Ocean lasted thirteen days. The weather remained fair, and the engines of the Mongolia worked without failure. Each sunrise brought them closer to India. Fogg's calm never broke. He played cards, walked the deck, and read his guidebook.

غادرت منغوليا الآن البحار الضيقة ودخلت المحيط الهندي الواسع. أصبح الهواء أنقى. والأمواج أكبر. والأفق لا نهاية له. ولأول مرة منذ مغادرتهم لندن. شعر ياسبارتو بالاتساع الحقيقي للعالم. في الليل. كانت السفينة تشق المياه المتلاطلة بالفوسفور. كانت الدلافين تسبح بجانب مقدمة السفينة. وصفق ياسبارتو بيديه فرحا. داعيا الركاب الآخرين لمشاهدتها. حتى فيكس. رغم انزعاجه. لم يستطع إلا الإعجاب بالمشهد. استمرت الرحلة عبر المحيط الهندي ثلاثة عشر يوما. بقي الطقس معتدلا. وعملت محركات منغوليا دون أي عطل. كل شروق شمس كان يقربهم أكثر إلى الهند. لم ينكسر هدوء فوج أبدا. كان يلعب الورق. ويتجول على السطح. ويقرأ كتاب دليله.



Arrival at Bombay

الوصول إلى بومباي

Finally, the morning came when the coast of India appeared on the horizon. At first it was only a thin blue line, then the shapes of hills, and finally the towers and domes of Bombay. For Passepartout, the sight was astonishing. The crowded harbor was alive with ships from

every nation, from British steamers to Indian dhows and Chinese junks. On the docks he saw elephants, oxen, and endless lines of workers carrying goods. "This," he whispered, "is truly another world." Fogg, however, stepped ashore with his usual calm.

وأخيراً. جاء الصباح الذي ظهرت فيه سواحل الهند على الأفق. في البداية كانت مجرد خط أزرق رفيع. ثم بدأت تظهر أشكال التلال. وأخيراً أبراج وقباب بومباي. بالنسبة لباسبارتو، كان المشهد مذهلاً. كان الميناء المزدحم حيويًا بسفن من جميع الدول. من البواخر البريطانية إلى القوارب الهندية واليخوت الصينية. على الأرصفة. رأى القبلة والثيران وصفوفًا لا تنتهي من العمال يحملون البضائع. همس: هذا حقًا عالم آخر. أما فوج. فخطا إلى الشاطئ يهدوئه المعتاد.

He checked his watch, confirmed the departure of the train to Calcutta, and walked straight toward the ticket office. Fix followed closely. His heart beat faster. Surely the warrant would be waiting here! But when he checked at the telegraph office, again there was nothing. The delay was unbearable, yet he could not abandon his chase. Passepartout, meanwhile, begged his master for a few minutes to see the city. "Only a little time, monsieur!" he pleaded. Fogg, calculating the hours, agreed to give him one hour before the train departed.

تحقق من ساعته. وأكد موعد مغادرة القطار إلى كلكتا. وتوجه مباشرة إلى مكتب التذاكر. تبعه فيكس عن كثب. وكان قلبه يخفق أسرع. بالتأكيد سيكون أمر القبض في انتظاره هنا! لكن عندما تحقق في مكتب التلغراف. لم يكن هناك شيء مرة أخرى. كان التأخير لا يحتمل. ومع ذلك لم يستطع التخلي عن مطاردته. أما باسبارتو. فتوسل إلى سيده ليمنحه بضعة دقائق لرؤية المدينة. قال متوسلاً: فقط وقت قليل. سيدي! حسب فوج الساعات ووافق على منحه ساعة واحدة قبل مغادرة القطار.

A Glimpse of India

لمحة عن الهند

Passepartout ran into the streets like a child at a fair. He saw people of every dress and color. The smells of spices, incense, and dust filled the air. He had never imagined such variety in one city. In a marketplace, he watched a group of musicians playing strange instruments, while dancers in bright costumes spun and clapped. He bought a few small trinkets as souvenirs, thinking of the stories he would tell in Paris. But he also noticed the differences in custom. When he entered a Hindu temple out of curiosity, the priests shouted angrily and drove him out, for his shoes had polluted the holy ground. Red-faced and confused, he hurried back to meet Fogg, realizing that traveling the world meant not only seeing new wonders but also respecting unfamiliar traditions.

ركض باسبارتو في الشوارع كطفل في معرض. رأى أشخاصًا من جميع الملابس والألوان. امتلأ الهواء برائحة التوابل والبخور والغبار. لم يتخيل قط مثل هذا التنوع في مدينة واحدة. في السوق. شاهد مجموعة من الموسيقيين يعزفون على آلات غريبة. بينما كان الراقصون يرتدون أزياء زاهية ويدورون ويصفقون. اشترى بعض التذكارات الصغيرة. متخيلًا القصص التي سيرويها في باريس. لكنه لاحظ أيضًا اختلاف العادات. عندما دخل معبد هندوسي بدافع الفضول. صرخ الكهنة بغضب وأخرجوه. لأن حذاءه لوث الأرض المقدسة. محمر الوجه ومربكًا. أسرع للعودة لمقابلة فوج مدركًا أن السفر حول العالم لا يعني فقط رؤية العجائب الجديدة. بل احترام التقاليد غير المألوفة أيضًا.

Departure by Train

المغادرة بالقطار

At the appointed time, Fogg and Passepartout boarded the train bound for Calcutta. The carriages were crowded, the heat stifling, but the train represented the modern power of the British Empire in India. For Fogg, it was another link in the great chain of his plan. For Passepartout, it was the beginning of an adventure he could scarcely imagine. As the train pulled out of Bombay, Fix stood on the platform, torn between anger and determination.

في الوقت المحدد. صعد فوج وباسبارتو على متن القطار المتجه إلى كلكتا. كانت العربات مزدحمة. والحر خانق. لكن القطار كان يمثل القوة الحديثة للإمبراطورية البريطانية في الهند. بالنسبة لفوج. كان ذلك حلقة أخرى في السلسلة الكبرى لخطة. أما بالنسبة لباسبارتو. فكان بداية مغامرة بالكاد يمكنه تخيلها. وعندما انطلق القطار من بومباي. وقف فيكس على الرصيف. ممزقًا بين الغضب والعزم.

"The warrant will arrive in Calcutta if not here," he swore. And so, boarding the same train, he continued his pursuit. The great subcontinent of India lay before them, with its vast rivers, dense forests, and crowded cities. For Fogg, it was only the next stage on the timetable. For Passepartout, it was the heart of an extraordinary journey. For Fix, it was the chance to prove his suspicion. The adventure pressed on.

"سوف يصل أمر القبض إلى كلكتا إذا لم يصل هنا: أقسم وهكذا، ركب القطار نفسه. وواصل مطاردته. كانت شبه القارة الهندية العظيمة أمامهم. بأنهارها الشاسعة. وغاباتها الكثيفة. ومدنها المزدحمة. بالنسبة لفوج. كانت مجرد المرحلة التالية في الجدول الزمني. بالنسبة لباسبارتو. كانت قلب رحلة استثنائية. أما بالنسبة لفيكس. فكانت فرصة لإثبات شكوكه. واستمرت المغامرة.

Setbook Questions & Answers



- From which port did the Mongolia depart?** **من أي ميناء غادرت سفينة مونغوليا؟**

The Mongolia departed from the port of Suez. **غادرت سفينة من ميناء السويس.**
- What did passengers see along the Red Sea coast?** **ماذا رأى الركاب على طول ساحل البحر الأحمر؟**

They saw endless stretches of golden sand and rocky hills. **رأوا مساحات لا نهائية من الرمال الذهبية والتلال الصخرية.**
- How did Fogg treat the departure?** **كيف تعامل فوج مع المغادرة؟**

Fogg treated the departure calmly, as if it were just another event on his timetable. **تعامل فوج مع المغادرة بهدوء. وكأنها مجرد حدث آخر في جدول مواعيده.**
- What did Passepartout whisper about the world?** **ماذا همس باسبارتو عن العالم؟**

He whispered, "The world grows larger every day." **همس قائلاً: "العالم يزداد اتساعاً كل يوم."**
- How did life on board the ship settle into a rhythm?** **كيف استقرت الحياة على متن السفينة في نظام معين؟**

Passengers dined at fixed hours, walked on deck in the mornings and evenings, and played card games to pass the time. **كان الركاب يتناولون الطعام في أوقات محددة. ويتمشون على سطح السفينة صباحاً ومساءً. ويلعبون ألعاب الورق لتضيئة الوقت.**
- What game did Fogg play?** **ما اللعبة التي كان فوج يلعبها؟**

Fogg played the card game called whist. **كان فوج يلعب لعبة ورق تسمى "وست".**
- What did Passepartout admire about the crew?** **ما الشيء الذي أعجب باسبارتو في طاقم السفينة؟**

He admired their skill in managing such a vast and complex ship. **أعجب بمهارتهم في إدارة سفينة ضخمة ومعقدة كهذه.**
- What did he enjoy looking at during the nights?** **ما الذي كان يستمتع بمشاهدته في الليل؟**

He enjoyed gazing at the stars and the beauty of the night sky. **كان يستمتع بالتجديق في النجوم وجمال السماء ليلاً.**
- Who secretly watched Fogg throughout the trip?** **من الذي كان يراقب فوج سراً طوال الرحلة؟**

Detective Fix secretly watched Fogg. **كان المفتش فيكس يراقب فوج سراً.**
- Where was Fix hoping to receive a warrant?** **أين كان فيكس يأمل أن يتلقى أمر القبض؟**

Fix hoped to receive the warrant in Bombay. **كان فيكس يأمل أن يتلقى أمر القبض في بومباي.**

11. How does Fogg's calmness highlight his character?

كيف يبرز هدوء فوج شخصيته؟

It shows his discipline, self-control, and focus on his plan.

يوضح انضباطه، وتحكمه في نفسه، وتركيزه على خطته.

Critical Thinking Questions

12. Would you rather travel like Fogg (focused on schedule) or like Passepartout (curious and amazed)?

هل تفضل السفر مثل فوج (مركز على المواعيد) أم مثل باسبارتو (فضولي ومندهش)؟

I would prefer to travel like Passepartout because exploring and enjoying the journey is more exciting.

سأفضل السفر مثل باسبارتو لأن الاستكشاف والاستمتاع بالرحلة أكثر إثارة.

13. How would you feel traveling through the Red Sea in the 19th century?

كيف ستشعر وأنت تسافر عبر البحر الأحمر في القرن التاسع عشر؟

I would feel excited and a little scared.

سأشعر بالحماس والقليل من الخوف.

14. Do you think Fogg's decision to stay on the ship at Aden was wise or boring?

هل تعتقد أن قرار فوج بالبقاء على السفينة في عدن كان حكيماً أم مملاً؟

Wise, because it saved time.

حكيم لأنه وفر الوقت.

15. How does Passepartout's reaction to new cultures reflect modern travelers?

كيف يعكس رد فعل باسبارتو تجاه الثقافات الجديدة حال المسافرين في العصر الحديث؟

He is curious and amazed, like many travelers today.

إنه فضولي ومندهش، مثل كثير من المسافرين اليوم.

16. Do you agree with Fogg that the weather is of "no consequence"? Why or why not?

هل توافق فوج أن الطقس "غير مهم"؟ ولماذا؟

No, because bad weather can change travel plans.

لا، لأن الطقس السيئ قد يغير خطط السفر.

17. If you were Fix, would you still follow Fogg without evidence? Explain.

إذا كنت مكان فيكس، هل ستستمر في متابعة فوج دون دليل؟ فسّر.

No, because it is unfair and risky.

لا، لأنه غير عادل ومحفوف بالمخاطر.

18. What can we learn about enjoying small wonders, like dolphins, from Passepartout?

ماذا يمكن أن نتعلم من باسبارتو حول الاستمتاع بالعجائب الصغيرة مثل الدلافين؟

To notice and enjoy the beauty around us.

أن نلاحظ الجمال من حولنا ونستمتع به.

19. Do you think Fogg misses out on experiences by focusing only on time?

هل تعتقد أن فوج يفوت الكثير من التجارب لأنه يركز فقط على الوقت؟

Yes, he misses the joy of travel.

نعم، إنه يفوت متعة السفر.

20. Which character's approach to travel do you admire most—Fogg, Passepartout, or Fix? Why?

أي شخصية تعجبك طريقته في السفر أكثر - فوج، باسبارتو، أم فيكس؟ ولماذا؟

Passepartout, because he enjoys the journey.

باسبارتو، لأنه يستمتع بالرحلة.



Chapter 5 General Exercises

1) Answer the following questions

1. Why does Mr. Fogg treat the journey like a timetable instead of an adventure?
2. How does Passepartout's view of the journey differ from Fogg's?
3. Why is Detective Fix so frustrated during the journey?
4. What does Passepartout's mistake in the Hindu temple teach about travel?
5. Why do you think Fogg stayed on the ship while Passepartout explored Aden?
6. What does Fix's persistence reveal about his character?
7. How does the description of Bombay's harbor help the reader understand Passepartout's feelings?
8. Why is Fogg's calmness surprising to other passengers?
9. Why do you think Fix secretly followed Fogg instead of confronting him?
10. What lesson can readers learn from Passepartout's reaction to different cultures?
11. Describe what Passepartout saw when he first looked at the Arabian desert coast.
12. How did passengers spend their time on the Mongolia during the voyage?
13. What did Passepartout enjoy doing on the ship?
14. Why did the passengers hide below decks in the Red Sea?
15. What amazed Passepartout when he reached Bombay?
16. Describe what Passepartout did with his free hour in Bombay.
17. What mistake did Passepartout make at the Hindu temple?

18. How did Fogg react when Passepartout asked for time to explore Bombay?

19. Why was Fix angry when the train left Bombay?

20. Describe the difference in how Fogg, Passepartout, and Fix see the journey through India.

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

1. The steamer Mongolia left the port of
 a. London b. Bombay c. Suez d. Cairo
2. As the ship entered the Red Sea, passengers saw endless stretches of
 a. jungle b. golden sand and rocky hills
 c. forests d. rivers
3. Passepartout whispered, "The world grows larger every".
 a. week b. day c. year d. month
4. Fogg showed no trace of about the journey.
 a. worry b. calm c. order d. confidence
5. Life aboard the Mongolia soon developed a
 a. problem b. rhythm c. storm d. danger
6. Passengers passed time by walking, dining, and playing
 a. chess b. dominoes c. whist d. dice
7. Passepartout often admired the skill of the ship's
 a. captain b. crew c. passengers d. musicians
8. At night, Passepartout gazed at the
 a. waves b. lamps c. ports d. stars
9. Detective Fix observed every movement of
 a. Passepartout b. the captain c. Fogg d. the crew
10. Fix was waiting for a message from
 a. Bombay b. London c. Cairo d. Paris
11. The Mongolia sailed through the sea.
 a. Red b. Black c. Arabian d. Mediterranean
12. The heat on the ship was described as
 a. mild b. oppressive c. cool d. comfortable
13. Many passengers hid during the heat.
 a. in the cabins below deck b. on deck
 c. in the engine room d. in the port
14. Fogg still continued his walks at the times.
 a. random b. same c. shorter d. later
15. Passepartout fanned himself with his
 a. coat b. hat c. hands d. scarf
16. Fogg said the temperature was of no
 a. problem b. consequence c. importance d. use
17. The steamer stopped at the port of
 a. Aden b. Marseille c. Dover d. Venice

Key Vocabulary

platform ⁽ⁿ⁾	رصيف محطة القطار	cattle ⁽ⁿ⁾	ماشية	dense ^(adj)	كثيف
dawn ⁽ⁿ⁾	الفجر	breeze ⁽ⁿ⁾	نسيم	screech ^(v)	يصرخ بعنف (للطيور)
vendors ⁽ⁿ⁾	الباعة المتجولون	thatched roofs ⁽ⁿ⁾	أسقف من القش	buzz ^(v)	يطن
hissing ^(v)	يصدر صفيراً	banyan trees ⁽ⁿ⁾	أشجار التين البنغالي	clutch ^(v)	يمسك بشدة
marvel ⁽ⁿ⁾	إعجاز / شيء مدهش	reliable ^(adj)	موثوق به	rarely ^(adv)	نادراً
stretching ^(v)	ممتد	determined ^(adj)	عازم / مصر	filter ^(v)	يتسرب (الضوء)
plains ⁽ⁿ⁾	سهول	suspicious ^(adj)	مريب / مثير للشك	softly ^(adv)	بهدهوء / بركة
onward ^(adv)	إلى الأمام / فصاعداً	bitterly ^(adv)	بمرارة	wide-eyed ^(adj)	مبهور / مدهوش
purchase ^(v)	يشترى	merchants ⁽ⁿ⁾	تجار	restless ^(adj)	قلق / غير مستقر
hesitation ⁽ⁿ⁾	تردد	jolt awake ^(v)	يستيقظ فجأة	unconscious ^(adj)	فاقد الوعي
amazement ⁽ⁿ⁾	دهشة	conductor ⁽ⁿ⁾	محصل القطار / مسؤول القطار	deathly pale ^(adj)	شاحب جداً
pilgrims ⁽ⁿ⁾	الحجاج	nonsense ⁽ⁿ⁾	هراء	rescue ^(v)	ينقذ
bales ⁽ⁿ⁾	رزم / بالات	bow ^(v)	ينحنى	grateful ^(adj)	ممتن
saris ⁽ⁿ⁾	الساري (زي هندي تقليدي)	inquiries ⁽ⁿ⁾	استفسارات	shaken ^(adj)	مصدوم / مضطرب
copper pots ⁽ⁿ⁾	أواني نحاسية	guide ⁽ⁿ⁾	دليل	grudging respect	احترام على مضض
resolve ^(v)	يقرر بحزم	mahout ⁽ⁿ⁾	سائس الفيل	steadily ^(adv)	بثبات
shudder ^(v)	يهتز بعنف	rough jungle paths ⁽ⁿ⁾	مسارات وعرة في الغابة	hardship ⁽ⁿ⁾	مشقة / معاناة
speed ^(v)	يندفع بسرعة			generously ^(adv)	بكرم / بسخاء
wrestle with doubt ^(v)	يصارع الشكوك				

Values in this Chapter



القيم في هذا الفصل

Courage in the face of danger

الشجاعة في مواجهة الخطر

Fogg risks everything to save Aouda.

فوج يخاطر بكل شيء لإنقاذ أودا.

The value of human life

قيمة الحياة البشرية

Passepartout insists that no custom justifies cruelty.

باسبارتو يؤكد أن لا تقليد يبرر القسوة.

Justice and compassion

العدالة والرحمة

- Even Fix is forced to respect Fogg's sense of right and wrong.
حتى فيكس يُجبر على احترام إحساس فوج بالصواب والخطأ.

Time vs. morality

الوقت مقابل الأخلاق

- Fogg shows that keeping a schedule must never outweigh doing what is right.
فوج يوضح أن الالتزام بالجدول الزمني لا يجب أن يفوق القيام بما هو صحيح.

Idioms / Expressions



التعابير الاصطلاحية

"Time is more valuable than gold"

الوقت أثمن من الذهب

- Suggests the importance of time over money.
يشير إلى أهمية الوقت مقارنة بالمال.

"Shadow someone"

ملاحقة شخص في الظل

- To secretly follow a person.
متابعة شخص ما سراً.

"I must remain his shadow"

يجب أن أبقى ظله

- Following someone constantly and secretly.
متابعة شخص ما باستمرار وبسرية.

"The jungle was alive with sound"

الغابة كانت مليئة بالأصوات

- The jungle seemed full of energy and activity.
بدا أن الغابة مليئة بالنشاط والحيوية.



Summary

In Bombay, Fogg bought train tickets, while Passepartout admired the scenes and Fix followed. The train passed villages and forests but stopped because the railway was unfinished. Fogg rented an elephant, saying, "Time is more valuable than gold." Through the jungle, they saw wildlife and rescued Aouda, a young woman in danger. With her, they continued by elephant, then train to Calcutta—losing time and money but saving a life.

في بومبي، اشترى فوج تذاكر القطار، بينما انبهر باسبرتو بالمشاهد و تبعهم فيكس. توقف القطار بسبب خط غير مكتمل، فاستأجر فوج فيلا قائلاً: "الوقت أثمن من الذهب". أثناء رحلتهم في الغابة، شاهدوا الحيوانات وأنقذوا شابة تدعى أودا كانت في خطر. واصلوا معها على ظهر الفيل ثم عادوا للقطار نحو كلكتا. خسر فوج بعض المال والوقت، لكنه كسب إنقاذ حياة.



The Grand Departure from Bombay

المغادرة الكبرى من بومبي

The following morning, Mr. Fogg, Passepartout, and Detective Fix — though the latter still uninvited — stood on the platform of Bombay's grand train station. The air was hot even at dawn, filled with the sounds of vendors shouting and engines hissing. The newly built railway line was a marvel of British engineering, stretching eastward across India. It promised to carry travelers from Bombay, through the jungles and plains, to the holy city of Allahabad, and onward to Calcutta on the banks of the Ganges. Phileas Fogg purchased the tickets without hesitation, his calm face betraying no excitement. Passepartout, however, could barely contain his amazement.

في صباح اليوم التالي، وقف السيد فوج وباسبارتو والمحقق فيكس — رغم أنه غير مدعو رسميًا — على رصيف محطة القطار الكبرى في بومبي. كان الجو حارًا حتى عند الفجر، مليئًا بأصوات البائعين الذين يصرخون ومحركات القطار التي تصدر صفيرًا. كان خط السكة الحديدية الجديد أعجوبة هندسية بريطانية، يمتد شرقًا عبر الهند، ووعد بنقل المسافرين من بومبي، عبر الغابات والسهول إلى المدينة المقدسة الله آباد، ثم إلى كلكتا على ضفاف نهر الغانج. اشترى فيليبس فوج التذاكر دون تردد، ووجهه الهادي لم يظهر أي حماس. أما باسبارتو، فلم يكن قادرًا على كبح دهشته.

He had never seen so many different people together in one place: British officers in smart uniforms, Indian traders carrying bales of cloth, women in colorful saris, and pilgrims with walking sticks and copper pots. "India!" he whispered to himself. "It is more wonderful than I ever imagined." Fix kept close to the pair, pretending to be another traveler. In reality, his eyes never left Fogg. He still waited for the arrest warrant from London, hoping it would arrive in time. Until then, he resolved to follow Fogg wherever he went. The train gave a long whistle. Steam poured from the engine, and the carriages shuddered. With a cry from the guard, the journey across India began.

لم يَر من قبل هذا العدد الكبير من الأشخاص المختلفين مجتمعين في مكان واحد: ضباط بريطانيون يرتدون زيًا أبيضًا، وتجار هنود يحملون حزم القماش، ونساء يرتدين الساري الملون، وحجاج يحملون العصي والأواني النحاسية. همس لنفسه: الهند! إنها أعظم مما تخيلت أبدًا. ظل فيكس قريبًا من الاثنين، متظاهرًا بأنه مسافر آخر. لكن في الواقع، لم تغادر عيناه فوج أبدًا. لا يزال ينتظر مذكرة الاعتقال من لندن، على أمل أن تصل في الوقت المناسب. وحتى ذلك الحين، قرر أن يتبع فوج أينما ذهب. أطلق القطار صفارة طويلة، تدفق البخار من المحرك، وارتفعت العربات، ومع صراخ من الحارس، بدأت الرحلة عبر الهند.



Through the Countryside

عبر الريف الهندي

At first, the train sped past the crowded streets of Bombay, where ox carts mixed with horse-drawn carriages and wandering cattle. Soon, the scenery changed. Palm trees waved gently in the breeze, villages with mud houses and thatched roofs appeared, and farmers worked in the rice fields, their feet sinking in the water. Passepartout could not sit still. He leaned out of the window, pointing out temples with tall spires and monkeys leaping across the branches of banyan trees.

في البداية، انطلق القطار عبر شوارع بومبي المزدحمة، حيث اختلطت عربات الشيران بالعربات التي تجرها الخيول والماشية المتجولة. سرعان ما تغيرت المناظر. كانت أشجار النخيل تتمايل برفق في النسيم، وظهت القرى ذات البيوت الطينية والأسقف القشية. وكان الفلاحون يعملون في حقول الأرز، وقد غاصت أقدامهم في الماء، لم يستطع باسبارتو الجلوس ساكنًا. مال من النافذة مشيرًا إلى المعابد ذات الأبراج العالية والقروء التي تقفز عبر فروع أشجار البنغيان.

He laughed like a child at every sight, while his master sat quietly, reading a newspaper. "Mr. Fogg," he said at last, "do you see that? A whole herd of elephants! Enormous beasts, bigger than any horse." But Fogg only nodded. "Yes, elephants are used for carrying loads in these regions. They are reliable animals." Passepartout sighed. His master could find a way to make even elephants sound ordinary.

ضحك مثل طفل عند كل منظر. بينما كان سيده يجلس بهدوء يقرأ صحيفة. وقال أخيراً: "سيد فوج، هل ترى ذلك؟ قطع كامل من الفيلة! وحوش ضخمة، أكبر من أي حصان. لكن فوج اكتفى بالإيماء. قال: "نعم. تستخدم الفيلة لحمل الأثقال في هذه المناطق. إنها حيوانات موثوقة. تنهد باسبارتو. حتى الفيلة يستطيع سيده أن يجعلها تبدو عادية.



Fix's Inner Struggle

الصراع الداخلي لفيكس

Meanwhile, Fix sat in the next carriage, pretending to admire the view. In truth, he wrestled with doubt. The more he studied Fogg, the more he wondered: could such a calm and polite gentleman really be the daring thief who robbed the Bank of England? Yet everything about the man's journey - the haste, the large sums of money, the determined silence - seemed suspicious. "If only the warrant would arrive," Fix thought bitterly. "Until then, I must remain his shadow."

في هذه الأثناء، جلس فيكس في العربّة المجاورة، متظاهراً بالاعجاب بالمنظر. في الحقيقة، كان يعاني من الشكوك كلما درس فوج أكثر. ازداد تساؤله: هل يمكن أن يكون هذا الرجل الهادئ والمودب حقاً هو اللص الجريء الذي سرق بنك إنجلترا؟ ومع ذلك، بدا كل شيء في رحلته — السرعة، والمبالغ الكبيرة من المال، والصمت الحازم — مربباً. قال فيكس بمرارة في نفسه: "ليت أمر القبض يصل. حتى ذلك الحين، يجب أن أظل ظله."



An Unexpected Halt

توقف غير متوقع

For two days the train traveled smoothly, stopping at small stations where merchants sold spiced tea, rice cakes, and fruit. Then, on the third day, the train slowed unexpectedly. Passepartout, who had just fallen asleep, was jolted awake. The conductor's voice shouted through the carriage: "Attention! The line ends here. All passengers must leave the train." Confused, Passepartout looked out the window. They were in the middle of the jungle. A small village stood nearby, but beyond it stretched endless forest.

سافرت القطار بسلاسة لمدة يومين، متوقفاً عند محطات صغيرة حيث كان التجار يبيعون الشاي والتوابل، وكعك الأرز، والفواكه. ثم، في اليوم الثالث، تباطأ القطار بشكل غير متوقع. استيقظ باسبارتو، الذي كان قد غفاً للتو، مفاجئاً. صرخ صوت المراقب في العربّة: "انتباه! تنتهي السكّة هنا. يجب على جميع الركاب مغادرة القطار." يارتباك. نظر باسبارتو من النافذة. كانوا في وسط الغابة. كانت قرية صغيرة قريبة، لكن خلفها تمتد غابة لا نهاية لها.

"What is this nonsense?" Passepartout cried. "Surely the line cannot end in the middle of nowhere!" Fogg calmly asked the conductor for an explanation. The man bowed slightly and said, "Sir, the railway company promised to finish the track all the way to Allahabad. But the construction has not been completed. From here, there is no railway for fifty miles. You must find another way across the jungle." Passepartout threw up his hands. "Fifty miles! In this heat, on foot? Impossible!" Fogg, however, remained as unshaken as ever. He simply replied, "We will find transportation."

صاح باسبارتو: "ما هذا الهراء؟ لا بد أن الخط لا ينتهي في منتصف العدم!" سأل فوج بهدوء القائد عن تفسير. انحنى الرجل قليلاً وقال: "سيدي، شركة السكك الحديدية وعدت بإكمال السكّة حتى الله أباد. لكن البناء لم يكتمل بعد. من هنا، لا توجد سكّة حديد لمسافة خمسين ميلاً. يجب عليكم إيجاد وسيلة أخرى لعبور الغابة." رفع باسبارتو يديه مستغنياً: "خمسون ميلاً! في هذا الحر، سيراً على الأقدام؟ مستحيل!" ومع ذلك، ظل فوج هادئاً كما هو دائماً. وأجاب ببساطة: "سنجد وسيلة للنقل."



The Elephant Solution

حل الفيل

In the nearby village, Fogg made inquiries. Ox carts and horses were available, but none could travel quickly across the rough jungle paths. Just when hope seemed thin, a guide mentioned that an elephant was for hire. The animal, named Kiouni, was large and strong, with broad ears and calm eyes. "The price is high," warned the guide. "Two thousand pounds." Passepartout nearly fell over.

في القرية القريبة، بدأ فوج بالاستفسار. كانت هناك عربات ثيران وخيول متاحة، لكن لم يكن أي منها قادراً على السفر بسرعة عبر الطرق الوعرة في الغابة. وعندما بدا الأمل ضعيفاً، ذكر أحد الأدلاء أن هناك فيلاً يمكن استئجاره. كان الحيوان

المسمى "كيوني": كبيراً وقويًا. ذو أذنين عريضتين وعيون هادئة. حذر الدليل: السعر مرتفع. ألفي جنيه: كاد بأسبارتو يسقط من الدهشة.

"Two thousand pounds ! Why, that is robbery!" But Fogg handed over the money without blinking. "Time is more valuable than gold," he said. With that, the elephant was saddled, and a skilled mahout (elephant driver) joined them as a guide. Fogg, Passepartout, and Fix climbed onto the animal's back. Slowly, Kiouni moved into the dense jungle, carrying them toward Allahabad.

"ألفي جنيه! يا للهول. هذا سلب! لكن فوج سلم المال دون أن يرمش له جفن. قال: الوقت أثمن من الذهب مع ذلك. تم سرج الفيل. وانضم إليهم سائس فيل ماهر كدليل. صعد فوج وباسبارتو وفيكس على ظهر الحيوان. تحرك كيوني ببطء داخل الغابة الكثيفة، حاملاً إياهم نحو الله آباد.



Journey Through the Jungle

الرحلة عبر الغابة

The jungle was alive with sound. Birds of bright colors screeched in the treetops, while insects buzzed like tiny drums. Occasionally, a tiger's roar echoed in the distance, causing Passepartout to clutch the saddle tightly. "Do not worry," said the mahout calmly. "Tigers rarely attack elephants." Passepartout muttered, "Rarely is not never." Still, he could not deny the beauty of the forest.

كانت الغابة مليئة بالأصوات. صرخ الطيور الملونة في قمم الأشجار. بينما كانت الحشرات تطن مثل الطبول الصغيرة. بين الحين والآخر كان زئير نمر يردد في المسافة. مما جعل بأسبارتو يتمسك بالسرج بشدة. قال سائس الفيل بهدوء: لا تقلق. النمور نادراً ما تهاجم الفيلة. تمتع بأسبارتو: الندرة ليست أبداً. ومع ذلك، لم يستطع إنكار جمال الغابة.

Sunlight filtered through the tall trees, and the air smelled of flowers and spice. Along the way, they passed small villages where children stared wide-eyed at the foreign travelers on the great elephant. Fogg remained calm, studying his watch frequently to ensure they were still on schedule. Fix, on the other hand, grew restless. Every hour that passed felt like a chance for his suspect to escape justice.

تسللت أشعة الشمس عبر الأشجار الطويلة. وكان الهواء مشبعاً برائحة الزهور والتوابل. على طول الطريق، مزوا بقري صغيرة حيث حذر الأطفال بعيون واسعة في المسافرين الأجانب على ظهر الفيل العظيم. بقي فوج هادئاً، يراجع ساعته كثيراً للتأكد من أنهم لا يزالون على الجدول الزمني. أما فيكس، فقد بدأ يشعر بالضيق. كل ساعة تمر كانت تبدو له فرصة للهروب من العدالة.



A Dramatic Encounter

لقاء درامي

On the second day of their jungle crossing, they heard distant cries. The mahout slowed Kiouni and raised his hand. "Listen," he whispered. The voices rose higher and higher until they came to an open space. There, they found a young woman lying unconscious, her face deathly pale.

في اليوم الثاني من عبورهم الغابة، سمعوا صرخات بعيدة. أبطأ سائس الفيل حركة كيوني ورفع يده. استمعوا. همس. ارتفعت الأصوات تدريجياً حتى وصلوا إلى مساحة مفتوحة هناك. وجدوا امرأة شابة مستلقية فاقدة الوعي. ووجهها شاحب كالمرور.



A New Companion

رفيقة جديدة

Fogg decided to rescue the woman. And he made a plan. The woman's name was Aouda. She was the daughter of a wealthy merchant, forced a terrible situation after her husband's death. Grateful and shaken, she thanked Fogg with tears in her eyes. "You have saved my life," she said softly. Fogg replied simply, "No thanks are necessary. It was the right thing to do." Passepartout, however, was glowing with pride. "Monsieur Fogg, you are the bravest man I have ever known!" Even Fix, though still suspicious, felt a grudging respect.

قرر فوج إنقاذ المرأة. ووضع خطة لذلك. اسم المرأة كان أودا. كانت ابنة تاجر ثري. وأجبرت على موقف مروّع بعد وفاة زوجها. شاكراً ومرتبطة، شكرت فوج ودموعها في عينيها. قالت بهدوء: لقد أنقذت حياتي. أجاب فوج ببساطة: لا حاجة للشكر. كان هذا الصواب.

أما باسبارتو. فكان مشرقاً بالفخر. سيدي فوج. أنت اشجع رجل عرفته في حياتي! حتى فيكس. رغم شكوكه المستمرة. شعر باحترام على مضض.

He had not expected such courage from his so-called criminal. With Aouda now part of their group, the journey to Allahabad continued. Kiouni carried them steadily until at last, after days of hardship, the railway line appeared again. Fogg paid the mahout generously and released Kiouni to him, with Aouda seated safely beside them. The party boarded the train once more, bound for Calcutta. Fogg had lost money and time, but he had gained something far more valuable — a human life saved.

لم يكن يتوقع مثل هذا الشجاعة من المجرم المزعوم ومع انضمام أودا إلى مجموعتهم. استمرت الرحلة إلى الله أباد. حملهم كيوني بثبات حتى ظهر خط السكة الحديدية مرة أخرى بعد أيام من المشقة. دفع فوج لسانس الفيل بسخاء وأفرج عن كيوني. وجلست أودا بأمان بجانبهم. صعدت المجموعة إلى القطار مرة أخرى. متجهين نحو كالكتا. لقد خسر فوج المال والوقت. لكنه ربح شيئاً أكثر قيمة — حياة إنسان تم إنقاذها.

Setbook Questions & Answers



1. Where did Fogg, Passepartout, and Fix begin their journey in this chapter?

أين بدأ فيكس وباسبارتو والسيد فوج رحلتهم في هذا الفصل؟

They began at Bombay's grand train station.

بدأوا في محطة القطار الكبرى في بومباي.

2. What destinations was the new railway line supposed to reach?

ما الوجهات التي كان من المفترض أن يصل إليها خط السكة الحديد الجديد؟

It was supposed to reach Allahabad and then Calcutta.

كان من المفترض أن يصل إلى الله أباد ثم كالكتا.

3. What kinds of people did Passepartout see at the station?

ما أنواع الأشخاص الذين راها باسبارتو في المحطة؟

He saw British officers, Indian traders, women in saris, and pilgrims.

رأى ضباطاً بريطانيين وتجاراً هنوداً ونساء يرتدين الساري وحجاجاً.

4. What did the pilgrims carry with them?

ماذا كان يحمل الحجاج معهم؟

They carried walking sticks and copper pots.

كانوا يحملون عصي المشي وقدروراً نحاسية.

5. Why did Fix continue to travel with them?

لماذا واصل فيكس السفر معهم؟

He was waiting for the arrest warrant and followed Fogg secretly.

كان ينتظر مذكرة القبض ويتتبع فوج سراً.

6. What animals did Passepartout see from the train?

ما الحيوانات التي راها باسبارتو من القطار؟

He saw a herd of elephants.

رأى قطيعاً من الأفيال.

7. How did Fogg describe elephants?

كيف وصف فوج الأفيال؟

He said they were reliable animals for carrying loads.

قال إنها حيوانات موثوقة لنقل الأحمال.

8. What food did merchants sell at the small stations?

ما الطعام الذي كان يبيعه التجار في المحطات الصغيرة؟

They sold spiced tea, rice cakes, and fruit.

كانوا يبيعون الشاي المتبل وكعك الأرز والفواكه.

9. Why did the train stop on the third day?

لماذا توقف القطار في اليوم الثالث؟

The railway line was unfinished and ended in the jungle.

لأن خط السكة الحديد لم يكتمل وانتهى في الغابة.

10. How many miles of jungle had no railway line?

☞ Fifty miles.

كم ميلاً من الغابة لم يكن به خط سكة حديد؟

خمسون ميلاً.

Critical Thinking Questions

11. Would you feel safe traveling across the jungle on an elephant? Why or why not?

هل ستشعر بالأمان أثناء السفر عبر الغابة على ظهر فيل؟ ولماذا أو لماذا لا؟

☞ No, because wild animals and rough paths are dangerous.

لا، لأن الحيوانات البرية والمسارات الوعرة خطيرة.

12. Do you agree with Fogg that "time is more valuable than gold"? Explain.

هل توافق فوج أن "الوقت أثمن من الذهب"؟ اشرح.

☞ Yes, because time cannot be replaced once it is lost.

نعم، لأن الوقت لا يمكن تعويضه بعد ضياعه.

13. Was Passepartout right to call the price of the elephant robbery? Why?

هل كان باسبارتو محقاً عندما وصف سعر الفيل بالسرقة؟ ولماذا؟

☞ Yes, because the price was extremely high.

نعم، لأن السعر كان مرتفعاً للغاية.

14. Would you spend a fortune to save time, like Fogg?

هل ستنفق ثروة لتوفير الوقت مثل فوج؟

☞ No, because money is also important for future needs.

لا، لأن المال مهم أيضاً للاحتياجات المستقبلية.

15. How do you think Fogg's decision to rescue Aouda changes the story?

كيف تعتقد أن قرار فوج بإنقاذ أودا يغير القصة؟

☞ It adds drama and a new challenge to the journey.

يضيف إثارة وتحدياً جديداً إلى الرحلة.

16. Do you think Fogg is motivated by honor or pride in his decisions?

هل تعتقد أن فوج مدفوع بالشرف أم الكبرياء في قراراته؟

☞ He is motivated by honor, shown by saving Aouda.

مدفوع بالشرف، كما يظهر في إنقاذه لأودا.

17. What lessons about flexibility in plans can we learn from this chapter?

ما الدروس التي يمكننا تعلمها عن المرونة في الخطط من هذا الفصل؟

☞ We must adapt quickly when plans change.

يجب أن نتكيف بسرعة عند تغيير الخطط.

18. How does the unfinished railway show the limits of technology in the 19th century?

كيف يوضح خط السكة الحديد غير المكتمل حدود التكنولوجيا في القرن التاسع عشر؟

☞ It shows that progress was slow and incomplete.

يوضح أن التقدم كان بطيئاً وغير مكتمل.

19. What would you have done if you were in Fogg's place?

ماذا كنت ستفعل لو كنت مكان فوج؟

☞ I would also hire the elephant to keep moving forward.

كنت سأستأجر الفيل أيضاً لأواصل التقدم.

20. What does this chapter teach us about the balance between goals and humanity?

ماذا يعلمنا هذا الفصل عن التوازن بين الأهداف والإنسانية؟

☞ It teaches that saving lives is more important than winning a race.

يعلمنا أن إنقاذ الأرواح أهم من الفوز في سباق.

Chapter 6 General Exercises

1) Answer the following questions

1. Where did Fogg, Passepartout, and Fix begin their journey in this chapter?
2. What destinations was the new railway line supposed to reach?
3. What kinds of people did Passepartout see at the station?
4. What did the pilgrims carry with them?
5. Why did Fix continue to travel with them?
6. What animals did Passepartout see from the train?
7. How did Fogg describe elephants?
8. What food did merchants sell at the small stations?
9. Why did the train stop on the third day?
10. How many miles of jungle had no railway line?
11. Why did the unfinished railway surprise Passepartout so much?
12. What does Fogg's calmness in the face of the problem show?
13. Why was Passepartout upset about the price of the elephant?
14. Why did Fogg agree to pay such a high price?
15. How does the elephant Kiouni symbolize adaptation in the journey?
16. How does Fix's doubt about Fogg affect the story?
17. What dangers did the jungle crossing include?
18. Why was Aouda's rescue important?

19. How did Passepartout feel about Fogg after the rescue?

20. Why might even Fix admire Fogg at this point?

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

1. Mr. Fogg, Passepartout, and Detective Fix stood at the platform of
 a. Bombay station b. Paris station c. Cairo station d. London station
2. The railway line promised to carry travelers from Bombay to
 a. Delhi b. Allahabad and Calcutta
 c. Suez d. Aden
3. The station was filled with vendors shouting and
 a. playing music b. engines hissing c. fireworks d. dancing
4. Phileas Fogg bought the train tickets with
 a. hesitation b. anger c. no hesitation d. fear
5. Passepartout was amazed by the variety of
 a. animals b. different people c. shops d. houses
6. Pilgrims carried and copper pots.
 a. sticks b. books c. clothes d. flowers
7. Fix pretended to be another
 a. officer b. traveler c. vendor d. servant
8. Fix was still waiting for the from London.
 a. arrest warrant b. letter c. ticket d. telegram reply
9. The train gave a long before departure.
 a. light b. speech c. whistle d. horn
10. At first, the train sped past the crowded streets of
 a. Paris b. Bombay c. Suez d. Calcutta
11. Passepartout leaned out the window pointing at
 a. temples and monkeys b. trains and buses
 c. elephants and lions d. castles and palaces
12. Fogg sat quietly reading a
 a. timetable b. newspaper c. guidebook d. letter
13. Passepartout was excited to see a herd of
 a. camels b. elephants c. tigers d. cows
14. Fogg explained elephants were used for carrying
 a. kings b. people only c. water d. loads
15. Fix began to doubt if Fogg was really a
 a. gentleman b. servant c. thief d. banker
16. For two days the train traveled smoothly, stopping at
 a. large cities b. small stations c. ports d. villages
17. Merchants sold at the stations.
 a. rice cakes, tea, and fruit b. clothes c. books d. tickets
18. On the third day, the train unexpectedly
 a. broke down b. slowed and stopped c. turned back d. caught fire
19. The conductor announced the line ended in the middle of the
 a. desert b. jungle c. mountains d. city

The Prophet's Birth and Adulthood

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mecca was saved from the assault of Abrahah.
a. miraculously b. hardly c. scarcely d. rarely
2. People in Mecca used to their babies to wet nurses.
a. trust b. forbid c. disallow d. entrust
3. The is someone who takes care of the sheep.
a. shepherd b. shepherdess c. cowherd d. goatherd
4. The prophet (PBUH) was first by his grandfather (Abdul-Muttalib).
a. brought b. raised c. educated d. grown
5. The prophet (PBUH) experience in commercial trade.
a. won b. earned c. gained d. clinched
6. Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) a visit from the angel Gabriel.
a. received b. send c. refused d. delivered
7. This changed Prophet Muhammad's life.
a. accident b. coincidence c. clash d. incident
8. Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) kept good relations with his
a. relative b. uncle c. kith and kin d. friends
9. Lady Khadijah him to her cousin Waraqa Ibn Nawfal.
a. gave b. accompanied c. sent d. asked
10. The number of Muslims started to slowly but steadily.
a. decrease b. increase c. amplify d. absorb
11. The Prophet (PBUH) to the order of Allah.
a. requested b. applied c. refused d. complied
12. The Prophet (PBUH) did not his call to Allah.
a. surrender b. give out c. give in d. leave
13. The Prophet (PBUH) had to find a safe place to Islam.
a. tell b. say c. learn d. teach
14. Muslims were brutally and savagely.
a. solved b. treated c. worked d. given
15. Quraysh decided to a complete boycott on the Prophet (PBUH) and all Muslims.
a. go b. give c. impose d. pay
16. Muslims shouldn't show any towards others.
a. love b. mercy c. aggression d. blame
17. The Mosque is a of peace and tranquility.
a. danger b. risk c. threat d. haven
18. Muslims shouldn't anyone.
a. calumniate b. rely on c. speak to d. endure
19. An is someone who represents his or her country in another country.
a. representative b. Ambassador c. receptionist d. traveller

20. Most of the Muslims from Mecca to Medina.
a. left b. travelled c. went d. immigrated
21. The modern world is in a lack of values.
a. physical b. spiritual c. ancient d. old
22. To.....is to twist or change facts, ideas, etc. so that they are no longer correct or true.
a. distort b. apply c. refuse d. believe
23. Muslims should between that which is good and that which is bad.
a. equal b. value c. distinguish d. moderate
24. should be built on justice.
a. governments b. governance c. posts d. jobs
25. The law must protect people from
a. arguments b. harassment c. beliefs d. communication
26. If you can't the situation, ask for help.
a. deal b. treat c. handle d. do
27. Muslims struggle a lot against religious
a. depression b. oppression c. mission d. freedom
28. Some Muslims died under the
a. torture b. turtle c. torrent d. trouble
29. I cannot stand it when they themselves the defenders of human rights.
a. proclaim b. tell c. introduce d. renounce
30. Muslims had to struggle for their
a. survival b. arrival c. revival d. coexistence
31. Nobody could the future.
a. protect b. predict c. respect d. accept
32. Prophet Muhammed preached a memorable on forgiveness.
a. sermon b. ceremony c. title d. ideas
33. Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) left an unrivalled
a. recommendation b. device c. Money d. legacy
34. The Islamic system is in dealing with any case.
a. equal b. paralleled c. unparalleled d. surpassed
35. We should not between people according to their ethnicities.
a. distinguish b. distinct c. confuse d. disapprove
36. Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) was born in Mecca in CE.
a. 750 b. 650 c. 456 d. 570

2) Answer the following Questions:

1. Who brought up the Prophet (PBUH) when his mother died?

من ربي النبي ﷺ بعد وفاة أمه؟

His grandfather and then his uncle.

جدّه ثم عمه

2. Where did the Prophet (PBUH) spend his childhood?

أين قضى النبي ﷺ طفولته؟

In the desert with his wet nurse.

في الصحراء مع مرضعته

3. What reputation did the Prophet (PBUH) gain?

ما السمعة التي اكتسبها النبي ﷺ؟

Honest and trustworthy.

الصادق الأمين

4. What did the people in Mecca worship?

ماذا كان يعبد الناس في مكة؟

Idols.

الأصنام

5. Why did Lady Khadijah propose to marry the Prophet (PBUH)?
لماذا عرضت السيدة خديجة الزواج من النبي ﷺ؟
Because he was honest and kind. لأنه كان صادقاً وطيباً
6. Where did Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) use to meditate?
أين كان النبي ﷺ يتعبد؟
In the cave of Hira. في غار حراء
7. What happened when Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) was meditating in the cave of Hira?
ماذا حدث عندما كان النبي ﷺ يتعبد في غار حراء؟
Angel Gabriel came to him. جاءه الملك جبريل
8. Why did Lady Khadijah accompany him to her cousin Waraqa Ibn Nawfal?
لماذا ذهبت السيدة خديجة مع النبي ﷺ إلى ابن عمها ورقة؟
To ask him about the revelation. لتسأله عن الوحي
9. Who were the first people to believe in Prophet Muhammad?
من أول من آمن بالنبي ﷺ؟
His wife Khadijah and his close friends. زوجته خديجة وأصدقائه المقربون
10. How did Prophet Muhammad meet early Muslims?
كيف كان النبي ﷺ يلتقي أوائل المسلمين؟
Secretly in Al-Arqam's house. سراً في بيت الأرقم
11. How long did the call for Islam secretly last?
كم استمرت الدعوة سراً؟
About three years. حوالي ثلاث سنوات
12. What happened when the Prophet invited Quraysh to believe in Allah?
ماذا حدث عندما دعا النبي ﷺ قريش للإيمان بالله؟
They rejected him. رفضوه
13. Why did many Muslims patiently endure injustice and cruelty?
لماذا صبر المسلمون على الظلم والعنف؟
Because of their strong faith. بسبب إيمانهم القوي
14. What place did the Prophet advise Muslims to immigrate to? And why?
إلى أين نصح النبي ﷺ المسلمين بالهجرة؟ ولماذا؟
Abyssinia, because its king was just. إلى الحبشة لأن ملكها عادل
15. What grievous events did the Prophet suffer after the boycott?
ما الأحداث الحزينة التي مر بها النبي ﷺ بعد المقاطعة؟
The death of Khadijah and Abu Talib. وفاة خديجة وأبي طالب
16. Why would the Prophet call tribes to Islam during pilgrimage?
لماذا دعا النبي ﷺ القبائل إلى الإسلام في موسم الحج؟
To find support for Islam. ليجد من يدعم الإسلام
17. Why was the group from Yathrib ready to accept Islam?
لماذا كانت جماعة من يثرب مستعدة لقبول الإسلام؟
Because they heard about the Prophet and believed in him. لأنهم سمعوا عن النبي وأمنوا به
18. What did twelve men from Yathrib promise in the First Pledge of 'Aqabah?
ماذا وعد ١٢ رجلاً من يثرب في بيعة العقبة الأولى؟
To follow and support the Prophet. أن يتبعوه النبي ﷺ ويؤيدوه
19. How many people from Yathrib attended the Second Pledge of 'Aqabah?
كم عدد من حضروا بيعة العقبة الثانية من يثرب؟
Seventy-three men and two women. ثلاثة وسبعون رجلاً وامرأتان

20. Why did most Muslims immigrate from Mecca to Medina?

لماذا هاجر معظم المسلمين من مكة إلى المدينة؟

📖 To escape persecution.

هرباً من الاضطهاد

21. When did the Prophet arrive in Medina?

متى وصل النبي ﷺ إلى المدينة؟

📖 In Rabi' Al-Awwal.

في شهر ربيع الأول

22. What was the mosque meant to do?

ما الغرض من بناء المسجد؟

📖 To be a place of worship and unity.

الترجمة: ليكون مكاناً للعبادة والوحدة

23. What did the political system of the Prophet show?

ماذا أظهر نظام النبي ﷺ السياسي؟

📖 Justice and equality.

العدل والمساواة

24. How did the Prophet show the world how to care for religious minorities?

كيف أظهر النبي ﷺ للعالم احترام الأقليات الدينية؟

📖 By protecting their rights.

بحماية حقوقهم

25. What did the Charter of Medina establish?

ما الذي أسسته وثيقة المدينة؟

📖 Peace and cooperation among all groups.

السلام والتعاون بين الجميع

26. Why did the Muslims attack the caravan?

لماذا هاجم المسلمون القافلة؟

📖 To get back their stolen property.

ليسترجعوا ممتلكاتهم المسروقة

27. Why did Allah give the Prophet permission to fight Quraysh?

لماذا أذن الله للنبي ﷺ بقتال قريش؟

📖 Because Quraysh harmed the Muslims.

لأن قريش أذت المسلمين

28. Who deprived Muslims in Mecca from their belongings?

من الذي حرّم المسلمين في مكة من ممتلكاتهم؟

📖 Quraysh.

قريش

29. Why were Muslims involved in a series of battles? لماذا شارك المسلمون في سلسلة من المعارك؟

📖 To defend themselves and Islam.

للدفاع عن أنفسهم ودينهم

30. What happened when Mecca was conquered?

ماذا حدث عند فتح مكة؟

📖 The Prophet forgave the people.

النبي ﷺ عفا عن الناس

31. Why is the Prophet's last sermon important?

لماذا خطبة النبي ﷺ الأخيرة مهمة؟

📖 It teaches rights, unity, and justice.

لأنها تعلم الحقوق والوحدة والعدل

32. How did Islam become the center of learning in the world?

كيف أصبح الإسلام مركزاً للعلم في العالم؟

📖 By encouraging knowledge and education.

بتشجيع العلم والتعليم

33. When did the Prophet die?

متى توفي النبي ﷺ؟

📖 In the 11th year of Hijrah.

في السنة الحادية عشرة من الهجرة

34. How should Muslim leaders be?

كيف يجب أن يكون القادة المسلمون؟

📖 Just and honest.

عادلين وصادقين

35. How did the Prophet show respect to women?

كيف أظهر النبي ﷺ احترامه للمرأة؟

📖 He treated them with kindness and gave them rights.

عاملهم بلطف وأعطاهم حقوقهم



Translation

1) Translate the following into Arabic:

- Most of the tribes were polytheistic, worshipping their own set of gods.
* معظم القبائل كانت مشركية. تعبد مجموعة من الآلهة الخاصة بها
- The Prophet (PBUH) keeps good relations with his kith and kin, helps the poor and the destitute and serves guests generously.
* كان النبي ﷺ يصل رحمه. ويعين الفقراء والمحتاجين. ويكرم الضيوف بسخاء
- The Prophet (PBUH) was subjected to harassment and bullying from the people of Quraysh, both verbally and physically.
* تعرض النبي ﷺ للأذى والسخرية من قبل قريش. سواء بالكلام أو بالفعل
- In the Second Pledge of 'Aqabah, Muslims from Yathrib promised to protect and defend the Prophet (PBUH) and Muslims when they come and live in Yathrib.
* في بيعة العقبة الثانية. وعد المسلمون من يثرب بحماية النبي ﷺ والدفاع عنه وعن المسلمين عند قدومهم للعيش في يثرب
- The Charter of Medina established that the non-Muslim citizens of the state had the right to practice their religion free from harassment and to enjoy the same protection and rights as the Muslims do.
* أقرت وثيقة المدينة أن لغير المسلمين من سكان الدولة حق ممارسة دينهم دون مضايقة. وأن لهم نفس الحماية والحقوق التي يتمتع بها المسلمون
- Attacking the caravan means that if Quraysh wanted the freedom to trade in safety, they should realize that Muslims must also have the freedom to believe in Allah, to follow His Messenger (PBUH) and spread His Word.
* مهاجمة القافلة تعني أنه إذا أرادت قريش حرية التجارة بأمان. فعليها أن تدرك أن للمسلمين أيضاً الحق في الإيمان بالله. واتباع رسوله ﷺ ونشر دعوته
- Among the greatest areas of the legacy of the Prophet (PBUH) were the impact he had on the lives of women, elevating their status and rights to a level the world had never witnessed before.
* من أعظم جوانب إرث النبي ﷺ تأثيره على حياة النساء. فقد رفع مكانتهن وحقوقهن إلى مستوى لم يشهده العالم من قبل

2) Translate the following into English:

- لقب النبي ﷺ بالصادق الأمين لصدقه وأمانته.
The Prophet (PBUH) was called "The Truthful, The Trustworthy" because of his honesty and trustworthiness.
- ينبغي على الإنسان أن يتدبر في الكون ليتعرف على قدرة الله تعالى.
A person should reflect on the universe to recognize the power of Allah Almighty.
- على المسلم أن يصبر على الضراء لأن جزاء الله له سيكون عظيماً في الآخرة.
A Muslim should be patient during hardships because Allah's reward for him will be great in the Hereafter.
- للمسلم أن يترك المكان الذي لا يستطيع العيش فيه لكثرة الظلم ويهاجر إلى مكان آمن.
A Muslim may leave a place where he cannot live due to oppression and migrate to a safe place.
- كفل الإسلام التعايش السلمي بين المسلمين. وغير المسلمين. وهذا من مظاهر عدل الإسلام ورحمته.
Islam guaranteed peaceful coexistence between Muslims and non-Muslims, and this is one of the signs of its justice and mercy.
- ينبغي على الإنسان أن يناضل من أجل الحصول على حقوقه وتحقيق أهدافه.
A person should struggle to obtain his rights and achieve his goals.
- يجب علينا أن نقتفي أثر النبي صلى الله عليه وسلم لننال محبة الله تعالى.
We must follow the example of the Prophet (PBUH) to gain the love of Allah Almighty.

The Concept of Worship

1) Select the right choice:

- When you devote yourself to someone this means that you to them.
a. lie b. submit c. invite d. apply
- The word submission is from the word submit.
a. derived b. arrived c. deprived d. survived
- Ritual acts of devotion as well as the feelings the aspect of Islamic worship.
a. make b. comprise c. exclude d. take
- Having great upon Allah alone does not mean to quit working hard.
a. reliance b. worship c. submission d. thought
- Yielding to Allah is the of worship.
a. source b. resource c. suspect d. essence
- Ailing and afflicted people depended on for their livelihood.
a. cheering b. charity c. sharing d. assuring
- You'll have to the Islamic teachings.
a. abide by b. abide c. pay d. pray
- When the heart is filled with awe towards Allah, this means it is filled with
a. love b. fear c. respect d. a, b and c
- We should follow the prophets of Allah to deviation.
a. evade b. provide c. avoid d. invade
- A Muslim should not poke his/her nose into others'
a. affairs b. fair c. fears d. welfare

2) Answer the following questions:

- What is the precise identification of worship?

ما هو التعريف الدقيق للعبادة؟

Worship is complete submission to Allah with love.

العبادة هي الخضوع الكامل لله مع المحبة.

- What does the aspect of Islamic worship comprise?

مِم يتكوّن جانب العبادة في الإسلام؟

It includes rituals, heart feelings, and physical deeds.

يشمل الشعائر، ومشاعر القلب، والأعمال الجسدية.

- What does it mean to be righteous?

ماذا يعني أن تكون تقياً؟

To obey Allah and avoid sins.

أن تطيع الله وتبتعد عن المعاصي.

- What is the reality of worship?

ما هي حقيقة العبادة؟

Doing everything to please Allah.

أن تفعل كل شيء لترضى الله

5. Who must be the only subject of worship?

من هو الوحيد الذي يجب أن يُعبد؟

الله وحده

Allah only.

6. What intention should we have when we practice all daily activities including earning our livelihood?

ما النية التي يجب أن تكون لدينا في أنشطتنا اليومية ومنها كسب الرزق؟

To please Allah and follow His way.

نرضي الله ونتبع طريقه.

7. How do you think economic activities can be a kind of worship?

كيف يمكن أن تكون الأنشطة الاقتصادية نوعاً من العبادة؟

If done honestly and with good intention.

إذا تمت بصدق ونية طيبة.

8. Why do you think formal acts of worship have been ordained?

لماذا شرعت العبادات الشكلية؟

To connect with Allah and grow spiritually.

لنتواصل مع الله وننمو روحانياً.

9. How should we deal with parents, relatives and friends?

كيف يجب أن نتعامل مع الوالدين والأقارب والأصدقاء؟

With kindness and respect.

بلطف واحترام.

10. Why has Allah sent the Messengers and revealed the Scriptures?

لماذا أرسل الله الرسل وأنزل الكتب؟

To guide people to the right path.

لهداية الناس إلى الطريق الصحيح

Translation

1) Translate the following into Arabic:

1. The Islamic aspect of worship comprises ritual acts of devotion as well as the feelings in the heart and the physical deeds.

* الجانب الإسلامي للعبادة يشمل الأفعال التعبديّة. بالإضافة إلى مشاعر القلب والأعمال الجسدية.

2. We worship Allah in the manner which He loves and which the Messengers (PBUH) taught people as Allah has sent the Messengers and revealed the Scriptures to guide humankind to the right path.

* نعبّد الله بالطريقة التي يحبها والتي علّمها الرسل للناس. فقد أرسل الله الرسل وأنزل الكتب لهداية البشرية إلى الطريق المستقيم.

2) Translate the following into English:

١. العبادة هي كمال الخضوع لله تعالى مع كمال الحب.

Worship is complete submission to Allah Almighty with complete love.

3) Translate the following into English:

١. العبادة تشتمل على كل فعل أو قول أو اعتقاد يحبه الله ويرضاه.

Worship includes every action, word, or belief that Allah loves and is pleased with.

QUESTION BANK



1) Answer the following Questions:

1. Where was Prophet Muhammad born?
2. When was Prophet Muhammad born?
3. What did Abraha want to do to the Ka'ba?
4. Who was the wet nurse of Prophet Muhammad?
5. When did Prophet Muhammad's mother die?
6. Who raised Prophet Muhammad after his mother's death?
7. When did Prophet Muhammad's grandfather die?
8. Who took care of Prophet Muhammad after his grandfather's death?
9. What did Prophet Muhammad work as in his early teens?
10. What did the people of Mecca worship?
11. Why was the city of Mecca important?
12. For whom did Prophet Muhammad begin trading in his early 20s?
13. Why did Khadija want to marry Prophet Muhammad?
14. How old was Prophet Muhammad when he married Khadija?
15. How old was Khadija when she married Prophet Muhammad?
16. How many children did Prophet Muhammad and Khadija have?
17. Where did Prophet Muhammad use to meditate?
18. What happened when Prophet Muhammad was meditating?
19. What did lady Khadija say to Prophet Muhammad after the experience in Mount Hira?
20. Who did lady Khadija accompany Prophet Muhammad to?
21. What did Waraqa ibn Nawfal tell Prophet Muhammad?
22. Who were the first people to believe in Prophet Muhammad?
23. How did early Muslims meet together?
24. How long did Prophet Muhammad call to Islam secretly?
25. What did the people of Quraysh do when Prophet Muhammad invited them to Islam?
26. Why did Muslims decide to meet together at Al-Arqam's house?
27. What was Al-Arqam's house known for?
28. Why were the leaders of Quraysh disturbed and opposing Islam?
29. Which Muslims were brutally persecuted?
30. What did Bilal's master do to him?
31. Why did Muslims endure suffering all kinds of injustice, violence and cruelty?
32. Why did Prophet Muhammad allow Muslims to go to Abyssinia?
33. Why were the people of Quraysh refrained from killing Prophet Muhammad?
34. Why did the people of Quraysh impose a complete boycott on the Prophet and all Muslims?
35. What were the prophecies made by the Jews of Medina?
36. What did the twelve men of the First Aqaba Pledge promise to do?
37. Who was sent to Medina to be the first ambassador to Islam?
38. Why didn't Ali immigrate to Medina with the Prophet?
39. When did the Prophet arrive in Medina?
40. What was the Charter of Medina about?
41. Why is the Ka'ba so important for Muslims?
42. What did the Prophet do with the people of Mecca after he conquered it?
43. When did the Prophet realize that his life was going to end?
44. When did the Prophet die?
45. Where was the Prophet buried?

2) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. Abraha targeted the Ka'ba and wanted to it.
a. worship b. destroy c. save d. build
2. Prophet Muhammad's father died
a. when he was four. b. when he was six.
c. before he was born. d. after he was born.
3. Halima Al-Sa'diyya was the of the Prophet.
a. wet nurse b. mother c. aunt d. grandmother
4. When Prophet Muhammad was , his mother died.
a. ten b. forty c. sixteen d. six
5. Abu Talib was the Prophet's
a. grandfather b. paternal uncle c. maternal uncle d. friend
6. The Prophet and Khadija became parents of daughters.
a. two b. three c. four d. five
7. Prophet Muhammad used to meditate in
a. Medina b. Mount Arafat c. Mount Hira d. the Ka'ba
8. was Khadija's cousin.
a. Abu-Talib b. Waraqa ibn Nawfal c. Abd Al-Muttalib d. Ammar ibn Yasir
9. Waraqa told the Prophet that his people would him out.
a. drive b. believe c. respect d. save
10. was the Prophet's close friend.
a. Abd Al-Rahman ibn Awf b. Talha ibn Ubayd-Allah
c. Abu-Bakr d. Sa'd ibn Abi-Waqqas
11. The Prophet spent years in Mecca calling to Islam secretly.
a. three b. four c. five d. six
12. When the Prophet invited the people of Quraysh to Islam, they his call.
a. accepted b. rejected c. expected d. respected
13. The safe place where the new Muslims decided to meet together was
a. the Ka'ba b. Mount Hira
c. the Prophet's house d. Al-Arqam's house
14. The people of Quraysh persecuted Muslims.
a. poor b. strong c. rich d. powerful
15. Bilal's master put a large on his chest.
a. tree b. animal c. stone d. book
16. The first Muslim immigration was to
a. Mecca b. Medina c. Badr d. Abyssinia
17. Muslims were treated by the people of Quraysh.
a. brutally b. gently c. peacefull d. politely
18. Quraysh decided to impose a on the Prophet and all Muslims.
a. block b. cut c. boycott d. agreement
19. Despite Quraysh's persecution, the number of Muslims was
a. increasing d. decreasing c. the same d. low



Unit 1

Part 1 Key Vocabulary

1. **a.** manufactured
2. **a.** gateway
3. **b.** infrastructure
4. **c.** partnerships
5. **b.** textiles
6. **c.** exchange
7. **d.** mutual
8. **c.** expanding
9. **d.** rural
10. **a.** integration
11. **d.** stability
12. **b.** hybrid
13. **a.** stable
14. **b.** telecommunication
15. **b.** vaccine
16. **c.** funding
17. **d.** strategic
18. **a.** decade
19. **c.** flourish
20. **d.** solidarity
21. **b.** tremendous
22. **a.** occupies

Main Vocabulary

23. **c.** vaccine
24. **c.** sustainable
25. **a.** hepatitis
26. **c.** affordable
27. **a.** combine
28. **b.** empower
29. **c.** promote
30. **d.** political
31. **d.** tolerant
32. **a.** scholarship
33. **d.** support
34. **b.** road networks
35. **c.** benefit
36. **d.** entire
37. **a.** region
38. **b.** attend
39. **a.** productive
40. **d.** adoption
41. **c.** limitations
42. **a.** cross-border
43. **d.** tolerant
44. **d.** vision
45. **b.** medical aid
46. **a.** continent

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

47. **d.** Manufactured
48. **c.** create
49. **d.** boost
50. **c.** Hybrid

51. **c.** in
52. **b.** manufacturing
53. **a.** impact
54. **b.** Stable
55. **a.** combat
56. **c.** with
57. **a.** in
58. **c.** funding
59. **d.** to
60. **b.** yield up to
61. **b.** scale
62. **a.** Mutual
63. **c.** Partnership
64. **b.** Infrastructure
65. **c.** capacity
66. **a.** joint research

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

67. **a.** produces / **b.** makes
68. **b.** unilateral / **c.** one-sided
69. **b.** expensive / **e.** costly
70. **a.** increased / **c.** improved
71. **a.** assist / **e.** help
72. **b.** renewable / **b.** renewable
73. **c.** doorway / **d.** access
74. **a.** oppose / **d.** resist
75. **b.** unsustainable / **c.** temporary
76. **a.** common / **d.** joint
77. **c.** uniform / **d.** pure
78. **b.** crossbreed / **d.** blend
79. **b.** shaky / **e.** unstable
80. **c.** unification / **e.** merging
81. **a.** one-sided / **c.** separate
82. **b.** superstructure / **c.** foundation
83. **c.** exit / **e.** barrier

Language Level 1

1. **d.** are building
2. **b.** is visiting
3. **c.** are giving
4. **b.** are working
5. **c.** is always doing
6. **b.** are building
7. **a.** are being built
8. **c.** are being carried
9. **d.** are studying
10. **a.** are playing
11. **c.** are being cleaned
12. **b.** are doing
13. **c.** is being built
14. **d.** is riding
15. **b.** is being checked
16. **c.** is performing
17. **d.** is being performed
18. **b.** is checking
19. **a.** is analyzing
20. **c.** are being examined

21. **a.** is sleeping
22. **d.** are having
23. **b.** are watching
24. **a.** are making
25. **c.** are using
26. **d.** is tidying

Language Level 2

27. **a.** is always singing
28. **b.** is always putting
29. **c.** is always saying
30. **c.** is thinking
31. **d.** is still cooking
32. **c.** am staying
33. **a.** is always smoking
34. **b.** is always talking
35. **d.** am flying
36. **c.** is always playing
37. **b.** is improving
38. **d.** am visiting
39. **c.** am having
40. **d.** are giving
41. **c.** 's doing
42. **b.** is being painted
43. **a.** are still waiting
44. **b.** aren't reading
45. **d.** is being prepared
46. **d.** are meeting
47. **a.** am going
48. **c.** am meeting
49. **a.** am having
50. **b.** is taking

Language Level 3

51. **b.** is being checked
52. **c.** is being cleaned
53. **d.** is doing
54. **b.** is watching
55. **d.** are being watered
56. **d.** isn't playing
57. **b.** he is always complaining
58. **c.** we are being followed
59. **a.** are seeing
60. **b.** is being
61. **a.** think

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. The students are working on a science project at the moment.
2. A letter is being written by her.
3. The school stage is being prepared.
4. The lesson is being explained at the moment.
5. His car is being repaired now.
6. The classroom is being cleaned right now.
7. He is still cleaning his room.
8. A football match is being organized.
9. The workers are building a bridge now.
10. A party is being prepared for tomorrow.

Part 2 Key Vocabulary

1. **d.** targeted
2. **b.** enhance
3. **a.** yields
4. **c.** capacity
5. **b.** milestone
6. **a.** collaboration
7. **b.** annual
8. **d.** success
9. **a.** cultural
10. **b.** expertise
11. **d.** launch
12. **b.** unity
13. **a.** agreement
14. **c.** highlighted
15. **a.** engagement
16. **b.** fossil fuels
17. **d.** reliance
18. **c.** renewable energy
19. **a.** opportunity
20. **b.** resources

Main Vocabulary

21. **c.** feature
22. **b.** foster
23. **c.** region
24. **b.** experiences
25. **b.** trade
26. **c.** challenges
27. **a.** influence
28. **b.** progress
29. **b.** sector
30. **b.** major
31. **c.** mission
32. **b.** solar panels
33. **c.** international
34. **a.** frequently
35. **c.** community
36. **c.** climate
37. **d.** change
38. **a.** medical team
39. **c.** irrigation
40. **b.** deepen
41. **a.** Meanwhile
42. **b.** one-sided
43. **c.** politics
44. **c.** staff
45. **d.** festival
46. **d.** increase
47. **b.** military
48. **c.** security
49. **a.** conference
50. **b.** leader
51. **c.** production

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

52. **b.** launch
53. **d.** Highlighted

54. **a.** face
55. **b.** supply
56. **b.** Milestone
57. **a.** foster
58. **b.** encourage
59. **a.** create
60. **b.** expand
61. **d.** organize
62. **a.** Enhance
63. **b.** in
64. **b.** Yields
65. **a.** by
66. **a.** On
67. **b.** in / with
68. **c.** Targeted
69. **a.** Engagement

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given

70. **c.** unsustainable / **e.** temporary
71. **a.** essential / **c.** crucial
72. **c.** enlarge / **e.** extend
73. **b.** harmony / **d.** solidarity
74. **b.** conflict / **d.** rivalry
75. **c.** trustworthy / **e.** dependable
76. **a.** weaken / **c.** damage
77. **c.** viable / **e.** renewable
78. **b.** failure / **d.** setback
79. **b.** decrease / **d.** diminish

Language Level 1

1. **b.** hosts
2. **d.** starts
3. **c.** is being taught
4. **a.** are being launched
5. **c.** am listening
6. **a.** are being built
7. **d.** is training
8. **b.** are being built
9. **c.** is playing
10. **a.** are you doing
11. **c.** is wearing
12. **d.** are you doing
13. **c.** are walking
14. **a.** am studying
15. **b.** is writing
16. **a.** It's raining

Language Level 2

17. **d.** weighs
18. **a.** looks
19. **d.** is coming
20. **c.** is weighing
21. **b.** costs
22. **a.** is always complaining
23. **d.** are always listening
24. **b.** believe
25. **c.** is giving
26. **a.** tastes

27. **b.** is he always playing

Language Level 3

28. **b.** is / talking
29. **b.** She goes to the gym every morning.
30. **a.** the speaker is clearly criticizing Ali.
31. **a.** The children are playing outside right now.
32. **c.** is living / lives
33. **b.** think / am thinking
34. **a.** listen / am working
35. **c.** Eman is seeming ill today.
36. **a.** work
37. **d.** is still remembered
38. **c.** doesn't fit
39. **b.** is always
40. **a.** wearing
41. **b.** is always prepared
42. **d.** flows
43. **c.** is flowing

Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. She is always punctual.
2. They rarely go to the movie theatre.
3. We always go to the beach.
4. She usually cleans her room.
5. She is helping her mother right now.
6. Politicians are talking about old issues at the moment.
7. They are travelling abroad this month.

Correct the verb between brackets using the present continuous tense:

1. **launch**
2. **play**
3. **provide**
4. **negotiate**
5. **explain**
6. **cut**

خاص بالطالاب المتقدمين

1. **a.** smoke
2. **c.** to smoke
3. **b.** makes
4. **c.** causes
5. **d.** checked
6. **b.** to do
7. **a.** were made to
8. **b.** to stay
9. **d.** staying
10. **b.** to stay

Writing

1. **d.** thesis statement
2. **a.** future prediction
3. **b.** the most important sentence in the introduction
4. **c.** conclusion
5. **b.** structured story or argument
6. **b.** one specific point
7. **b.** grab the reader's attention
8. **b.** summarize the main points
9. **a.** reasons and examples
10. **c.** introduction
11. **c.** work together and communicate
12. **b.** the main idea
13. **a.** body paragraphs
14. **a.** stay healthy
15. **b.** the thesis statement
16. **c.** three
17. **c.** clear and organized
18. **b.** what the paragraph is about
19. **b.** dialogue between two people
20. **a.** "In conclusion" or "To sum up"
21. **d.** present the main idea

Translation

١. **ب.** إن قانون المرور الجديد صارم للغاية وهو يهدف إلى حماية أرواح المواطنين الأبرياء من تهور بعض السائقين وتشمل العقوبات الحبس ودفع الكثير من المال..
٢. **د.** تعد صحارينا واحدة من المصادر الرئيسية للثروة. ولو أعطيناهم اهتماما بالغا يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومي وحل العديد من المشاكل عن طريق زراعة المزيد من الأراضي وتشييد المشروعات الاقتصادية.

3. **c.** Victims of bullying suffer from long-term psychological and behavioral problems such as depression, loneliness, withdrawnness, and anxiety.
4. **c.** We all know the importance of modern technology. It plays an effective role in our modern life, but we should know that as it contributes to the progress societies, it can destroy them.

Exercise on Comprehension

1. **b.** Social media can be a double-edged weapon.
2. **b.** They often show only the best parts of people's lives.
3. **d.** help people connect with others.
4. **a.** Social media can help you connect with people who share your hobbies.

5. **a.** words can hurt people's feelings.
6. **d.** are as hurtful as face-to-face ones.
7. **c.** make people behave rudely.
8. **a.** be kind and respectful to others.

General Exercises (A)

1. **b.** firm / **e.** steady
2. **c.** separation / **e.** division
3. **a.** manufactured
4. **b.** infrastructure
5. **c.** partnership
6. **b.** hybrid
7. **c.** cooperation
8. **d.** is studying
9. **c.** is being built
10. **b.** are / talking
11. **d.** are walking
12. **a.** is sleeping
13. **c.** supporting details and examples
14. **b.** one clear point

B Comprehension

1. **b.** Maria
2. **a.** persuaded
3. **d.** a & c
4. **a.** ashamed
5. **c.** A story
6. **a.** Honesty is the best policy
7. **a.** two
8. **d.** honest

Exercise on Translation (Group Two)

٣٨. **ج.** إن قراءة الصحف شيء ضروري لدى كثير من الناس، فالتعاطش للمعرفة يحثهم على قراءتها

39. **d.** Egypt was one of the first countries in the Middle East to provide a COVID-19 vaccine to its citizens. It also made many sources of obtaining different types of it, and provided it free of charge.

40. The engineers are building a new hospital.
41. A report is being written.

Unit 2

Part 1 Key Vocabulary

1. **c.** capital
2. **b.** investment
3. **b.** unique
4. **d.** independence
5. **c.** commitment
6. **b.** entrepreneurs
7. **a.** foundation
8. **b.** inventory
9. **d.** capital
10. **c.** founder
11. **a.** evolve
12. **d.** assist
13. **b.** tutoring
14. **c.** launch
15. **d.** resilience
16. **b.** rent
17. **a.** mobilization
18. **c.** dominate
19. **b.** development
20. **a.** pitch
21. **c.** inspiring
22. **d.** institutions
23. **d.** inspire
24. **a.** competition

Main Vocabulary

25. **a.** guarantee
26. **b.** challenges
27. **d.** identify
28. **c.** unique
29. **d.** convince
30. **a.** advantages
31. **c.** invest
32. **b.** secure
33. **d.** predict
34. **a.** demand
35. **d.** fitness
36. **b.** volunteers
37. **a.** access
38. **d.** requires
39. **a.** effort
40. **a.** platforms
41. **b.** Shipping
42. **d.** expand
43. **c.** develop
44. **a.** vital
45. **c.** setbacks

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

46. **c.** think differently
47. **a.** take
48. **c.** have
49. **c.** achieve
50. **b.** faces

51. **b.** earn
52. **d.** outside
53. **a.** to
54. **b.** powered
55. **c.** aged
56. **b.** of
57. **a.** on
58. **d.** at
59. **c.** away

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

60. **d.** originator / **e.** establisher
61. **a.** failure / **e.** setback
62. **b.** devotion / **c.** dedication
63. **c.** common / **d.** ordinary
64. **d.** benefit / **e.** strength
65. **a.** obstacle / **b.** problem
66. **a.** international / **c.** alien
67. **a.** help / **e.** aid
68. **a.** weakness / **b.** fragility

Language Level 1

1. **d.** had lost
2. **c.** had started
3. **d.** had left
4. **a.** had missed
5. **c.** had eaten
6. **b.** had forgotten
7. **a.** had developed
8. **b.** had studied
9. **a.** had been banned
10. **d.** had designed
11. **c.** had been used
12. **a.** seen
13. **d.** had lent
14. **b.** had eaten
15. **d.** when
16. **a.** before
17. **b.** when
18. **c.** until
19. **b.** was built
20. **a.** than
21. **b.** got
22. **c.** had never seen
23. **d.** Having
24. **d.** Having
25. **b.** had saved
26. **c.** had trained
27. **c.** had finished
28. **a.** had left

Language Level 2

29. **a.** had/gone
30. **c.** had she
31. **d.** was
32. **c.** been punished
33. **c.** had I
34. **d.** had already lost

35. **b.** buying
36. **c.** when I met
37. **b.** had broken
38. **a.** had you done
39. **d.** hadn't flown
40. **c.** had been working
41. **b.** had asked
42. **b.** had left
43. **b.** went
44. **d.** did I
45. **b.** had begun
46. **b.** had prepared
47. **d.** wasn't awarded

Language Level 3

48. **b.** had been checked
49. **d.** being cooked
50. **b.** had studied
51. **c.** been taken
52. **c.** had been promoted
53. **d.** had been turned
54. **b.** had been told
55. **c.** wasn't allowed
56. **c.** Having been fixed
57. **a.** felt
58. **d.** Having been polished
59. **c.** wasn't released
60. **d.** did
61. **c.** wasn't
62. **c.** I didn't go out till I had had breakfast.
63. **b.** had studied
64. **a.** had been painted
65. **c.** they been taken
66. **d.** had finished
67. **b.** hearing
68. **c.** He realized he forgot his wallet after he had paid for the meal.
69. **b.** The tickets had been sold out before we reached the box office.
70. **b.** The train came at the same time of my arrival.
71. **a.** typed

Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. I was shocked when I saw the results because I hadn't expected them to be so bad.
2. The audience had taken their seats before the concert started.
3. The documents had been taken earlier.
4. He has been out of the office before it rained.
5. After she had checked the engine, a report was written.

6. He resigned after he had worked for the company for ten years.
7. We had bought the tickets before the bus left.
8. I had seen him once before I met him yesterday.
9. We had reached home when the train stopped.
10. He couldn't answer the questions because he hadn't revised the lesson.

Part 2 Key Vocabulary

1. **a.** boost
2. **b.** notable
3. **b.** crafts
4. **a.** processes
5. **d.** portion
6. **c.** pesticides
7. **a.** source
8. **b.** harvest
9. **c.** processing
10. **d.** heritage
11. **b.** cultivation
12. **c.** investment
13. **b.** source
14. **a.** pesticides
15. **c.** availability
16. **b.** employment
17. **a.** organic
18. **d.** heritage
19. **c.** budget
20. **b.** pesticides
21. **c.** fabric

Main Vocabulary

22. **b.** opportunities
23. **a.** maintain
24. **a.** house
25. **d.** application
26. **c.** clarity
27. **b.** productive
28. **d.** trade
29. **a.** motivation
30. **c.** remote
31. **d.** increase
32. **a.** practical
33. **c.** cultural
34. **d.** specialty
35. **a.** traditional
36. **c.** appreciate
37. **a.** professionalism
38. **b.** cooperate

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

39. **b.** in
40. **d.** bring
41. **c.** share
42. **a.** make
43. **c.** develop
44. **a.** for

45. **a.** preserve
46. **d.** on
47. **b.** for
48. **b.** build
49. **b.** producers
50. **d.** up
51. **d.** strength
52. **b.** strengthen
53. **a.** realize
54. **d.** recognize
55. **d.** various
56. **c.** variety
57. **a.** voluntary work
58. **c.** paid employment
59. **b.** values
60. **a.** valuable
61. **d.** valuables

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

62. **b.** remarkable / **e.** significant
63. **a.** natural / **d.** sustainable
64. **c.** whole / **d.** total
65. **b.** enhance / **c.** increase
66. **a.** accessibility / **d.** presence
67. **c.** scarcity / **e.** unavailability
68. **a.** part / **b.** share
69. **a.** insignificant / **c.** ordinary

Language Level 1

1. **b.** went
2. **d.** had passed
3. **b.** when
4. **c.** going
5. **b.** Having
6. **c.** had I finished
7. **b.** eating
8. **a.** than
9. **d.** no sooner

Language Level 2

10. **c.** had he entered
11. **a.** had he lost
12. **b.** had been called
13. **a.** had we heard
14. **b.** been taken
15. **a.** had taken
16. **b.** had been fixed
17. **a.** wasn't permitted
18. **d.** hadn't returned
19. **a.** had been made
20. **d.** missed
21. **b.** wasn't painted
22. **d.** had been stolen
23. **b.** visited
24. **c.** wasn't
25. **d.** been painted
26. **a.** had lost
27. **d.** had left

28. **a.** wasn't sold
29. **d.** b & c
30. **b.** had been dreaming
31. **d.** had bought
32. **a.** was made
33. **c.** sent
34. **d.** had seen
35. **d.** had been
36. **a.** had already started
37. **d.** had owned
38. **a.** met
39. **c.** had fallen
40. **b.** finished
41. **c.** had revised
42. **a.** hadn't qualified

Language Level 3

43. **b.** had been given
44. **a.** had finished
45. **d.** Checking
46. **c.** had been raining
47. **d.** had been repaired
48. **c.** won't travel
49. **b.** had been studying
50. **d.** had met
51. **c.** until
52. **b.** had received
53. **d.** had ever read

Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. It started to rain after he had left the house.
2. She had finished her homework before she went to bed.
3. By the time we arrived at the station, the train had departed.
4. She had prepared the food when the guests arrived.
5. I passed the exam because I had studied hard.
6. She couldn't open the door since she had lost her keys.
7. I had already read about the museum before I visited it.
8. The teacher entered the class after the students had made noise.
9. They had completed the project when the manager congratulated them.

خاص بالطالاب المتقدمين

1. **a.** won't know
2. **a.** had left
3. **c.** won't leave
4. **d.** a & b
5. **a.** gave
6. **d.** weren't

Writing

1. **c.** professional
2. **b.** subject line

3. **d.** Sir/Madam
4. **a.** finds
5. **d.** hearing
6. **a.** formal
7. **b.** attention
8. **c.** professionals
9. **a.** share
10. **b.** subject
11. **c.** formal
12. **b.** maintain
13. **d.** faithfully
14. **a.** purpose
15. **c.** give details
16. **b.** response
- 17.

Translation

١. **ب.** الحروب لها آثار كارثية على استقرار الدول لأنها تعرقل مشاريع التنمية والنمو الاقتصادي في جميع أنحاء العالم.

٢. **ب.** تتمتع مصر بتاريخ وثقافة غنية يعود تاريخها إلى آلاف السنين، بدءاً بالثقافة الفرعونية ثم المسيحية والإسلام. فمصر من أقدم الحضارات.

3. **d.** Education is the cornerstone of the system of any developed country. It is considered the tool for knowledge, awareness, and development.
4. **c.** The government is carrying out many giant national projects all over the country. These projects aim to provide job opportunities for citizens, increase local production, and eliminate unemployment.
5. **d.** Learning foreign languages, specially English, helps us understand modern scientific, cultural trends and keep pace with the development of technology.

Exercise on Comprehension

1. **a.** Mental diseases
2. **d.** useless
3. **d.** spread
4. **c.** express their feelings easily
5. **c.** virtual
6. **a.** more
7. **c.** relating to the body
8. **b.** makes people lazy

General Exercises (A)

1. **c.** limited / **e.** rare
2. **c.** artificial / **d.** chemical
3. **b.** crafts
4. **b.** perfumes
5. **c.** patience

Unit 3

Part 1 Key Vocabulary

1. **d.** development
2. **a.** generation
3. **b.** prosperity
4. **b.** vision
5. **d.** strategy
6. **c.** comprehensive
7. **d.** affordable
8. **c.** sustainable
9. **d.** economic
10. **a.** strengths
11. **a.** pillar
12. **b.** inclusive
13. **a.** universal
14. **c.** chronic
15. **d.** equitable
16. **a.** access
17. **b.** screening
18. **c.** pressure
19. **c.** sustainable
20. **d.** guarantee
21. **a.** initiative
22. **c.** vaccination
23. **a.** coverage

Main Vocabulary

24. **b.** economy
25. **a.** justice
26. **a.** roadmap
27. **c.** step
28. **b.** participation
29. **c.** agency
30. **d.** principle
31. **a.** path
32. **b.** long-term
33. **c.** partner
34. **b.** advantage
35. **a.** equally
36. **d.** opportunity
37. **b.** resources
38. **a.** fairness
39. **a.** balanced
40. **c.** environment
41. **a.** regional
42. **b.** gap
43. **a.** natural gas
44. **b.** globalization
45. **c.** industrialization
46. **d.** privatization
47. **c.** presidential
48. **d.** hepatitis

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

49. **a.** prosperity
50. **c.** on

6. **b.** reward
7. **c.** for
8. **a.** Before that
9. **a.** had never been
10. **d.** took
11. **b.** since
12. **a.** wasn't awarded
13. **b.** had made
14. **d.** professional

B Comprehension

1. **d.** Egypt, India and China were the only important and powerful countries in the world to have rivers.
2. **d.** grow
3. **a.** Rivers and the beginning of civilization
4. **b.** farmers and traders
5. **b.** travelled
6. **d.** the soil was fertile
7. **d.** all are true
8. **d.** men from villages by rivers

Writing

١. ج. أن الإعلان عن طريق الإنترنت يتضمن إرسال البريد الإلكتروني ووسائل التواصل الاجتماعي والإعلانات عبر الإنترنت.

2. **c.** For keeping public cleanliness, enough litter baskets should be found at work places and public ones.
3. I went out with my friends after I had eaten lunch.
4. The match had started before the lights went out.

51. **d.** Economic
52. **d.** grow
53. **b.** have
54. **c.** doctor
55. **b.** Affordable
56. **a.** protect
57. **b.** as
58. **a.** in
59. **a.** pillars
60. **c.** take
61. **a.** Healthy
62. **b.** from
63. **a.** sustainable
64. **d.** support
65. **b.** vision
66. **c.** Comprehensive

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

67. **a.** illness / **c.** sickness
68. **a.** complete / **c.** thorough
69. **a.** drawback / **c.** disadvantage
70. **b.** support / **d.** foundation
71. **c.** renewable / **e.** maintainable
72. **b.** ignorance / **d.** oversight
73. **a.** comprehensive / **c.** overall
74. **b.** benefit / **d.** edge
75. **b.** limited / **d.** exclusive
76. **c.** aim / **e.** target
77. **a.** identification / **b.** discovery
78. **c.** unsustainable / **e.** temporary

Language Level 1

1. **b.** beautifully
2. **a.** fluently
3. **c.** fluently
4. **b.** quickly
5. **d.** delicious
6. **d.** bright
7. **b.** clearly
8. **a.** successful
9. **b.** carefully
10. **a.** hard
11. **b.** carefully
12. **c.** too
13. **a.** logical
14. **c.** angrily
15. **b.** heavily
16. **a.** delicious
17. **c.** hard
18. **a.** fluently
19. **d.** fluent
20. **b.** badly
21. **c.** hardly
22. **d.** adjective
23. **b.** fluently
24. **a.** an adjective
25. **a.** late
26. **b.** well

27. **d.** badly
28. **b.** environmentally
29. **c.** quite
30. **d.** happy
31. **d.** badly
32. **d.** adverb
33. **b.** completely
34. **a.** brilliantly
35. **b.** bored
36. **d.** stressed
37. **b.** successful
38. **d.** funny
39. **c.** highly

Language Level 2

40. **c.** well
41. **c.** absolutely
42. **b.** frightening - frightened
43. **d.** completely
44. **c.** terribly
45. **a.** terribly
46. **d.** extremely well
47. **b.** dramatically
48. **c.** slightly
49. **b.** loudly
50. **b.** active
51. **d.** extremely difficult
52. **a.** works hard
53. **a.** tried hard
54. **c.** extremely
55. **a.** totally
56. **d.** completely
57. **a.** carefully
58. **b.** a fatherly
59. **a.** satisfied
60. **d.** in a friendly way
61. **b.** looks better
62. **d.** personal

Language Level 3

63. **a.** I speak fluently English now.
64. **c.** study it easily
65. **b.** adverb of manner
66. **b.** extremely well-organized
67. **b.** He looked happy last week.
68. **a.** This soup smells badly.
69. **c.** surprisingly/ surprising
70. **c.** This juice smells badly.
71. **c.** nervously / nervous
72. **b.** seriously / serious
73. **c.** She bought an extremely expensive car.
74. **c.** Huda didn't use to speak English as fluently as she does now.

Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. She is always punctual.
2. My sister is fluent at French.
3. He does his homework slowly.
4. It frequently rains in this city.
5. We always go to the beach.
6. I was bored while watching the movie.
7. He speaks in a quiet way.
8. She usually cleans her room.
9. They rarely go to the movie theatre.
10. The teacher explained the lesson in a clear way.
11. He is skillful at playing the piano.
12. He drives carefully

Part 2 Key Vocabulary

1. **b.** sector
2. **c.** empowering
3. **d.** rote
4. **c.** enhance
5. **b.** illiteracy
6. **a.** prosperous
7. **a.** cornerstone
8. **b.** remarkable
9. **c.** congestion
10. **d.** solar
11. **c.** expansion
12. **a.** beneficial
13. **b.** visionary
14. **b.** curricula
15. **c.** enroll
16. **d.** vocational
17. **c.** knowledgeable
18. **b.** determination
19. **a.** human

Main Vocabulary

20. **a.** redesign
21. **c.** emphasizes
22. **c.** method
23. **d.** training
24. **a.** exist
25. **b.** responsibility
26. **a.** trends
27. **b.** expand
28. **c.** entire
29. **d.** reflect
30. **b.** impressive
31. **d.** sustainably
32. **a.** skillfully
33. **b.** notable
34. **b.** archaeological
35. **c.** priceless
36. **a.** reflect
37. **b.** glorious

38. **c.** heritage
39. **c.** leading
40. **c.** display

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

41. **b.** build
42. **a.** Curriculum
43. **a.** to
44. **b.** Enroll
45. **d.** make
46. **c.** Human capital
47. **d.** moving
48. **b.** with
49. **b.** create
50. **c.** save
51. **d.** Congestion
52. **a.** set
53. **c.** invest
54. **a.** to
55. **c.** prosperous
56. **b.** pass
57. **d.** Determination
58. **c.** on
59. **a.** reduce

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

60. **c.** radiant / **e.** promising
61. **a.** insignificant / **c.** trivial
62. **b.** extraordinary / **d.** impressive
63. **a.** unambitious / **c.** indifferent
64. **b.** extensive / **e.** massive
65. **b.** unremarkable / **d.** ordinary
66. **a.** assured / **d.** certain
67. **b.** remarkable / **c.** significant
68. **a.** productive / **c.** competent
69. **d.** poor / **e.** failing
70. **b.** unskilled / **d.** inexperienced
71. **d.** contemporary / **e.** advanced
72. **b.** talented / **d.** proficient
73. **a.** inefficient / **c.** ineffective
74. **c.** dim / **e.** gloomy
75. **c.** striking / **e.** magnificent
76. **a.** determined / **c.** aspiring
77. **c.** limited / **e.** minor

خاص بالطلاب المتقدمين

1. **b.** owing to
2. **d.** in spite of
3. **c.** Although
4. **a.** so
5. **b.** because
6. **a.** but
7. **c.** due to

top لاحظ ما يأتي بعد

1. **b.** playing
2. **a.** to pick
3. **d.** from being

Writing

1. **b.** A story to a friend
2. **a.** A hook
3. **b.** Introduce the main idea
4. **a.** Headings and paragraphs
5. **c.** Informal language
6. **b.** Summarize the main ideas
7. **d.** Inform, entertain, or persuade
8. **b.** Grabs the reader's attention
9. **a.** Headings
10. **c.** Give detailed ideas with examples
11. **a.** Friendly and personal
12. **b.** A call to action
13. **a.** help readers and search engines find the topic
14. **d.** tells a personal story
15. **c.** To organize ideas clearly
16. **a.** Connects personally with the reader
17. **b.** The clarity and engagement of ideas
18. **a.** Asking readers to do something like comment or share.

Translation

١. **أ.** يجب أن نحاول أن نحل عالمنا أفضل. إذا ساهم البشر في السيطرة على الاحتباس الحراري سيكون هذا العالم أكثر لطفاً ودرجات الحرارة التي نعانى منها حالياً سوف تنخفض.
٢. **أ.** يتفق معظم الناس أنه لا يوجد مكان مثل الوطن. فهو أكثر من كونه مكان للإقامة فيه، فهو جزء من حياة الفرد وشخصيته.
٣. **ب.** إنه لمن الواضح أن التطوع يجلب فوائد هامة للمتطوعين. ومع ذلك فإن أهم فائدة هي الآثار الإيجابية التي يحدثها التطوع في الصحة الذهنية للمتطوعين.
4. **d.** The individual's confidence in himself, his abilities, talents, potentials, and his inner belief in his mental, psychological and physical strengths bring him happiness.
5. **b.** Don't expect success without hardship, happiness without pain or winning without loss; it is life, take it or leave it, but to live it, you should understand it.
6. **b.** Cooperation and tolerance between individuals and peoples are absolutely necessary. Each of us needs the other and each of us is also different from the other.

Exercise on Comprehension

1. **b.** the situation astronaut have to face in the space.
2. **b.** a lot of astronauts face problems
3. **b.** learn how to cope with stress
4. **d.** circumstances
5. **b.** facilities
6. **c.** the different time
7. **a.** stimulates parts of the brain that make us feel alert
8. **a.** mental health

General Exercises (A)

1. **a.** shining / **d.** wealthy
2. **c.** unimpressive / **e.** ordinary
3. **a.** competitive
4. **b.** creativity
5. **c.** efficiently
6. **d.** artifacts
7. **a.** capital
8. **b.** adjective
9. **d.** badly
10. **b.** later
11. **a.** be careful
12. **b.** does she manage
13. **d.** Convince the reader to agree
14. **a.** using repeated, important words to highlight ideas

B Comprehension

1. **d.** planting without soil
2. **d.** fertilizer
3. **b.** poor
4. **b.** helping
5. **d.** less
6. **b.** covers
7. **c.** how
8. **a.** plants

Writing

- c.** We must rationalize our consumption of oil and rely on renewable energy sources in various fields, and this will reduce global warming, which leads to climate change that affects our lives.
- أ.** من المتوقع أن تساهم المبادرات الرئاسية، مثل مبادرة تكافل وكرامة وحياة كريمة، بشكل عظيم في تحسين نوعية حياة المصريين في كل مكان. وخاصة في المناطق الريفية.

1. Ali speaks fluently.
2. He speaks in a loud way.

Unit 4

Part 1 Key Vocabulary

1. **a.** track
2. **b.** intensity
3. **d.** Preparedness
4. **b.** damaging
5. **c.** Tectonic
6. **d.** weather
7. **a.** emergency
8. **c.** Drills
9. **d.** accuracy
10. **c.** drills
11. **a.** evacuations
12. **d.** intensity
13. **c.** preparedness
14. **b.** warning
15. **a.** humidity
16. **c.** preparation
17. **d.** documents
18. **a.** Track
19. **c.** Intensity
20. **b.** track
21. **a.** monitor
22. **d.** Meteorologists
23. **c.** perishable
24. **d.** Supplies
25. **c.** unpredictable
26. **a.** Documents
27. **b.** pose
28. **a.** non-perishable
29. **b.** remarkable
30. **b.** Accuracy
31. **c.** tectonic plates
32. **a.** Drills
33. **a.** waterproof
34. **b.** Preparedness
35. **b.** Pose
36. **a.** understanding
37. **b.** kit
38. **c.** Humidity
39. **d.** impressive
40. **d.** Tectonic Plates
41. **c.** Kit
42. **b.** Perishable

Main Vocabulary

43. **b.** artificial
44. **c.** progress
45. **d.** prepare
46. **b.** forecast
47. **a.** observe
48. **c.** occur
49. **c.** foretell
50. **d.** hinder
51. **a.** hindrance
52. **b.** defenses

53. **c.** store
54. **a.** unlike
55. **a.** clear
56. **d.** long-distance

**Expressions, Prepositions,
Derivatives & Language Notes**

57. **d.** predict
58. **a.** pose
59. **b.** issue
60. **d.** make
61. **c.** store
62. **d.** prepare
63. **b.** write
64. **d.** in advance
65. **b.** in particular
66. **c.** at least
67. **a.** Inaccurate
68. **c.** Accurately

**Expressions, Prepositions,
Derivatives & Language Notes**

69. **a.** exactness / **e.** precision
70. **a.** Strength / **b.** Power
71. **a.** Create / **c.** Present
72. **d.** Spoilable / **e.** Fragile
73. **a.** Enhance / **d.** Develop
74. **c.** Hindrance / **e.** Barrier
75. **c.** Unexpectedly / **d.** Instantly
76. **b.** Mildness / **e.** Weakness
77. **b.** Remove / **d.** Eliminate
78. **c.** Durable / **e.** Lasting
79. **c.** Foretell / **e.** Forecast
80. **b.** Awareness /
d. Comprehension

Language Level 1

1. **c.** strongest
2. **b.** stronger
3. **c.** most intelligent
4. **b.** heavier
5. **d.** the best
6. **b.** the most beautiful
7. **d.** easier
8. **c.** the highest
9. **a.** most advanced
10. **c.** more deadly
11. **b.** more predictable
12. **d.** most powerful
13. **c.** longest
14. **a.** the best
15. **b.** busier
16. **a.** comfortable
17. **c.** hottest
18. **b.** confusing
19. **a.** confused
20. **c.** taller
21. **d.** big
22. **c.** the best
23. **c.** the worst

24. **a.** more exciting
25. **d.** the nicest
26. **a.** fewer
27. **c.** latest
28. **c.** so cheap as
29. **d.** worse
30. **a.** age
31. **d.** ever

Language Level 2

32. **b.** as efficient as
33. **c.** colder
34. **d.** better
35. **b.** harder than
36. **c.** worse
37. **b.** the least
38. **d.** the highest
39. **b.** rarer than
40. **d.** quieter
41. **b.** most valuable
42. **a.** better than
43. **b.** the worst
44. **c.** easier
45. **b.** I'm taller than anyone in my family.
46. **b.** height
47. **b.** worse
48. **d.** most difficult
49. **c.** the farthest
50. **c.** nicer
51. **a.** One of the most beautiful places is Hawaii.

Language Level 3

52. **a.** younger
53. **c.** Ali
54. **d.** well
55. **c.** him
56. **d.** indoors
57. **c.** a higher
58. **a.** the most difficult
59. **c.** outdoor
60. **a.** wasn't as warm as
61. **b.** simpler
62. **a.** longer

**Rewrite the sentences using the
word(s) in brackets to give the
same meaning:**

1. No mountain is higher than Mount Fuji in Japan.
2. The phone I had before is not as expensive as this phone.
3. This movie is much worse than any film I have ever seen before.
4. The magazine is not as heavy as the book.
5. The village is much quieter than this city.
6. Yesterday's test wasn't as easy as today's.

7. Yesterday's lecture wasn't as interesting as today's.
8. No mountain is higher than Mount Everest.
9. Yesterday's weather wasn't as hot as today.

Part 2 Key Vocabulary

1. **a.** emergency
2. **b.** Drills
3. **b.** preparedness
4. **c.** evacuation
5. **d.** disaster
6. **b.** valuable
7. **d.** advance
8. **b.** trapped
9. **a.** powerful / **c.** trending
10. **a.** exploration
11. **d.** blocked
12. **c.** awareness
13. **a.** kits
14. **b.** strikes
15. **d.** emergency
16. **b.** destructive
17. **d.** issue
18. **c.** belongings
19. **a.** preparedness
20. **a.** neutral
21. **c.** response
22. **b.** belonging

Main Vocabulary

23. **d.** valuable
24. **c.** mistakes
25. **b.** floods
26. **b.** earthquake
27. **d.** storms
28. **a.** organized
29. **d.** unpredictable
30. **a.** landslide
31. **c.** headings
32. **b.** forecasts
33. **d.** Accurate
34. **a.** observation
35. **c.** warning
36. **a.** purpose
37. **d.** role
38. **d.** Productivity
39. **b.** effects
40. **c.** formal
41. **b.** challenge
42. **a.** pack
43. **c.** predict
44. **a.** planning
45. **b.** power
46. **d.** serious
47. **d.** response
48. **a.** Staying

**Expressions, Prepositions,
Derivatives & Language Notes**

49. **a.** hit
50. **b.** evacuate
51. **d.** face
52. **c.** trap
53. **c.** give
54. **b.** make
55. **b.** recommend
56. **a.** with
57. **b.** passed
58. **a.** Poor
59. **c.** examine
60. **a.** for
61. **c.** of
62. **a.** In
63. **c.** predict
64. **a.** from

**Choose the (Two) correct answers
out of the FIVE (5) options given.**

65. **b.** congested / **c.** jammed
66. **a.** get ready /
c. make arrangements
67. **a.** risky / **b.** dangerous
68. **a.** attack / **d.** hit
69. **b.** powerful / **e.** sturdy
70. **b.** technological / **c.** electronic
71. **b.** escape / **e.** withdraw
72. **a.** secure / **d.** protected
73. **b.** knowledge /
c. understanding
74. **a.** catastrophe / **d.** tragedy

Language Level 1

1. **b.** much
2. **c.** a bit
3. **a.** far
4. **d.** much
5. **a.** a little
6. **b.** much wider
7. **c.** little cheaper
8. **d.** biggest
9. **b.** much smarter
10. **c.** a bit taller
11. **d.** larger
12. **b.** much more
13. **c.** faster
14. **d.** best
15. **b.** far better
16. **d.** whiter
17. **d.** best
18. **c.** much more expensive
19. **c.** faster
20. **d.** most famous
21. **b.** most
22. **c.** less
23. **b.** the stronger
24. **a.** The harder

25. b. better

Language Level 2

26. **c.** the more
27. **b.** the farthest
28. **b.** The fewer
29. **c.** the fewer
30. **a.** more and more
31. **c.** fewer
32. **c.** tall
33. **d.** fitter
34. **d.** less heavy
35. **a.** me
36. **b.** further
37. **a.** less tall
38. **b.** more dangerous
39. **d.** hotter
40. **d.** less easy
41. **a.** further
42. **c.** fewer
43. **c.** best
44. **d.** most
45. **c.** ever seen
46. **c.** a faster
47. **a.** much
48. **d.** less
49. **c.** smaller
50. **b.** a friendly
51. **d.** most
52. **c.** mine
53. **d.** a & b

Language Level 3

54. **b.** less big
55. **b.** the most beautifully
56. **d.** less busy
57. **a.** I did
58. **c.** 3 times much more
59. **a.** most effectively
60. **d.** less
61. **b.** This place is farther than the
other one.

**Rewrite the sentences using the
word(s) in brackets to give the
same meaning:**

1. The village is less noisy than the city.
2. No device is as advanced as this smartphone.
3. The rival team is slightly weaker than our team.
4. All storms were much less destructive than the 2020 storm.
5. Fossil fuels are much less clean than solar energy.
6. My friend's house is slightly smaller than my house.
7. All earthquakes were much less destructive than the 2011 earthquake.

خاص بالطالاب المتفوقين

1. **a.** has
2. **d.** men has
3. **b.** Neither of
4. **c.** doubling
5. **a.** to double
6. **d.** a & c
7. **d.** make
8. **b.** taking

Writing

1. **b.** title
2. **b.** contractions
3. **d.** introduction
4. **b.** neutral and polite
5. **d.** thesis statement
6. **b.** more organized
7. **c.** casual
8. **c.** It is recommended that...
9. **b.** findings
10. **a.** future prediction
11. **d.** introduction
12. **b.** recommendations
13. **b.** give final thoughts
14. **c.** to/from
15. **b.** To make reading easier
16. **b.** add
17. **c.** contractions
18. **a.** introduction
19. **b.** formal structure and
language
20. **b.** title
21. **b.** contractions
22. **a.** casual
23. **b.** findings and evidence
24. **a.** facts and observations

Exercise on Comprehension

1. **c.** barren
2. **c.** vast areas of our fertile
lands have turned into barren
deserts
3. **d.** living creatures and the
environment
4. **b.** The deserts
5. **b.** his bad qualities
6. **b.** more food we have
7. **b.** Overpopulation and the
earth's troubles
8. **d.** All of the above

General Exercises (A)

1. **b.** Correctness / **e.** Precision
2. **b.** Fake / **d.** Artificial
3. **c.** accuracy
4. **d.** evacuations
5. **b.** intensity
6. **d.** preparedness

Unit 5

Part 1 Key Vocabulary

1. **a.** misinformation
2. **c.** distinguish
3. **b.** trigger
4. **d.** verifiably
5. **b.** sensational
6. **a.** Verification
7. **d.** misinformation
8. **b.** sensational
9. **c.** algorithms
10. **a.** regulations
11. **d.** misprint
12. **c.** removal
13. **b.** restriction
14. **d.** verify
15. **b.** deception
16. **d.** transparency
17. **b.** fake
18. **a.** censorship
19. **c.** literacy
20. **b.** regulate
21. **a.** misleading
22. **d.** mandatory

Main Vocabulary

23. **b.** spread
24. **a.** harmful
25. **d.** claim
26. **a.** consumers
27. **d.** characteristics
28. **c.** sources
29. **b.** rate
30. **d.** reliable
31. **a.** strategy
32. **c.** event
33. **a.** instructions
34. **d.** sign
35. **d.** compulsory
36. **b.** editor
37. **d.** advocates
38. **c.** highlighted
39. **c.** publication

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

40. **a.** cite
41. **d.** offer
42. **a.** make
43. **c.** follow
44. **c.** remove
45. **b.** make
46. **b.** solve
47. **a.** flag
48. **c.** reflect
49. **d.** with
50. **b.** algorithm

7. **c.** non-perishable
8. **c.** supplies
9. **c.** than
10. **b.** the most skillful
11. **b.** my hardest
12. **c.** The less
13. **a.** contrast
- 14.

B Comprehension

1. **a.** A common problem with a new solution
2. **a.** astonished
3. **a.** the success of the experience
4. **b.** criticised
5. **a.** unique
6. **d.** No, because most developing countries' people suffer from poverty.
7. **c.** He lent the poor people
8. **a.** Genius

Writing

d. Volunteers do not work for money, but to see the smile on the face of a sick or poor person.

ج. يعتبر النمو السكاني السريع مشكلة كبيرة تعيق المشاريع التنموية التي تنفذها الحكومة.

1. The old library is much louder than the new one.
2. My old car was slightly slower than the new one.

51. **a.** Misprints
52. **c.** guidelines
53. **c.** out
54. **b.** In

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

55. **a.** trigger / **d.** cause
56. **b.** trusted / **e.** safe
57. **a.** specialist / **d.** professional
58. **b.** title / **d.** heading
59. **b.** feeling / **d.** mood
60. **b.** clue / **d.** sign
61. **b.** special / **d.** rare
62. **a.** chaos / **b.** freedom
63. **b.** truth / **c.** honesty

Language Level 1

1. **b.** shouldn't
2. **d.** are they
3. **c.** haven't you
4. **d.** didn't she
5. **c.** don't you
6. **c.** isn't he
7. **d.** do they
8. **a.** am I
9. **a.** don't you
10. **a.** aren't they
11. **d.** won't I
12. **d.** hasn't it

Language Level 2

13. **a.** are there
14. **c.** does she
15. **c.** does
16. **c.** didn't
17. **b.** hadn't you
18. **d.** aren't they
19. **d.** wouldn't
20. **b.** can he
21. **a.** is
22. **d.** aren't they
23. **d.** doesn't
24. **c.** can he
25. **b.** wouldn't
26. **b.** do I
27. **a.** is she
28. **b.** hasn't he
29. **c.** don't they
30. **d.** 's come
31. **c.** wouldn't
32. **b.** was it
33. **d.** didn't they
34. **c.** wouldn't she
35. **d.** does she
36. **d.** does he
37. **c.** can they
38. **d.** have they
39. **c.** didn't it

40. **d.** can it
41. **b.** didn't she
42. **d.** a & c
43. **d.** is it
44. **a.** didn't they
45. **b.** had he

Language Level 3

46. **c.** aren't I
47. **d.** do they
48. **d.** does he
49. **c.** do you
50. **a.** is she
51. **a.** do they
52. **d.** do you
53. **c.** shall we
54. **a.** won't you
55. **c.** will he
56. **a.** is it
57. **c.** will you
58. **a.** shall we
59. **c.** did they
60. **b.** haven't had
61. **c.** won't you
62. **a.** is able to / isn't
63. **b.** hardly likes / does he
64. **d.** didn't she

Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. She is always early for work, isn't she:
2. They often watch TV, don't they:
3. You can't swim well, can you:
4. We aren't ready for the test, are we:
5. He was slow, wasn't he:
6. Sara won't come late, will she:
7. The office wasn't cleaned, was it:
8. She is there, isn't she:
9. You know the answer, don't you:
10. They are playing football now, aren't they:

Part 2 Key Vocabulary

1. **a.** subtle
2. **c.** urgency
3. **c.** manipulation
4. **d.** reflection
5. **b.** independent
6. **a.** technique
7. **d.** spark
8. **b.** loop
9. **c.** trending
10. **a.** tactic
11. **a.** exploration
12. **d.** unbelievable
13. **c.** influence

14. **b.** eye-catching
15. **d.** consume
16. **b.** exposure
17. **d.** verify
18. **c.** method
19. **b.** preferences
20. **a.** complex
21. **c.** emotional
22. **b.** belonging
23. **c.** curiosity

Main Vocabulary

24. **a.** thoughts
25. **b.** simplify
26. **d.** view
27. **d.** thoughts
28. **a.** potentially
29. **c.** mindful
30. **b.** viewpoint
31. **d.** critical
32. **a.** options
33. **c.** ordinary
34. **b.** protesters
35. **a.** channel
36. **d.** response
37. **d.** simplify
38. **b.** truth
39. **d.** override
40. **c.** feedback
41. **a.** attention
42. **c.** argument

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

43. **a.** highlight
44. **d.** override
45. **b.** make
46. **a.** demand
47. **c.** cause
48. **c.** give
49. **b.** make
50. **b.** either-or
51. **a.** viral
52. **c.** for
53. **a.** out
54. **c.** Over
55. **d.** loop
56. **b.** puppet master
57. **a.** Trending
58. **c.** Subtle
59. **c.** manipulation
60. **b.** tactic

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

61. **b.** use / **d.** spend
62. **b.** effect / **e.** impact
63. **a.** honesty / **c.** fairness
64. **a.** logical / **d.** rational
65. **b.** ignorance / **e.** carelessness

66. **b.** delay / **c.** slowness
67. **b.** free / **e.** self-reliant
68. **a.** origin / **d.** reference
69. **b.** interest / **c.** eagerness
70. **a.** hide / **d.** ignore
71. **a.** general / **b.** public
72. **a.** flash / **b.** start
73. **a.** strategy / **b.** plan

الجزء الثاني القواعد

1. **b.** doesn't she
2. **b.** are they
3. **a.** don't you
4. **d.** does he
5. **c.** isn't it
6. **c.** do we
7. **b.** aren't you
8. **d.** did they
9. **a.** doesn't he
10. **a.** have we
11. **a.** don't they
12. **c.** can't
13. **c.** are they
14. **a.** didn't they
15. **a.** can't you
16. **d.** will she
17. **c.** haven't we
18. **c.** isn't he
19. **b.** am I
20. **a.** have you
21. **b.** You watched the match, didn't you?
22. **a.** was it
23. **b.** You don't have a pen, do you?
24. **a.** You don't like chocolate, do you?
25. **c.** does
26. **a.** did
27. **a.** hasn't
28. **d.** aren't
29. **a.** will
30. **a.** isn't
31. **b.** aren't I
32. **a.** She likes coffee, doesn't she?
33. **a.** They aren't coming, are they?
34. **b.** He's never late, is he?

Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. He never plays tennis, does he:
2. You always like pizza, don't you:
3. He doesn't play football, does he:
4. She hasn't finished her homework, has she:
5. They weren't at school, were they:
6. She doesn't eat vegetables, does she:

خاص بالطالب المتفوقين

1. **c. stay**
2. **b. than**
3. **a. slept**
4. **d. had slept**
5. **d. rather**
6. **b. read**
7. **d. a & c**
8. **d. to watch**
9. **a. to**
10. **a. rather than**
11. **a. to watching**
12. **d. to go**
13. **d. rather than watch**
14. **d. a & b**
15. **a. to lie**
16. **b. lying**
17. **b. to be rewarded**
18. **a. being asked**
19. **d. a & c**
20. **a. has**
21. **d. was / They were**
22. **d. they**
23. **c. is**
24. **c. supports**

Writing

1. **a. the writer's personal view with reasons**
2. **a. persuade the reader**
3. **b. introduction**
4. **d. a question, fact that grabs attention**
5. **c. clearly show the writer's opinion**
6. **a. the conclusion / d. greetings to the reader**
7. **b. I think**
8. **a. That's why I strongly believe**
9. **c. To sum up**
10. **b. Secondly**
11. **a. That's why I strongly believe**
12. **b. another strong reason with examples**
13. **a. evidence and logical reasoning**
14. **d. state your viewpoint**
15. **c. general information about the topic**

Translation

١. ج. التعليم هو أساس التقدم والتنمية للشعوب ودول العالم سواء المتقدمة أو النامية وذلك لأنه يساعدنا في إعداد أجيال من المواطنين القادرين على إحداث التغيير.
٢. د. نتناول مصر تحسين وضعها الاقتصادي من خلال جذب الاستثمارات الأجنبية وبناء المشروعات الكبرى وبدأ هذا في إظهار التقدم.

٢. د. وسائل الإعلام لها تأثير كبير على عقول الناس في كل مكان. لهذا السبب يستخدمها المعلنون للترويج لمبيعاتهم وكسب المزيد من الأرباح.

4. **d. Practical experience has proven that science is a double-edged weapon, as it is a blessing if it is used for good, and a curse if it is used for evil and destruction.**
5. **c. The government is carrying out many giant national projects all over the country. These projects aim to provide job opportunities for citizens, increase local production, and eliminate unemployment.**
6. **d. We have to encourage our youth to go camping. It enables them to make use of their spare time in a useful way. It teaches them cooperation, discipline, and respect.**

Exercise on Comprehension

1. **d. people never trust liars even if they're telling the truth**
2. **c. breaking trust with the villagers**
3. **a. the boy had been truthful**
4. **b. a member of the same village**
5. **c. he couldn't protect the sheep from the wolf.**
6. **a. The little boy lost his sheep because of his lies.**
7. **b. shepherd**
8. **c. The boy who cried wolf! wolf!**

General Exercises (A)

1. **a. dishonesty / d. deception**
2. **a. challenge / b. obstacle**
3. **c. trick**
4. **a. practical**
5. **b. ordinary**
6. **a. microchips**
7. **b. spread**
8. **c. do they**
9. **c. doesn't he**
10. **b. should they**
11. **a. isn't it**
12. **b. mustn't she**
- 13.

B Comprehension

14. **a. The way they behave**
15. **b. negative personality traits**
16. **c. central personality traits**

17. **b. characteristics**
18. **b. traits**
19. **a. inherit**
20. **b. Central traits**
21. **a. positive**

Writing

أ. في الطريق للنجاح، لا تخشى التقدم ببطء، ولكن يجب أن تخشى الوقوف ثابتاً.

d. Egyptian scientists have achieved great successes all over the world. They will achieve more if they are given the due chance.

1. We shouldn't ignore the poor, should we?
2. I am always late, aren't I?

Unit 6

Part 1 Key Vocabulary

1. **b.** Soft
2. **d.** hard
3. **a.** teamwork
4. **b.** learned
5. **c.** interact
6. **d.** Time management
1. **b.** creative
2. **c.** vital
3. **d.** hard
4. **a.** cooperative
5. **c.** ambitious
6. **a.** resilient
7. **b.** creativity
8. **a.** expertise
9. **d.** soft
10. **d.** reliable
11. **b.** measurable
12. **c.** leadership
13. **c.** brilliant
14. **b.** essential
15. **d.** measure

Main Vocabulary

16. **c.** collaborate
17. **b.** specific
18. **a.** employer
19. **d.** performance
20. **c.** employee
21. **a.** certificate
22. **d.** organized
23. **b.** respectful
24. **c.** interact
25. **a.** flexible
26. **d.** smart
27. **b.** panic
28. **c.** adapt
29. **d.** land
30. **b.** smoothly
31. **a.** fix
32. **c.** prove
33. **a.** abilities
34. **c.** teamwork
35. **a.** handle
36. **c.** responsible
37. **b.** set
38. **a.** support
39. **c.** programmer
40. **b.** quality
41. **d.** long-term
42. **a.** advance
43. **c.** suffer
44. **d.** involve
45. **a.** resilient
46. **d.** leadership

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

47. **a.** make
48. **c.** to
49. **c.** go
50. **c.** in
51. **b.** get
52. **a.** write
53. **d.** hired
54. **b.** develop
55. **a.** to
56. **a.** with
57. **d.** for
58. **b.** career
59. **d.** employer
60. **c.** employee

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

61. **a.** stubborn / **e.** uncooperative
62. **a.** immeasurable / **d.** incalculable
63. **b.** observable / **e.** quantifiable
64. **c.** intelligent / **d.** remarkable
65. **d.** innovative / **e.** imaginative
66. **a.** vital / **b.** necessary
67. **a.** unreliable / **d.** irresponsible
68. **a.** motivated / **c.** aspiring
69. **a.** short-term / **b.** temporary
70. **a.** dull / **d.** ordinary
71. **b.** conventional / **c.** predictable

Language Level 1

1. **d.** who
2. **c.** which
3. **b.** which
4. **a.** whose
5. **d.** which
6. **b.** who
7. **c.** which
8. **d.** who
9. **a.** whose
10. **b.** whose
11. **c.** who
12. **d.** whose
13. **b.** who
14. **c.** which
15. **d.** whose
16. **c.** which
17. **a.** where
18. **d.** whose
19. **c.** whose
20. **d.** when
21. **d.** which
22. **a.** whose
23. **d.** that
24. **b.** which
25. **a.** whose
26. **d.** which

Language Level 2

27. **b.** who
28. **c.** whose
29. **a.** where
30. **b.** he bought
31. **d.** whom
32. **c.** whose
33. **a.** who
34. **a.** which
35. **d.** from whom
36. **b.** whose
37. **d.** in which
38. **c.** which
39. **a.** which
40. **c.** whom
41. **d.** what
42. **b.** who's
43. **c.** who've
44. **b.** what
45. **a.** that
46. **c.** in which
47. **d.** by which
48. **b.** with whom
49. **d.** whom
50. **a.** on
51. **b.** a famous man
52. **d.** to which

Language Level 3

53. **d.** written
54. **a.** served
55. **c.** after that
56. **d.** to which
57. **c.** which
58. **d.** on whose
59. **a.** what
60. **d.** which
61. **c.** no relative pronoun
62. **c.** a & b
63. **d.** overlooking
64. **c.** whose
65. **d.** I bought
66. **b.** on which
67. **d.** in whose
68. **a.** whose
69. **b.** with
70. **d.** what
71. **a.** where I learn
72. **b.** no word
73. **c.** which
74. **c.** living
75. **b.** joining
76. **d.** from whom
77. **d.** who's
78. **d.** who plays
79. **a.** respecting
80. **c.** written
81. **d.** where

82. **d.** whom the car hit
83. **c.** in whose
84. **a.** no word
85. **a.** who's
86. **c.** with whom
87. **c.** I like the child who's eyes are blue.
88. **b.** written
89. **d.** for that
90. **c.** born
91. **c.** with
92. **b.** shown
93. **d.** sent
94. **b.** attacked
95. **d.** sold
96. **c.** in whose
97. **a.** The students who passed the exam celebrated.
98. **c.** The movie, which was directed by Spielberg, won an Oscar.

Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. The movie which lasted three hours was boring.
2. My laptop which is very old still works well.
3. The book that I read twice was very interesting.
4. The students, who were very noisy, were in my class.
5. I met a girl who can speak five languages.
6. The car which was parked outside my house is very expensive.
7. This is the man whose son won the gold medal.
8. The hotel that is near the beach, we stayed I last summer.
9. The teacher, whom all the students respect, is very kind.
10. The picture which is very old, hangs on the wall.
11. The boy, who answered all the questions, is very clever.
12. I know the woman whose husband is a famous doctor.
13. The story that Ahmed told me, was very funny.
14. The man, whom you saw yesterday, is my uncle.

Pat 2 Key Vocabulary

1. **b.** join a debate
2. **b.** step out of your comfort zone
3. **c.** adjust
4. **b.** teamwork
5. **c.** experience
6. **b.** compromise
7. **c.** long-term

8. **a.** debate
9. **b.** get her foot in the door
10. **c.** meet others halfway
11. **b.** think quickly
12. **c.** start at the beginning
13. **b.** reached a compromise
14. **d.** adjust
15. **d.** handle tasks efficiently
16. **a.** took a risk to try something new
17. **b.** plan for lasting success

Main Vocabulary

18. **b.** effort
19. **a.** practice
20. **d.** vivid
21. **c.** design
22. **b.** coding
23. **c.** pressure
24. **a.** valuable
25. **d.** overview
26. **b.** interview
27. **c.** understanding
28. **a.** bright
29. **b.** member
30. **a.** concession
31. **d.** nap
32. **c.** wrap
33. **b.** podium
34. **a.** imagery
35. **b.** tough
36. **d.** boastful
37. **a.** figurative
38. **c.** aspect
39. **b.** simile
40. **a.** striking
41. **a.** metaphor
42. **d.** impression
43. **a.** mood

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

44. **c.** build
45. **d.** do
46. **b.** take
47. **c.** grab
48. **d.** enrich
49. **d.** make
50. **b.** to
51. **b.** In
52. **a.** step out of
53. **c.** on
54. **a.** open

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

55. **a.** adapt / **c.** modify
56. **c.** preserve / **e.** resist
57. **c.** discussion / **d.** argument
58. **d.** agreement / **e.** harmony

59. **a.** enduring / **b.** lasting
60. **a.** temporary / **d.** short-term
61. **a.** agreement / **e.** settlement
62. **a.** conflict / **c.** inflexibility
63. **a.** precious / **b.** priceless

Skills

1. **b.** describes
2. **a.** The room was silent, but the air buzzed with tension.
3. **b.** an image
4. **a.** body
5. **b.** an attention grabber
6. **d.** feelings
7. **c.** one aspect
8. **a.** adjectives
9. **d.** similes and metaphors
10. **b.** summarize the feeling
11. **b.** To hint at the main feeling you want to convey / **c.** To tell an unrelated story

Translation

١. ج. يمر الإنسان خلال حياته بالعديد من المواقف المختلفة. وهذه المواقف تمنحه خبرة في كيفية التعامل مع الحياة والناس.
٢. ز. يعتقد البعض أن زيادة الاتصال التجاري والثقافي بين الدول أمر إيجابي ويعتقد البعض الآخر أنه يؤدي إلى اختفاء الهوية الوطنية.
٣. ل. هناك زيادة في عدد الناس الذين يتركون الريف ويتطلعون إلى العيش بالمدن بالرغم من المشاكل التي تواجه المجتمعات هناك.

4. **a.** Sport is no longer just a means to enjoy time, but it also teaches us great lessons and reinforces noble values inside us all.
5. **a.** The environment is affected by human activity. For this reason man is the most important element in preserving or destroying the environment.
6. **c.** Reading is not just a pastime, but a way to understand the world in which we live. Through reading, we acquire skills that help us solve everyday life problems.

General Exercises (A)

1. **b.** unnecessary / **c.** trivial
2. **c.** helpful / **e.** collaborative
3. **b.** Ambitious
4. **b.** unemployment
5. **c.** employee
6. **a.** career
7. **d.** works
8. **a.** driving

9. c. ,which lies on the Nile,
10. c. he works for
11. d. in which
12. c. had planned
13. a. one subject in detail
14. c. a lasting image

B Comprehension

1. d. planting without soil
2. d. fertilizer
3. b. poor
4. b. helping
5. d. less
6. a. protects
7. c. how
8. a. plants

Writing

أ. لقد فازت مصر ببطولة أبطال إفريقيا أكثر من أي دولة أخرى، سبع مرات، منهم ٣ مرات على التوالي.
a. The internet and social networking sites are the fastest growing communication system in human history.

Chapter 1

Giants Questions

Answer the following Questions

1. Why do you think Mr. Fogg values punctuality and order so much?

لماذا تعتقد أن السيد فوج يقدر الدقة في المواعيد والنظام بشدة؟
Because it gives him control over his life and makes him feel secure.
لأن ذلك يمنحه السيطرة على حياته ويجعله يشعر بالأمان.

2. How might Passepartout's adventurous past cause problems in his new job?

كيف يمكن لماضي باسبارتو المغامر أن يسبب له مشاكل في وظيفته الجديدة؟

He might find Mr. Fogg's strict and boring routine hard to follow.

قد يجد صعوبة في التعايش مع روتين السيد فوج الصارم والممل.

3. What does the description of Mr. Fogg's house reveal about his personality?

ماذا يكشف وصف منزل السيد فوج عن شخصيته؟
It shows he is simple, disciplined, and dislikes unnecessary things.

يظهر أنه شخص بسيط ومنضبط ولا يحب الأشياء غير الضرورية.

4. Why do you think Mr. Fogg didn't get angry when his servant left?

لماذا تعتقد أن السيد فوج لم يغضب عندما غادر خادمه؟
Because he stays calm and logical even in unexpected situations.
لأنه يبقى هادئاً وعقلانياً حتى في المواقف غير المتوقعة.

5. What could be the reason Passepartout believes this job will be "restful"?

ما السبب الذي جعل باسبارتو يعتقد أن هذه الوظيفة ستكون هادئة؟

He thinks Mr. Fogg's calm life means no more danger or surprises.

لأنه يظن أن حياة السيد فوج الهادئة تعني عدم وجود مخاطر أو مفاجآت.

6. How do the Reform Club's atmosphere and members reflect Mr. Fogg's character?

كيف يعكس جو نادي الإصلاح وأعضاؤه شخصية السيد فوج؟

The calm and serious environment matches his disciplined and precise nature.

الجو الهادئ والجاد يتناسب مع طبيعته المنضبطة والدقيقة.

7. What might happen if Passepartout cannot adapt to Fogg's routine?

ماذا قد يحدث إذا لم يتمكن باسبارتو من التكيف مع روتين فوج؟

He may quit the job or make mistakes that upset Mr. Fogg.

قد يترك الوظيفة أو يرتكب أخطاء تزعج السيد فوج.

8. Why do you think Fogg keeps his life so private and secretive?

لماذا تعتقد أن فوج يحافظ على حياته خاصة وسرية جداً؟
Because he dislikes gossip and prefers peace over social drama.

لأنه لا يحب القيل والقال ويفضل الهدوء على المشاكل الاجتماعية.

9. What lesson can we learn from Mr. Fogg's calm reaction to problems?

ما الدرس الذي يمكن أن نتعلمه من رد فعل فوج الهادئ تجاه المشكلات؟

Staying calm helps us solve problems wisely and avoid mistakes.

البقاء هادئاً يساعدنا على حل المشكلات بحكمة وتجنب الأخطاء.

10. How does the last sentence create suspense for the reader?

كيف تخلق الجملة الأخيرة تشويقاً للقارئ؟
It hints that big adventures are coming, making the reader curious.

تشير إلى أن مغامرات كبيرة قادمة، مما يثير فضول القارئ.

11. Describe Mr. Fogg's daily routine in your own words.

صف روتين السيد فوج اليومي بكلماتك الخاصة.
He wakes up, leaves home at the same time, eats and reads on schedule, and goes to the Reform Club daily.

يستيقظ، يغادر المنزل في نفس الوقت، يتناول الطعام ويقرأ وفق جدول محدد، ويذهب يومياً إلى نادي الإصلاح.

12. What kind of job did Passepartout want and why?

ما نوع الوظيفة التي أرادها باسبارتو؟ ولماذا؟
He wanted a calm, steady job because he was tired of adventure.

كان يريد وظيفة هادئة ومستقرة لأنه تعب من المغامرات.

13. How did Passepartout feel when he first saw Mr. Fogg's house?

كيف شعر باسبارتو عندما رأى منزل السيد فوج لأول مرة؟
He thought it was peaceful and perfectly organized.

ظن أنه مكان هادئ ومنظم للغاية.

14. What does Passepartout notice about the clocks in the house?

ماذا لاحظ باسبارتو عن الساعات في المنزل؟
There were clocks in every room, all ticking in harmony.

كانت هناك ساعات في كل غرفة، وكلها تدق بتناغم.

15. Why did Mr. Fogg need a new valet?

لماذا احتاج السيد فوج إلى خادم جديد؟
Because his old servant left suddenly.

لأن خادمه القديم غادر فجأة.

16. Describe the Reform Club.

صف نادي الإصلاح.

It was a quiet, elegant place with rich men reading, playing games, and discussing ideas.

كان مكاناً هادئاً وأنيقاً، يجتمع فيه رجال أغنياء للقراءة ولعب الألعاب ومناقشة الأفكار.

17. Why did Passepartout leave Paris?

لماذا غادر باسبارتو باريس؟

Because he wanted peace and a regular life.

لأنه أراد حياة هادئة ومنظمة.

18. How is Mr. Fogg different from other men in London?

كيف يختلف السيد فوج عن باقي الرجال في لندن؟

He lives alone, has strict habits, and never changes his routine.

يعيش بمفرده، وله عادات صارمة، ولا يغير روتينه أبداً.

19. What are some jobs Passepartout had before working for Mr. Fogg?

ما بعض الوظائف التي عمل بها باسبارتو قبل أن يعمل مع السيد فوج؟

He was a singer, acrobat, firefighter, and circus performer.

كان مغنياً، وللاعب بهلوان، ورجل إطفاء، وفنان سيرك.

20. What do you predict will happen to Passepartout in the coming days?

ماذا تتوقع أن يحدث لباسبارتو في الأيام القادمة؟

He will face unexpected adventures and travel far from London.

سيواجه مغامرات غير متوقعة ويسافر بعيداً عن لندن.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. **b. London**
2. **d. Savile Row**
3. **b. habits and punctuality**
4. **d. strange and cold**
5. **b. Reform Club**
6. **c. whist**
7. **b. very little but clearly**
8. **a. disappeared suddenly**
9. **c. Passepartout**
10. **c. 30**
11. **b. professions**
12. **d. tailor**
13. **c. peace and regularity**
14. **a. never change**
15. **b. elegant but plain**
16. **c. plain but polished**
17. **c. decorations**
18. **b. clocks**

Chapter 2

Giants Questions Part G – Critical Thinking Questions (تفكير نقدي)

1. Why do you think Mr. Fogg was so calm when everyone else was shocked by the bank robbery?

لماذا تعتقد أن السيد فوج كان هادئاً جداً بينما كان الآخرون مصدومين بسبب سرقة البنك؟

Because he focuses only on facts, not emotions.

لأنه يركز على الحقائق فقط، وليس على المشاعر.

2. What does Fogg's precise timetable reveal about his personality?

ماذا يكشف الجدول الزمني الدقيق لفوج عن شخصيته؟

He is organized, logical, and confident.

إنه منظم، منطقي، وواثق بنفسه.

3. Why was Stuart so sure the journey was impossible?

لماذا كان ستوارت متأكداً أن الرحلة مستحيلة؟

Because he believed accidents and delays would ruin the plan.

لأنه كان يعتقد أن الحوادث والتأخيرات ستفسد الخطة.

4. Why might Fogg refuse to plan for accidents during his journey?

لماذا قد يرفض فوج التخطيط لأي حوادث أثناء رحلته؟

He trusts order and schedules completely.

لأنه يثق بالنظام والجدول الزمني تماماً.

5. What risk does Fogg take by betting twenty thousand pounds?

ما الخطر الذي يواجهه فوج عند المراهنة بعشرين ألف جنيه؟

He could lose a huge amount of money and his reputation.

قد يخسر مبلغاً ضخماً وسمعته.

6. Why do the other men agree to the bet even though they doubt Fogg?

لماذا وافق الرجال الآخرون على الرهان رغم أنهم يشكون في فوج؟

They were curious to see if he could really do it.

لأنهم كانوا فضوليين لمعرفة إذا كان سينجح حقاً.

7. How does the opening of the Suez Canal affect global travel in this story?

كيف يؤثر افتتاح قناة السويس على السفر العالمي في هذه القصة؟

It makes travel faster and more direct between Europe and Asia.

يجعل السفر أسرع وأكثر مباشرة بين أوروبا وآسيا.

8. What does Fogg's decision to leave immediately show about his character?

ماذا يظهر قرار فوج بالانطلاق فوراً عن شخصيته؟

He is decisive and confident in his plan.

إنه حاسم وواثق في خطته.

9. Why do you think the other men find Fogg mysterious?

لماذا يعتقد الرجال الآخرون أن فوج شخصية غامضة؟

Because he stays calm and never reveals his feelings.

لأنه يبقى هادئاً ولا يكشف عن مشاعره أبداً.

10. What lesson can we learn from Fogg's bold challenge?

ما الدرس الذي يمكننا أن نتعلمه من تحدي فوج الجريء؟

Believe in your abilities and take calculated risks.

أمن بقدراتك وخذ المخاطر بحساب.

11. How much money was stolen from the Bank of England?

كم كان المبلغ الذي سرق من بنك إنجلترا؟

Fifty-five thousand pounds.

خمسة وخمسون ألف جنيه.

12. What two main topics were the gentlemen discussing at the Reform Club?

ما الموضوعان الرئيسيان اللذان كان السادة يناقشونهما في نادي الإصلاح؟

The bank robbery and modern travel.

سرقة البنك والسفر الحديث.

13. Who suggested that the world could be traveled in eighty days?

من اقترح إمكانية السفر حول العالم في ثمانين يوماً؟

Andrew Stuart.

أندرو ستوارت.

14. What tool did Fogg use to explain his travel plan?

ما الأداة التي استخدمها فوج لشرح خطته للسفر؟

A small notebook with a timetable.

دفتر صغير يحتوي على جدول زمني.

15. List two parts of Fogg's journey timetable.

اذكر جزأين من جدول رحلة فوج.

London to Suez – 7 days, Suez to Bombay – 13 days.

لندن إلى السويس – ٧ أيام، السويس إلى بومباي – ١٣ يوماً.

16. What did Stuart say Fogg forgot to consider?

ماذا قال ستوارت أن فوج نسي أن يأخذه في الاعتبار؟

Storms, delays, and accidents.

العواصف والتأخيرات والحوادث.

17. What was the amount of the bet between Fogg and the men?

كم كان مبلغ الرهان بين فوج والرجال؟

Twenty thousand pounds.

عشرون ألف جنيه.

18. When exactly did Fogg plan to leave London?

متى خطط فوج لمغادرة لندن بالضبط؟

On October 2nd at 8:45 in the evening.

في الثاني من أكتوبر الساعة ٨:٤٥ مساءً.

19. When was Fogg supposed to return to the Reform Club?

متى كان من المفترض أن يعود فوج إلى نادي الإصلاح؟

On December 21st at the same hour.
في الحادي والعشرين من ديسمبر في نفس الساعة.

20. Why were the men shocked after hearing Fogg's plan?
لماذا صدم الرجال بعد سماع خطة فوج؟

Because the idea seemed crazy and impossible.
لأن الفكرة بدت جنونية ومستحيلة.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. **b. Pall Mall**
2. **d. respectability and reason**
3. **a. bankers, engineers, scientists**
4. **b. £55,000**
5. **c. shock**
6. **b. identity**
7. **a. modern travel**
8. **c. Suez Canal**
9. **b. whist**
10. **d. mysterious**
11. **a. larger**
12. **c. 80 days or less**
13. **b. possible**
14. **a. timetable notebook**
15. **b. delays and accidents**
16. **a. delays**
17. **c. imaginary delays**
18. **b. challenge**
19. **d. madness**
20. **a. October 2nd at 8:45 p.m.**
21. **b. disbelief**

Chapter 3

Giants Questions

Part G – Critical Thinking Questions (تفكير نقدي)

1. Why do you think Mr. Fogg told Passepartout about the journey at the last minute?
لماذا تعتقد أن السيد فوج أخبر باسبارتو عن الرحلة في اللحظة الأخيرة؟

To prevent arguments or delays.
لتجنب الجدل أو التأخير.

2. How does Passepartout's reaction to the trip show his personality?
كيف يظهر رد فعل باسبارتو على الرحلة شخصيته؟

He is emotional and easily shocked.
إنه عاطفي وسريع الدهشة.

3. Why might Detective Fix suspect Mr. Fogg without solid proof?
لماذا قد يشتبه المفتش فيكس في السيد فوج دون دليل قوي؟

Fogg's sudden departure with money seems suspicious.
مغادرة فوج المفاجئة ومعه المال تبدو مريبة.

4. What does Fogg's behavior on the ship reveal about him?
ماذا يكشف سلوك فوج على السفينة عنه؟

He stays calm and follows routine anywhere.
يبقى هادئاً ويتبع روتينه في أي مكان.

5. Why do you think Passepartout admires Fogg's calmness despite finding it strange?
لماذا تعتقد أن باسبارتو يعجب بهدوء فوج رغم أنه يجده غريباً؟

Because calmness gives strength and confidence.
لأن الهدوء يمنح القوة والثقة.

6. How might Fix's presence on the ship affect Fogg's journey later?
كيف يمكن لوجود فيكس على السفينة أن يؤثر على رحلة فوج لاحقاً؟

He could cause trouble or delays by trying to arrest Fogg.
قد يسبب مشاكل أو تأخيراً بمحاولة القبض على فوج.

7. Why does Passepartout enjoy watching the passengers while Fogg ignores them?
لماذا يستمتع باسبارتو بمراقبة الركاب بينما يتجاهلهم فوج؟

Passepartout is curious, but Fogg only cares about time.
لأن باسبارتو فضولي، بينما يهتم فوج فقط بالوقت.

8. What does the description of the Mediterranean port symbolize for Passepartout?
ماذا يرمز وصف ميناء البحر المتوسط بالنسبة لباسبارتو؟

A new world full of mystery and adventure.
عالم جديد مليء بالغموض والمغامرة.

9. Why is Fix worried about the slow telegram?
لماذا يقلق فيكس بشأن بطء البرقية؟

Because Fogg might escape before the warrant arrives.
لأن فوج قد يهرب قبل وصول أمر القبض.

10. What lesson can we learn from the contrast between Fogg and Passepartout?
ما الدرس الذي يمكننا تعلمه من التباين بين فوج وباسبارتو؟

People can face the same journey differently—calm or excited.
يمكن أن يواجه الناس نفس الرحلة بأسلوب مختلف: هادئاً أو حماساً.

11. What items did Fogg ask Passepartout to pack?
ما الأشياء التي طلب فوج من باسبارتو أن يحزمها؟

Two shirts, three pairs of stockings, a woolen coat, a rug, and banknotes.
قميصان، ثلاث جوارب، معطف صوفي، بطانية، ونقود ورقية.

12. How did Passepartout feel when he first heard about the world trip?
كيف شعر باسبارتو عندما سمع لأول مرة عن رحلة حول العالم؟

He was shocked and scared.
شعر بالصدمة والخوف.

13. Describe the scene at Charing Cross Station.
صف المشهد في محطة تشارينغ كروس.

Busy with shouting porters, whistles, and rushing passengers.
مزدهم بجمالين يصرخون، وصفارات، وركاب يسرعون.

14. What was Detective Fix's first impression of Fogg?
ما كان الانطباع الأول للمفتش فيكس عن فوج؟

He looked like the bank thief.
بدا وكأنه لص البنك.

15. How did Passepartout react to the train journey through France?
كيف كان رد فعل باسبارتو تجاه رحلة القطار عبر فرنسا؟

He was amazed and curious about everything.
كان مندهشاً وفضولياً تجاه كل شيء.

16. Describe the steamship Mongolia.
"فالبخرة مونغوليا".

A large black ship with brass rails and a tall smokestack.
سفينة كبيرة سوداء ذات قضبان نحاسية ومدخنة طويلة.

17. What kinds of people were on the Mongolia?
ما أنواع الأشخاص الذين كانوا على متن مونغوليا؟

Merchants, officers, officials, and travelers from many nations.
تجار، ضباط، مسؤولون، ومسافرون من جنسيات متعددة.

18. What made Passepartout seasick at first?
ما الذي جعل باسبارتو يشعر بدوار البحر في البداية؟

The rocking movement of the ship.
حركة السفينة المتمايلة.

19. How did Mr. Fogg spend his time on the ship?
كيف قضى السيد فوج وقته على متن السفينة؟

Following a strict schedule: reading, walking, and playing whist.
باتباع جدول صارم: القراءة، المشي، ولعب الورق.

20. What action did Fix take in Brindisi, and why?
ما الإجراء الذي اتخذته فيكس في برينديسي؟ ولماذا؟

He sent a telegram to London to get an arrest warrant.
أرسل برقية إلى لندن للحصول على أمر قبض.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. **b. leaving for Dover**
2. **d. carpetbag with clothes and money**
3. **a. calm and quiet**
4. **b. 8:45 p.m.**
5. **d. Paddington**
6. **a. Big Ben**
7. **c. Detective Fix**
8. **b. Bank of England**
9. **b. escaping with stolen money**
10. **c. a great adventure**
11. **d. French countryside**
12. **b. grapes and wheat**
13. **a. timetable**
14. **b. France**
15. **a. Mongolia steamship**
16. **b. Mediterranean Sea**
17. **d. white**
18. **a. fresh air and stars**

Chapter 4

Giants Questions

Part G – Critical Thinking Questions (تفكير نقدي)

- Why do you think Mr. Fogg didn't show excitement when he saw Egypt for the first time?
لماذا تعتقد أن السيد فوج لم يظهر الحماس عندما رأى مصر لأول مرة؟
Because he was focused on his schedule and not on sightseeing.
لأنه كان مركزاً على جدول رحلته وليس على مشاهدة المعالم.
- What can we learn about Passepartout's personality from his reaction to Egypt?
ماذا يمكن أن نتعلم عن شخصية باسبارتو من ردة فعله تجاه مصر؟
He is curious and easily amazed by new places.
هو شخص فضولي ويندهش بسهولة من الأماكن الجديدة.
- Why did Detective Fix suspect Fogg so strongly, even without clear evidence?
لماذا اشتبه المحقق فيكس بالسيد فوج بشدة، حتى بدون دليل واضح؟
Because Fogg was calm, mysterious, and traveling quickly after the robbery.
لأن فوج كان هادئاً وغامضاً ويسافر بسرعة بعد حادثة السرقة.
- How does the contrast between Fogg and Passepartout make the story more interesting?
كيف يجعل التباين بين فوج وباسبارتو القصة أكثر إثارة؟
It shows two different ways of seeing the world: discipline vs. wonder.
لأنه يظهر طريقتين مختلفتين لرؤية العالم: الانضباط مقابل الدهشة.
- What problem might arise if the arrest warrant doesn't arrive in time?
ما المشكلة التي قد تحدث إذا لم يصل أمر القبض في الوقت المناسب؟
Fix won't be able to stop Fogg before he travels further.
لن يتمكن فيكس من إيقاف فوج قبل أن يواصل السفر.
- Why is time so important to Mr. Fogg's journey?
لماذا يعتبر الوقت مهماً جداً لرحلة السيد فوج؟
Because he made a challenge to travel around the world in a set time.
لأنه قام بتحدٍ للسفر حول العالم خلال وقت محدد.
- What does Passepartout's excitement about Cairo tell us about his values?
ماذا تخبرنا حماسة باسبارتو تجاه القاهرة عن قيمه؟

- He values experiences and adventure more than schedules.
هو يقدر التجارب والمغامرات أكثر من الالتزام بالمواعيد.
- Why did Fix try to be friendly with Passepartout?
لماذا حاول فيكس أن يكون ودوداً مع باسبارتو؟
To gain his trust and get information about Fogg.
لكسب ثقته والحصول على معلومات عن فوج.
 - If you were Passepartout, would you trust Fix? Why or why not?
إذا كنت مكان باسبارتو، هل كنت ستثق في فيكس؟ ولماذا؟
No, because Fix's behavior seems suspicious.
لا، لأن تصرفات فيكس تبدو مريبة.
 - What lesson can readers learn from Fogg's focus and determination?
ما الدرس الذي يمكن أن يتعلمه القراء من تركيز فوج وإصراره؟
That discipline and planning help achieve big goals.
أن الانضباط والتخطيط يساعدان في تحقيق الأهداف الكبيرة.
 - Describe Passepartout's first impressions of Egypt.
صف الانطباع الأول لباسبارتو عن مصر.
He was amazed by the sights, such as camels, domes, and narrow streets.
كان مندهشاً من المشاهد مثل الجمال والقباب والشوارع الضيقة.
 - How did Fogg and Passepartout's reactions to Cairo differ?
كيف اختلفت ردود أفعال فوج وباسبارتو تجاه القاهرة؟
Passepartout was excited and curious, while Fogg stayed calm and focused on time.
كان باسبارتو متحمساً وفضولياً، بينما ظل فوج هادئاً ومركزاً على الوقت.
 - Explain why Fix followed Fogg secretly.
اشرح لماذا تبع فيكس فوج سراً.
Because he believed Fogg was the bank robber.
لأنه كان يعتقد أن فوج هو السارق للبنك.
 - What do the train and desert symbolize in the story?
ماذا يرمز القطار والصحراء في القصة؟
The train symbolizes progress, and the desert represents timeless history.
القطار يرمز للتقدم، والصحراء تمثل التاريخ الخالد.
 - Describe what Passepartout saw from the train window.
صف ما رآه باسبارتو من نافذة القطار.
Bedouins on horseback and a caravan of camels carrying goods.
بدو على ظهور الخيل وقافلة من الجمال المحملة بالبضائع.
 - Why did Passepartout wish for more time in Cairo?
لماذا تمنى باسبارتو أن يقضي وقتاً أطول في القاهرة؟
Because he wanted to explore and enjoy the city's wonders.

لأنه أراد استكشاف المدينة والاستمتاع بعجائبها.

- What challenge did Fogg face when traveling through Egypt?
ما التحدي الذي واجهه فوج أثناء السفر عبر مصر؟
Staying on schedule despite the long journey and Fix's plans to delay him.
البقاء ملتزماً بالجدول رغم طول الرحلة ومحاولات فيكس لتأخيرها.
 - How did Passepartout feel when leaving Cairo?
كيف شعر باسبارتو عند مغادرة القاهرة؟
He felt sad to leave but excited for the journey ahead.
شعر بالحزن لأنه سيغادر، لكنه كان متحمساً للرحلة القادمة.
 - What do we learn about Fix's character from his actions?
ماذا نتعلم عن شخصية فيكس من أفعاله؟
He is determined and clever but also willing to deceive others.
هو شخص مصر وذكي، لكنه مستعد لخداع الآخرين.
 - Describe how Cairo was portrayed in the story.
صف كيف تم تصوير القاهرة في القصة.
As a lively city with markets, spices, camels, and a magical atmosphere.
كمدينة نابضة بالحياة بأسواقها وتوابلها وجمالها وجوها السحري.
- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**
- c. Arabian
 - b. dream he never imagined
 - d. line in his timetable
 - b. timetable
 - d. all of the above
 - c. 3
 - b. eye
 - a. bank thief
 - b. telegram
 - a. France, Italy, and the Mediterranean
 - b. escape justice
 - d. desert
 - a. Bedouins and camels
 - d. timetable and guidebook
 - a. tired
 - b. arrive on time
 - d. all of the above
 - c. train tickets
 - b. crowded streets
 - a. suspicion
 - d. hurry
 - c. honor

Chapter 5

Giants Questions

Part G – Critical Thinking Questions (تفكير نقدي):

1. Why does Mr. Fogg treat the journey like a timetable instead of an adventure?

لماذا يتعامل السيد فوج مع الرحلة كجدول مواعيد وليس كمغامرة؟

Because his main goal is to win the challenge by finishing on time. لأن هدفه الرئيسي هو الفوز بالتحدي من خلال إنجازه في الوقت المحدد.

2. How does Passepartout's view of the journey differ from Fogg's?

كيف تختلف نظرة باسبارتو للرحلة عن نظرة فوج؟
Passepartout sees it as an exciting adventure, while Fogg sees it as a task to complete.

باسبارتو يراها مغامرة مثيرة، بينما فوج يراها مهمة يجب إتمامها.

3. Why is Detective Fix so frustrated during the journey?

لماذا يشعر المحقق فيكس بالإحباط أثناء الرحلة؟
Because the arrest warrant still hasn't arrived, and Fogg keeps moving forward.

لأن أمر القبض لم يصل بعد، وفوج يواصل التقدم.

4. What does Passepartout's mistake in the Hindu temple teach about travel?

ماذا يعلمنا خطأ باسبارتو في المعبد الهندوسي عن السفر؟
That travelers must respect local customs and traditions.

أن المسافرين يجب أن يحترموا العادات والتقاليد المحلية.

5. Why do you think Fogg stayed on the ship while Passepartout explored Aden?

لماذا تعتقد أن فوج بقي على السفينة بينما استكشف باسبارتو مدينة عدن؟
Because Fogg only cares about planning and staying on schedule.

لأن فوج يهتم فقط بالتخطيط والالتزام بالجدول الزمني.

6. What does Fix's persistence reveal about his character?

ماذا يكشف إصرار فيكس عن شخصيته؟

He is determined and will not give up easily, even without proof.

هو شخص مُصر ولا يستسلم بسهولة، حتى بدون دليل.

7. How does the description of Bombay's harbor help the reader understand Passepartout's feelings?

كيف تساعد أوصاف ميناء بومبي القارئ على فهم مشاعر باسبارتو؟

The lively and colorful details show why he was amazed and excited.

التفاصيل الحية والملونة تبين سبب اندهائه وحماسه.

8. Why is Fogg's calmness surprising to other passengers?

لماذا يدهش هدوء فوج باقي الركاب؟
Because most people would feel stress or excitement, but he remains emotionless.

لأن معظم الناس يشعرون بالتوتر أو الحماس، لكنه يظل بلا انفعال.

9. Why do you think Fix secretly followed Fogg instead of confronting him?

لماذا تعتقد أن فيكس تبع فوج سراً بدلاً من مواجهته؟
Because he didn't have the warrant yet and needed proof first.

لأنه لم يكن يملك أمر القبض بعد، وكان بحاجة إلى دليل أولاً.

10. What lesson can readers learn from Passepartout's reaction to different cultures?

ما الدرس الذي يمكن للقراء تعلمه من ردة فعل باسبارتو تجاه الثقافات المختلفة؟

That traveling is about learning and adapting to new ways of life.

أن السفر هو فرصة للتعلم والتأقلم مع طرق حياة جديدة.

11. Describe what Passepartout saw when he first looked at the Arabian desert coast.

صف ما رآه باسبارتو عندما نظر لأول مرة إلى ساحل الصحراء العربية.

Endless golden sand, rocky hills, and seabirds flying above.

رمال ذهبية لا نهاية لها، وتلال صخرية، وطيور بحرية تطير فوقها.

12. How did passengers spend their time on the Mongolia during the voyage?

كيف قضى الركاب وقتهم على متن السفينة منغوليا أثناء الرحلة؟

They ate, walked on deck, and played card games.

كانوا يأكلون، ويتمشون على السطح، ويلعبون ألعاب الورق.

13. What did Passepartout enjoy doing on the ship?

ما الذي كان يستمتع باسبارتو بفعله على السفينة؟
Talking to sailors, exploring the ship, and watching the stars at night.

التحدث مع البحارة، واستكشاف السفينة، ومشاهدة النجوم ليلاً.

14. Why did the passengers hide below decks in the Red Sea?

لماذا اختبأ الركاب تحت السطح في البحر الأحمر؟
Because the heat was very strong and uncomfortable.

لأن الحرارة كانت شديدة وغير مريحة.

15. What amazed Passepartout when he reached Bombay?

ما الذي أدهش باسبارتو عند وصوله إلى بومبي؟
The crowded harbor, elephants, oxen, and people from many cultures.

الميناء المزدحم، والفيلة، والثيران، والناس من ثقافات عديدة.

16. Describe what Passepartout did with his free hour in Bombay.

صف ما فعله باسبارتو في ساعته الحرة في بومبي.
He explored the city, watched dancers, bought souvenirs, and visited a temple.

استكشف المدينة، وشاهد الراقصين، واشترى تذكارات، وزار معبد.

17. What mistake did Passepartout make at the Hindu temple?

ما الخطأ الذي ارتكبه باسبارتو في المعبد الهندوسي؟
He entered wearing shoes, which was disrespectful.

دخل مرتدياً حذاءه، وكان ذلك عدم احترام للمكان.

18. How did Fogg react when Passepartout asked for time to explore Bombay?

كيف تفاعل فوج عندما طلب باسبارتو وقتاً لاستكشاف بومبي؟

He agreed to give him one hour before the train left.

وافق على منحه ساعة واحدة قبل مغادرة القطار.

19. Why was Fix angry when the train left Bombay?

لماذا كان فيكس غاضباً عندما غادر القطار بومبي؟
Because the arrest warrant had not arrived yet.

لأن أمر القبض لم يصل بعد.

20. Describe the difference in how Fogg, Passepartout, and Fix see the journey through India.

صف الفرق في نظرة فوج وباسبارتو وفيكس للرحلة عبر الهند.

Fogg sees it as a schedule, Passepartout as an adventure, and Fix as a mission to catch a criminal.

فوج يراها جدولاً زمنياً، وباسبارتو يراها مغامرة، وفيكس يراها مهمة للقبض على مجرم.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- c. Suez
- b. golden sand and rocky hills
- b. day
- a. worry
- b. rhythm
- c. whist
- b. crew
- d. stars
- c. Fogg
- b. London
- a. Red
- b. oppressive
- a. in the cabins below deck
- b. same
- a. coat
- c. importance
- a. Aden

Chapter 6

Giants Questions

Part G – Critical Thinking Questions (تفكير نقدي):

- Where did Fogg, Passepartout, and Fix begin their journey in this chapter?
أين بدأ فيكس وباسبارتو والسيد فوج رحلتهم في هذا الفصل؟
They began at Bombay's grand train station. بدأوا في محطة القطار الكبرى في بمباي.
- What destinations was the new railway line supposed to reach?
ما الوجهات التي كان من المفترض أن يصل إليها خط السكة الحديد الجديد؟
It was supposed to reach Allahabad and then Calcutta.
كان من المفترض أن يصل إلى الله آباد ثم كالكتا.
- What kinds of people did Passepartout see at the station?
ما أنواع الأشخاص الذين رآهم باسبارتو في المحطة؟
He saw British officers, Indian traders, women in saris, and pilgrims.
رأى ضباطاً بريطانيين، وتجاراً هنوداً، ونساء يرتدين الساري، وحجاجاً.
- What did the pilgrims carry with them?
ماذا كان يحمل الحجاج معهم؟
They carried walking sticks and copper pots.
كانوا يحملون عصي المشي وقدروراً نحاسية.
- Why did Fix continue to travel with them?
لماذا واصل فيكس السفر معهم؟
He was waiting for the arrest warrant and followed Fogg secretly.
كان ينتظر مذكرة القبض ويتتبع فوج سراً.
- What animals did Passepartout see from the train?
ما الحيوانات التي رآها باسبارتو من القطار؟
He saw a herd of elephants.
رأى قطعياً من الأفيال.
- How did Fogg describe elephants?
كيف وصف فوج الأفيال؟
He said they were reliable animals for carrying loads.
قال إنها حيوانات موثوقة لنقل الأحمال.
- What food did merchants sell at the small stations?
ما الطعام الذي كان يبيعه التجار في المحطات الصغيرة؟
They sold spiced tea, rice cakes, and fruit.
كانوا يبيعون الشاي المثل وكعك الأرز والفواكه.
- Why did the train stop on the third day?
لماذا توقف القطار في اليوم الثالث؟
The railway line was unfinished and ended in the jungle.
لأن خط السكة الحديد لم يكتمل وانتهى في الغابة.

- How many miles of jungle had no railway line?
كم ميلاً من الغابة لم يكن به خط سكة حديد؟
Fifty miles. خمسون ميلاً.
- Why did the unfinished railway surprise Passepartout so much?
لماذا أدهش خط السكة الحديد غير المكتمل باسبارتو كثيراً؟
Because he didn't expect it to end in the middle of nowhere.
لأنه لم يتوقع أن ينتهي في وسط مكان مهجور.
- What does Fogg's calmness in the face of the problem show?
ماذا يبين هدوء فوج في مواجهة المشكلة؟
It shows his confidence and determination.
يبين ثقته وعزمته.
- Why was Passepartout upset about the price of the elephant?
لماذا انزعج باسبارتو من ثمن الفيل؟
Because it was very high, two thousand pounds.
لأنه كان مرتفعاً جداً، ألفي جنيه.
- Why did Fogg agree to pay such a high price?
لماذا وافق فوج على دفع هذا الثمن المرتفع؟
Because he believed time was more valuable than gold.
لأنه اعتقد أن الوقت أثمن من الذهب.
- How does the elephant Kiouni symbolize adaptation in the journey?
كيف يرمز الفيل كيوني إلى التكيف في الرحلة؟
It shows finding new solutions when plans fail.
يبين إيجاد حلول جديدة عند فشل الخطط.
- How does Fix's doubt about Fogg affect the story?
كيف يؤثر شك فيكس في فوج على القصة؟
It adds tension as he secretly follows Fogg.
يضيف توتراً لأنه يتتبع فوج سراً.
- What dangers did the jungle crossing include?
ما الأخطار التي شملها عبور الغابة؟
Wild animals like tigers and the rough jungle paths.
حيوانات برية مثل النمور ومسارات الغابة الوعرة.
- Why was Aouda's rescue important?
لماذا كان إنقاذ أودا مهماً؟
Because it saved her life and added a new character to the story.
لأنه أنقذ حياتها وأضاف شخصية جديدة إلى القصة.
- How did Passepartout feel about Fogg after the rescue?
كيف شعر باسبارتو تجاه فوج بعد الإنقاذ؟
He felt proud and admired Fogg's bravery.
شعر بالفخر وأعجب بشجاعة فوج.
- Why might even Fix admire Fogg at this point?
لماذا قد يعجب حتى فيكس بفوج في هذه اللحظة؟

Because Fogg showed courage and kindness.
لأن فوج أظهر شجاعة ولطفاً.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- a. Bombay station
- b. Allahabad and Calcutta
- b. engines hissing
- c. no hesitation
- b. different people
- a. sticks
- b. traveler
- a. arrest warrant
- c. whistle
- b. Bombay
- c. elephants and lions
- a. timetable
- b. elephants
- d. loads
- c. thief
- b. small stations
- a. rice cakes, tea, and fruit
- b. slowed and stopped
- a. desert

Unit 2 The Prophet's Birth and Adulthood

- a. miraculously
- d. entrust
- a. shepherd
- b. raised
- c. gained
- a. received
- d. incident
- c. kith and kin
- c. sent
- b. increase
- d. complied
- c. give in
- d. teach
- b. treated
- c. impose
- c. aggression
- d. haven
- a. calumniate
- b. Ambassador
- d. immigrated
- b. spiritual
- a. distort
- c. distinguish
- b. governance
- b. harassment
- c. handle
- b. oppression
- a. torture
- a. proclaim
- a. survival
- b. predict

32. **a.** sermon
33. **d.** legacy
34. **c.** unparalleled
35. **a.** distinguish
36. **d.** 570

Unit 3 The Concept of Worship

1. **b.** submit
2. **c.** deprived
3. **b.** comprise
4. **a.** reliance
5. **d.** essence
6. **b.** charity
7. **a.** abide by
8. **d.** a, b and c
9. **c.** avoid
10. **a.** affairs

QUESTION BANK

1. **b.** destroy
2. **c.** before he was born
3. **a.** wet nurse
4. **d.** six
5. **b.** paternal uncle
6. **c.** four
7. **c.** Mount Hira
8. **b.** Waraqa ibn Nawfal
9. **a.** drive
10. **c.** Abu-Bakr
11. **a.** three
12. **b.** rejected
13. **d.** Al-Arqam's house
14. **a.** poor
15. **c.** stone
16. **d.** Abyssinia
17. **a.** brutally
18. **c.** boycott
19. **a.** increasing